

K O R E A N

BASIC COURSE

Volume 1



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

B. NAM PARK

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1968

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

BASIC COURSE SERIES

Edited by

AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office Washington, D.C. 20402

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

PREFACE

FSI Korean Basic Course, Volume 1, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Korean for the student who wishes to achieve a working command of the language currently spoken by an estimated 40 to 43 million people on the Korean peninsula and in Japan, Manchuria and the Soviet Union.

B. Nam Park, supervisor of Korean language instruction at FSI, is the principal author of the text. Richard B. Noss gave general direction to the project; James C. Bostain reviewed the English portions of the text for style and clarity of expression; Chunghwa T. Kay, Korean instructor, worked closely with the author in the classroom testing, revision and tape recording and also typed the Korean version of the dialogues and the glossary; Evelyn C. Vass did the final typing of the English portions. The tape recordings which accompany this volume were produced in the Foreign Service Institute studios with the technical assistance of Jose M. Ramirez.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of this volume possible.



James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	111
INTRODUCTORY UNIT	
Introduction.....	1
Organization and Use of This Course.....	2
Romanization.....	5
Korean Orthography (Hankil).....	6
Special Symbols.....	6
Pronunciation.....	7
Basic Syllable Chart.....	9
Syllable Final Consonant Chart.....	11
UNIT 1. GREETINGS	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	19
Additional Greeting Expressions.....	25
Notes on Dialogues.....	25
Grammar Notes.....	27
1. The Verbals and the Copula.....	27
2. Particles <u>in/nin</u> , <u>il/lil</u> , <u>e</u>	28
3. Nouns and Noun Phrases.....	30
DRILLS.....	31
EXERCISES.....	36
UNIT 2. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	39
Notes on Dialogues.....	44
Grammar Notes.....	45
1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences.....	45
2. Particles <u>i/ka</u> , <u>lo/ilo</u> , <u>e</u>	47
3. Determinatives <u>i</u> , <u>ce</u> , <u>ki</u> , <u>eni</u> , <u>olin</u> , <u>wen</u>	47
4. Post-Nouns <u>kes</u> , <u>pun</u> , <u>ccok</u>	48
5. <u>imnita</u> and <u>issimnita</u>	48
DRILLS.....	50
EXERCISES.....	59
UNIT 3. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	61
Notes on Dialogues.....	66
Grammar Notes.....	67
1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Transitive vs. Intransitive.....	67
2. Future Tense.....	68
3. Honorifics.....	68
4. Negative <u>an</u>	69
5. Particle <u>ese</u> 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'.....	69
6. Particle <u>e</u> 'to'.....	70
DRILLS.....	71
EXERCISES.....	78
UNIT 4. SHOPPING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	81
Numerals (1).....	87

Notes on Dialogues.....	89
Grammar Notes.....	90
1. Informal Polite Speech.....	90
2. Past Tenses.....	94
3. Particle <u>to</u>	95
4. Particle <u>wa/kwa</u>	95
5. <u>-ci</u> + <u>anhsimnita</u>	95
6. Numerals.....	96
DRILLS.....	97
EXERCISES.....	107
UNIT 5. SHOPPING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	111
Numerals (2).....	119
Notes on Dialogues.....	120
Grammar Notes.....	121
1. <u>-n/in/nin</u> + Nominal.....	121
2. <u>-l/il kka yo?</u>	122
3. Adverbs.....	122
4. Counters <u>cang</u> , <u>can</u> , <u>kwən</u> , <u>kæ</u> , <u>pun</u> , <u>mali</u>	124
DRILLS.....	126
EXERCISES.....	138
UNIT 6. TIME	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	141
Notes on Dialogues.....	148
Grammar Notes.....	150
1. Time Counters <u>nyən</u> , <u>hæ</u> , <u>-wəl</u> , <u>tal</u> , <u>cull</u> , <u>il</u> , <u>nal</u> , <u>-si</u> , <u>sikan</u> , <u>pun</u>	150
2. <u>-ci yo?</u>	151
3. <u>-le/ile</u>	152
4. Adverbial Phrases.....	152
DRILLS.....	154
EXERCISES.....	168
UNIT 7. TIME (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	171
Numeral Phrases.....	177
Notes on Dialogues.....	178
Grammar Notes.....	179
1. Numeral Phrases.....	179
2. Particle <u>lo/ilo</u> 'as', 'in the capacity of', 'by means of'..	179
3. <u>-n/in/nin ka yo?</u>	180
4. <u>-lyəko/ilyəko</u>	180
5. <u>-(1)l kka ha-</u>	181
6. Particle <u>kkaci</u>	181
7. Inflected Forms and Verb Phrases.....	182
DRILLS.....	184
EXERCISES.....	196
UNIT 8. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S WORK	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	199
Notes on Dialogues.....	204
Grammar Notes.....	205
1. <u>-ki</u>	205
2. Particle <u>mata</u>	206

3. - <u>l/1l</u> su <u>iss-</u> vs. - <u>l/1l</u> su <u>eps-</u>	207
4. Particle <u>pota</u>	208
DRILLS.....	221
EXERCISES.....	221
UNIT 9. GOING TO THE MOVIES	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	225
Notes on Dialogues.....	230
Grammar Notes.....	231
1. - <u>ko</u>	231
2. - <u>ci</u> <u>man</u>	232
3. - <u>l/1l</u>	232
4. Particle <u>hako</u>	233
DRILLS.....	234
EXERCISES.....	248
UNIT 10. GOING AROUND THE TOWN..	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	251
Notes on Dialogues.....	256
Grammar Notes.....	257
1. - <u>myen/1myen</u>	257
2. Infinitive + <u>to</u> 'even though—', 'although—'.....	258
3. <u>ce1l</u> or <u>kacang</u>	258
4. Particle <u>na/1na</u>	259
DRILLS.....	261
EXERCISES.....	274
UNIT 11. GOING AROUND THE TOWN (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	277
Notes on Dialogues.....	282
Grammar Notes.....	283
1. - <u>ci</u> <u>ma(1)</u> -.....	283
2. Infinitive + <u>cu</u>	284
3. Particle <u>ya</u>	285
4. - <u>n/1n/n1n</u> <u>kes</u>	286
5. - <u>(1)l</u> <u>kes</u> <u>imnita</u>	287
6. Further Notes on Honorifics.....	289
DRILLS.....	289
EXERCISES.....	304
UNIT 12. EATING AND DRINKING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	307
Notes on Dialogues.....	314
Grammar Notes.....	316
1. - <u>(1)n1</u> <u>kka</u> , 'because..', 'since..'.....	316
2. - <u>(1)lyemyen</u>	316
3. Infinitive + <u>po-</u>	317
4. Particle <u>tinci/1tinci</u>	317
5. Particle <u>man</u> 'only'.....	318
DRILLS.....	319
EXERCISES.....	328
UNIT 13. EATING AND DRINKING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	331
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases.....	335
Notes on Dialogues.....	342

Grammar Notes.....	343
1. <u>-(i)na</u> , '—but'.....	343
2. <u>-n/in</u> { <u>cək</u> } <u>i issimnikka?</u> 'Have [you] ever done...?'.....	343
3. Interrogative + <u>-n/in/nin ci</u>	344
4. Particles <u>eke</u> 'to' and <u>ekese</u> 'from'.....	345
5. Dependent Nouns.....	346
DRILLS.....	347
EXERCISES.....	357
UNIT 14. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	361
Notes on Dialogues.....	368
Grammar Notes.....	370
1. <u>ttæ</u> 'time', 'occasion', 'when'.....	370
2. Infinitive + <u>se</u> 'and..', 'and so..'.....	371
3. A Nominal + { <u>we e</u> <u>pakk e</u> } 'beside Nominal'.....	372
4. <u>ssik</u> 'each', 'at one time'.....	372
5. Infinitive + <u>iss-</u>	373
DRILLS.....	374
EXERCISES.....	384
UNIT 15. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	387
Notes on Dialogues.....	394
Grammar Notes.....	395
1. <u>hu</u> 'after', 'the later time', 'next'.....	395
2. <u>cæn</u> 'before', 'the previous time'.....	395
3. <u>-n/in ci</u> + (period of time) + <u>twe-</u>	396
4. <u>-nin tongan</u> 'while doing something'.....	396
5. Nominal + <u>e tæhæ se</u> 'concerning Nominal'.....	397
DRILLS.....	398
EXERCISES.....	408
UNIT 16. TELEPHONING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	411
Notes on Dialogues.....	419
Grammar Notes.....	420
1. <u>-n/in/nin te</u> 'while..', 'such is the case'.....	421
2. Infinitive + <u>tu-</u> (or <u>noh-</u>).....	421
3. <u>-ke</u>	422
4. <u>-n/in/nin ci</u>	423
DRILLS.....	424
EXERCISES.....	431
UNIT 17. TELEPHONING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	435
Notes on Dialogues.....	440
Grammar Notes.....	440
1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal.....	440
2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches.....	443
3. Particles <u>lako</u> and <u>ko</u>	443
DRILLS.....	446
EXERCISES.....	461

UNIT 18. TALKING ABOUT WEATHER	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	465
Notes on Dialogues.....	472
Grammar Notes.....	473
1. <u>-ninkun/kun yo!</u>	473
2. Infinitive + <u>ci</u>	473
3. <u>-n/in/nin kes kath-</u>	474
4. Particle <u>chələm</u>	475
5. Particle <u>lato/ilato</u>	476
6. <u>-(i)l kyehwek i-</u> 'be planning to-'.....	476
DRILLS.....	478
EXERCISES.....	486
 Korean-English Glossary.....	 488
Index to the Grammar Notes.....	551

INTRODUCTORY UNIT

Introduction

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Korean to English speakers. The Korean presented in this book is representative of the 'standard' speech of educated Koreans in Seoul, which has been the capital city and cultural, educational and political center of the country for over five hundred years. In Korea, as in every other nation, there is considerable local variation in pronunciation and vocabulary as well as in styles of speech. However, in schools all over Korea the language presented here is used and taught as the national standard and, if you learn it well, you will be speaking a form of Korean which has prestige throughout the country and which will be understood everywhere.

This course is written primarily for use in an intensive language program of twenty or more hours per week; but it can also be used for other situations, such as a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, or for individual study with the aid of recorded tapes.

Acquiring proficiency in the use of language is like acquiring proficiency in any other skill, for example, driving an automobile-- you must practice until the mechanics of driving - or speaking - are reflex. It is the aim of this course, therefore, to bring students to 'automaticity' in speaking and understanding everyday Korean.

The following points are emphasized to both the teacher and the student:

1. ALWAYS SPEAK AT A NORMAL CONVERSATIONAL SPEED. Neither the teacher nor the student should ever allow himself to speak slower than a 'normal rate of speed'.
2. AVOID THE USE OF ENGLISH IN THE CLASSROOM except for occasional linguistic explanations or discussions by a linguist. Drill hours with the native-speaking instructor should be carried out entirely in Korean from the very beginning. Time spent in speaking English in class is largely time wasted.
3. CORRECT MISTAKES IMMEDIATELY. Mistakes made by a student should not be passed over, but should be immediately corrected by the instructor.
4. AVOID QUESTIONS beginning with WHY, such as "Why do you say it that way?"

If a student wants to ask questions, he should ask more useful and answerable questions beginning with HOW or WHEN, such as, "How do you use the word?" or, "When do you use this expression?"

5. AVOID DISCUSSIONS WITH THE INSTRUCTOR ABOUT KOREAN. Talking about Korean should be confined to the linguistic hour specially set aside for such discussions with a scientific linguist, separate from regular drill hours.
6. REVIEW CONSTANTLY. As the students proceed through the course, they should master everything thoroughly. Each new unit presupposes thorough mastery of what has been covered before. Otherwise, do not go ahead.

Organization and Use of This Course

Each unit in Korean Basic Course Volume 1 (Units 1-18) consists of four major parts: Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences', Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes, Drills and Exercises.

Basic Dialogues

Each unit begins with a connected dialogue of about ten sentences between two or (occasionally) more speakers. Each dialogue is to be practiced, memorized and acted out until it has been so 'overlearned' that the utterances and their sequence are understood and can be produced automatically without conscious thought or hesitation. In some units, there is a group of two or (rarely) more short dialogues which are related to one another. In such a unit, the dialogues may be treated as one connected dialogue.

In the Basic Dialogues, new words and phrases ('build-ups') are introduced immediately before each sentence. They are not part of the Dialogue itself.

In dealing with the Basic Dialogues, the following steps are suggested:

1. First, the instructor reads each sentence line-by-line at normal speed. The students listen with books closed, so that they may become accustomed to depending on their ears.

2. The instructor says the words or phrases of the 'build-ups' and then the complete sentences. The students repeat immediately after the instructor (books still closed). The instructor corrects errors by repeating mispronounced

words or phrases as they should have been said, so that the students can try again.

3. When the students are able to approximate an imitation of the instructor, they begin intensive practice on the dialogue, imitating the instructor line-by-line (books optionally open), until the instructor is satisfied that their performance is sure and fluent.

4. After going through the dialogue several times in this way, the students take the roles in the dialogue (books closed) and practice until they are freely able to do it from memory.

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes follow the Basic Dialogue section. The Notes are intended to be self-explanatory and to be read outside the class after the Basic Dialogue has been introduced. The Notes on Dialogues are numbered according to the sentences in the dialogue, and are intended to give additional information on the use of the words, phrases or sentences. The Grammar Notes are systematic presentations of new patterns or major grammatical constructions that occur for the first time in the Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences' in the unit.

If the course is being taught (as intended) by a team composed of a scientific linguist and a native speaker, some explanation of the Notes may be appropriate in class. However, in general, drill time in class with a native instructor should be conducted entirely in Korean. If the native-speaking instructor is also a trained linguist and fluent in English, specific periods may be set aside for grammatical explanations; these should be kept separate from regular drill sessions during which English should be used only for translations or paraphrases designed to keep the student aware of the meaning of the Korean sentences he is practicing.

The Grammar Notes are written to give some basic understanding of Korean to the beginning student, and are intended to be immediately and practically relevant. If, however, the student finds them difficult to understand, he can simply ignore them. Instead of wasting time talking about Korean, extensive drill concentrated on specific points of pronunciation or grammar can produce the desired goal - proficiency in performance. The course is designed to produce an operational competence in Korean, not a theoretical understanding of it.

Drills

The Drills in this Course are of a considerable variety. However, each

unit basically has five kinds of drills:

Substitution Drills
Transformation (or Grammar) Drills
Response Drills
Combination Drills
Expansion Drills

It is to be noted that each drill has its own specific purpose, but the final goal of all the drills is to lead the student to develop his proficiency in free conversation. Without sufficient drill practice, he cannot achieve such proficiency. Therefore, a great proportion of class time is to be devoted to drills, until the students are able to do them accurately with their books closed.

Drills can be done in the following steps:

1. Drills are learned first like the sentences of the dialogues. That is, each new drill sentence is repeated after the instructor until it is correctly produced with books closed.
2. The students read the drill sentences aloud at normal speed from their books.
3. The drill is then done without the book; the instructor gives the appropriate cues or stimuli, and the students produce the proper responses.

a. Substitution Drills

In this course, there are several kinds of substitution drills: Simple Substitution; Multiple Substitution; Alternate Substitution, Correlation Substitution, etc. In substitution drills - of whatever kind - students will be required to produce the given pattern sentence, and then they will be required to make substitutions in one or more 'slots', using the 'cues' furnished by the instructor. Sometimes, he may be asked to form a properly arranged sentence by inserting a correlated cue. The basic aims of a substitution drill are two-fold: the first is to make the student's control of the pattern sentences automatic and reflex, in order to develop fluency in actual free conversation; the second is to practice useful lexical items in the given sentence patterns. The lexical items are either those which have occurred previously or new related ones. New words and phrases added in the substitution drills are marked with an asterisk to the left of the sentence on their first occurrence. New words and phrases are used only in substitution drills. Substitution drills are printed in two columns, with English equivalents on the right and drill sentences with cues underlined on the left. English equivalents are not provided except for

the model sentences at the beginning of each drill; but only in Substitution Drills are English equivalents provided for subsequent sentences.

b. Response Drills

These are mostly question-and-answer drills designed to help the students develop ability to respond to questions normally. A model is provided at the beginning of the drill. The student is required to produce a response for each question or remark, using the cue or stimulus supplied by the instructor.

c. Transformation Drills

The student is required to produce sentences parallel in an easily generalizable way to the pattern sentence. For example, the student may be asked to transform a negative to an affirmative pattern; or a statement to a question. Transformation Drills are sometimes designated as Grammar Drills in this course.

d. Combination Drills

These are drills in which the student is asked to produce one long pattern by combining two short patterns.

e. Expansion Drills

Starting from a short sentence, the instructor gives cues one by one requesting the student to expand the sentence each time in specific ways.

Exercises

The exercises are of two sorts: (1) they ask the student to complete unfinished utterances or to give appropriate responses to the questions based on reality relevant to each situation; (2) they offer suggestions about additional practice and review for what has been covered in the unit.

The students should be able to do all these exercises fluently and accurately before going on to the next unit.

Romanization

The symbols used to represent Korean sounds are based on a phonemic analysis (see Pronunciation), but each word is transcribed morphophonemically - that is, each word is always written with the same sequence of symbols, even though its pronunciation may be changed by what precedes or follows it. However, if a word has two shapes, our selection is made on the basis of the final sound of the preceding word. The stems of inflected words (i.e. verbs) are written the same way always, even if phonetic changes take place when certain endings or suffixes are added to them.

Words are separated by spaces. A Korean word is a form which may be either (1) inflected or uninflected, (2) bound or free. Free forms can occur alone, while bound forms can occur only with other forms. If a bound form occurs with another form, the combination is a single word unless at least one of the bound forms also occurs with free forms in other constructions.

The first letter of a sentence (except 1 or a) is capitalized. So is the first letter of a proper noun wherever it occurs.

Korean Orthography (Hankil)

In Volume 1, the dialogue portions of each unit are accompanied by Korean orthography (Hankil) throughout the text. And in the glossary at the end of the text, Hankil is provided for all entries, in addition to English equivalents.

We follow the standard Korean spelling rules in this text regardless of the transcription. Spaces within a phrase or sentence are based on Hankil writing rules; for example, particles are not separated from the words preceding them.

Since Hankil is relatively easy to learn, it may be introduced gradually during the middle part of the text, replacing the Romanized transcription completely by the time Volume 1 is completed. A student should thus be able to read in Hankil at normal speed before he goes on to Volume 2, which is entirely in Hankil and English.

It is not the intention of this text to teach spoken Korean through Hankil from the very beginning, since it requires some time before the student can read it fluently. Hankil can be easily mastered by reading (in Hankil) dialogues which have already been memorized by the students.

It is suggested that students interested in written Korean (which requires the knowledge of Chinese characters in addition to Hankil) use an appropriate basic reading text.

Special Symbols

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>In a KOREAN sequence</u>	<u>In an ENGLISH sequence</u>
()	Optional addition, no change of meaning. <u>a(b)</u> = a <u>or</u> ab; <u>b</u> is optional. Mues (il) hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?'	Explanatory information, not required in English. Korean (language)

(' ')	---	Literal translation. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well. ')
[]	---	English items not represented in Korean. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well. ')
a/b	Alternate forms (like English <u>a/an</u>).	---
	1/ka, 11/111	
/ /	'Sentence' pronunciation of preceding words (like English <u>can't you /kancha/</u>)	---
	ettəhsimnikka?/ettəssimnikka/ haksəng/hakssəng/ Hankuk mal/hangkungmal/	
;	---	(In 'Build-ups') or child; baby
*	(In substitution drills) new lexical item.	---
?	End of question-sentence.	---
.	End of other kinds of sentences.	---
,	After (1) sentence adverbs and adverb phrases, (2) subordinate clauses.	---
-	(1) Connects parts of compound words (like English <u>sister-in-</u> <u>law</u>), (2--in Grammar Notes) indicates end of verb stem or beginning of some verb endings.	---

Pronunciation

Standard Korean, spoken by educated natives of Seoul, has an inventory of 8 vowels, 2 semi-vowels and 19 consonants:

(a) Vowels

i	ɪ	u
e	ə	o
æ	a	

(b) Semi-vowels

w	y
---	---

(c) Consonants

p	t	c	k	
pp	tt	cc	kk	
ph	th	ch	kh	h
	s			
	ss			
m	n	ng		
	l			

Note: The symbols pp, tt, cc, kk, ph, th, ch, kh, ss, ng in the above chart are unit sounds, not combination sounds.

The Korean phonological system can be described in terms of possible syllable formation:

- (a) 8 single vowels
- (b) 144 consonant + vowel
- (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel
- (d) 108 consonant + y (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (e) 90 consonant + w (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (f) 1 i + y
- (g) 1 w + ə + y
- (h) 8 consonant + w + ə + y
- (i) 56 vowel + consonant
- (j) 1008 consonant + vowel + consonant
- (k) 42 y + vowel + consonant
- (l) 35 w + vowel + consonant
- (m) 756 consonant + y + vowel + consonant
- (n) 630 consonant + w + vowel + consonant

The most common syllable types, however, are the first five kinds: (a) 8 single vowels, (b) 144 consonant + vowel, (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel, (d) 108 consonant + y + vowel, (e) 90 consonant + w + vowel.

The following chart shows the formation of the basic Korean syllables. It is essential that the student should ultimately be able to pronounce and distinguish each syllable type correctly.

Basic Syllable Chart

INTRODUCTORY UNIT

Practice 1

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
a	ka	kka	kha	na	ta	tta	tha	la	ma	pa	ppa	pha	sa	ssa	ca	cca	cha	ha	ang
e	ke	kke	khe	ne	te	tte	the	le	me	pe	ppe	phe	se	sse	ce	cce	che	he	eng
o	ko	kko	kho	no	to	tto	tho	lo	mo	po	ppo	pho	so	sso	co	cco	cho	ho	ong
u	ku	kku	khu	nu	tu	ttu	thu	lu	mu	pu	ppu	phu	su	ssu	cu	ccu	chu	hu	ung
l	kl	kkl	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thl	ll	ml	pl	ppl	phl	sl	ssl	cl	cc1	chl	hl	lng
l	kl	kkl	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thl	ll	ml	pl	ppi	phl	sl	ssl	cl	cc1	chl	hl	lng
e	ke	kke	khe	ne	te	tte	the	le	me	pe	ppe	phe	se	sse	ce	cce	che	he	eng
æ	kæ	kkeæ	kheæ	næ	tæ	ttæ	thæ	læ	mæ	pæ	ppæ	phæ	sæ	ssæ	cæ	ccæ	chæ	hæ	æng
ya	kya	kka	kha	na	tya	ttya	thya	lya	mya	pya	ppya	phya	sya	ssya	cya	ccya	chya	hya	yang
ye	kye	kka	kha	nye	tye	ttye	thye	lye	mye	pye	ppye	phye	sye	ssye	cye	ccye	chye	hye	yeng
yo	kya	kka	kha	nyo	tyo	ttyo	thyo	lyo	myo	pyo	ppyo	phyo	syo	ssyo	cyo	ccyo	chy	hyo	yong
yu	kya	kka	kha	nyu	tyu	ttyu	thyu	lyu	myu	pyu	ppyu	phyu	syu	ssyu	cyu	ccyu	chy	hyu	yung
ye	kya	kka	kha	nye	tye	ttye	thye	lye	mye	pye	ppye	phye	sye	ssye	cye	ccye	chye	hye	yeng
yæ	kyæ	kka	kha	nyæ	tyæ	ttæ	thæ	lyæ	myæ	pyæ	ppæ	phæ	syæ	ssæ	cæ	ccæ	chæ	hyæ	yæng
wa	kwa	kka	kha	nwa	twa	ttwa	thwa	lwa	mwa	pwa	ppwa	phwa	swa	sswa	cwa	ccwa	chwa	hwa	wang
we	kwa	kka	kha	nwe	twa	ttwa	thwe	lwe	mwe	pwe	ppwe	phwe	swe	sswe	cwe	ccwe	chwe	hwe	weng
wl	kwl	kka	khw	nwl	twl	ttwl	thwl	lwl	mw1	pw1	ppw1	phw1	sw1	ssw1	cw1	ccw1	chw1	hw1	wing
we	kwe	kke	khe	nwe	twe	ttwe	thwe	lwe	mwe	pwe	ppwe	phwe	swe	sswe	cwe	ccwe	chwe	hwe	weng
wæ	kweæ	kkeæ	kheæ	nweæ	tweæ	ttweæ	thweæ	lweæ	mweæ	pweæ	ppweæ	phweæ	swæ	ssweæ	cweæ	ccweæ	chweæ	hwæ	wæng

Syllable Final Consonant Chart

Possible syllable final consonants within or at the end of words.	Actual syllable-final sounds
(1) -k } -kk } -kh }	/ -k/
(2) -t } -tt } -th } -s } -ss } -c } -cc } -ch }	/ -t/
(3) -p } -pp } -ph }	/ -p/
(4) -h	/ --/
(5) -l	/ -l/
(6) -m	/ -m/
(7) -n	/ -n/
(8) -ng	/ -ng/

Practice 2

(1)	kak } kakk } kakh }	/kak/
(2)	tat } tatt } tath } tas } tass }	/tat/

	tac	}	/tat/
	tacc		
	tach		
(3)	pap	}	/pap/
	papp		
	paph		
(4)	ah		/a/
(5)	lal		/lal/
(6)	mam		/mam/
(7)	nan		/nan/
(8)	ang		/ang/

Every syllable-final consonant within or at the end of a word becomes the initial consonant of the following syllable when a vowel occurs immediately after it. If two consonants occur in a cluster, the first of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second goes to the following syllable. Morphophonemic boundary within a word is not indicated. Thus, the consonant combinations -p p-, -t t-, -c c-, -k k-, -s s-, -p h-, -t h-, -c h-, -k h-, which may be divided morphemically so that the first consonant of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second to the following syllable, are not distinguished syllabically from the unit consonants pp, tt, cc, kk, ss, ph, th, ch, kh, even though the Korean orthography does distinguish them. In Korean, every syllable contains a vowel; therefore, there are as many syllables as there are vowels.

Practice 3

(1)	kaka	(3)	papa
	kakka		pappa
	kakha		papha
(2)	tata	(4)	aha
	tatta	(5)	lala
	tatha	(6)	mama
	tasa	(7)	nana
	tassa	(8)	anga
	taca		
	tacca		
	tacha		

1	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	a	'a' in 'father'	short
	ə	'u' in 'but'	open; phonetically [ɔ] or [ʌ]
	o	'o' in 'for'	rounded; with lips protruded
	u	'u' in 'food'	short with lip-rounding
	ɪ	'u' in 'put'	long and unrounded
	ɪ	'ee' in 'meet'	short
	e	'e' in 'pen'	lower than English 'e'
	æ	'a' in 'bat'	short

Practice 4

1. /a/ 2. /ə/ 3. /o/
- a 'oh' əə 'quickly' 0 'a family name'
- ai 'child' eə 'yesterday' oi 'cucumber'
- ca 'well' ce 'I' (polite form) Co 'a family name'
4. /u/ 5. /ɪ/ 6. /ɪ/
- un 'luck' in 'silver' ɪ 'lice'
- au 'younger brother' ɪsa 'doctor' Kim 'a family name'
- kutu 'shoe' kim 'gold' pi 'rain'
7. /e/ 8. /æ/
- ne 'yes' æki 'child'
- eku 'gee' pæu 'actor'
- ke 'crab' kæ 'dog'

2	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	k	'c' in 'can'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	kk	'c' in 'scan'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	kh	'k' in 'keen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 5

1. /k/

Kim 'a family name'

koki 'meat'

aka 'baby'

kuk 'soup'

2. /kk/

kkum 'dream'

kkachi 'magpie'

akka 'a little while ago'

cakku 'repeatedly'

3. /kh/

khi 'height'

kho 'nose'

cokha 'nephew'

3	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	t	't' in 'top'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	tt	't' in 'stop'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	th	't' in 'teen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 6

1. /t/

tal 'moom'

eti 'where'

pata 'sea'

tot 'sail'

2. /tt/

ttal 'daughter'

ittta 'later'

patta 'receive'

tto 'again'

3. /th/

thal 'mask' or 'trouble'

ithil 'two days'

pithal 'slope'

tho 'particle (in grammar)'

4	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	p	'p' in 'pin'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	pp	'p' in 'spin'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ph	'p' in 'peen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 7

1. /p/

pal 'foot'
 pul 'fire'
 ipal 'hair-cut'
 nap 'lead'

2. /pp/

ppalkan 'red'
 ppul 'horn'
 ippal 'tooth'
 nappin 'bad'

3. /ph/

phal 'arm'
 phul 'grass'
 naphal 'trumpet'
 nophi 'height'

5	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	c	'ch' in 'chick'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	cc	'j' in 'Jack'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ch	'ch' in 'cheek'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 8

1. /c/

cam 'sleep'
 ceul 'scale'
 ice 'now'
 ece 'yesterday'

2. /cc/

ccam 'spare time'
 cook 'side'
 ecci 'how'
 eccæse 'why'

3. /ch/

cham 'truth'
 chima 'skirt'
 kicha 'train'
 achim 'morning'

6	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	s	's' in 'Smith'	regularly voiceless; unreleased in final position
	ss	'ts' in 'puts'	voiceless; tense; unreleased in final position

Practice 9

1. /s/

sal 'flesh'
 si 'poetry'

2. /ss/

ssal 'rice'
 ssi 'seed'

Pusan 'name of a city'

pissan 'expensive'

susul 'operation'

malssim 'speech'

7	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	m	'm' in 'mother'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	n	'n' in 'name'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	ng	'ng' in 'sing'	--	consonantal	syllabic

Practice 10

1. /m/

2. /n/

3. /ng/

mal 'horse'

nal 'day'

kang 'river'

Mikuk 'America'

nui 'sister'

congī 'paper'

imi 'already'

eni 'which'

pang 'room'

mom 'body'

men 'far'

seng 'castle'

8	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	l	'l' in 'light' or 'ball'	front l	flap	back l

Practice 11

1. /l/

lætio 'radio'

palam 'wind'

salang 'love'

kelsang 'chair'

pal 'foot'

9	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	h	'h' in 'hire'	strong friction	weak friction	--

Practice 12

1. /h/

hana	'one'	ohu	'afternoon'
hilin	'cloudy'	inh1	'girl's name'
hakkyo	'school'	ahin	'90'
huson	'descendent'		

10	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	<u>w</u> before <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> { a e i e æ </div>	'wh' in 'why'	lip rounding
	<u>y</u> before <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> { a e o u e æ </div>	'y' in 'yet'	palatalizing

Practice 13

1. /w/

w1	'stomach'
wenk1	'energy'
wæ	'why'
cəngwən	'garden'
l-wəl	'February'

2. /y/

yək	'station'
yul1	'glass'
yaku	'baseball'
uyu	'milk'
wəlyə	'moon-night'

제 1 과 인사

(대화 A)

안녕

1. 김 : 안녕하십니까?

2. 제임스 : 예, 안녕하십니까?

처음

뵙습니다

3. 김 : 처음 뵙니다.

김

기수

4. 김 기수입니다.

이름

저

저의, 제

저의 이름, 제 이름

저의 이름은

제임스입니다

5. 제임스 : 제 이름은 제임스입니다.

선생

선생은

미국

사람

미국 사람

UNIT 1. Greetings
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AKim

annyəŋg

peace; tranquility

1. Annyəŋg-hasimnikka?

How are you? ('Are you at peace?')

James

2. Ne, annyəŋg-hasimnikka?

Fine. How are you? ('Yes, how are you?')

Kim

chəim

first time

pwepsimnita/pwepssimnita/

(I see you)

3. Chəim pwepsimnita.

('I'm glad to meet you.') ('I see you for the first time.')

Kim

(family name)

Kisu

(given name)

4. Kim Kisu imnita.

[I] am Kisu Kim.

James

ilim

name

cə

I

cə e }

my

ce

my name

cə e ilim }

as for my name

ce ilim }

ce ilim in

[it] is James

Ceimsi imnita

5. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.

My name is James. ('As for my name, it is James.')

Kim

sənsəŋg

teacher; you (polite)

sənsəŋg in

as for the teacher; as for you

Mikuk

America; the United States

salam

person

Mikuk salam

an American

6. Sənsəŋg in Mikuk salam imnikka?

Are you an American?

6. 김 : 선생은 미국 사람입니까?

예

그렇습니다

7. 제임스 : 예, 그렇습니다.

무엇

무엇을

하십니까

8. 김 : 선생은 무엇을 하십니까?

저는

학생

학생입니다

9. 제임스 : 저는 학생입니다.

공부

공부 하니까

10. 김 : 무엇을 공부 하니까?

한국

말

한국 말

공부 합니다

11. 제임스 : 한국 말을 공부 합니다.

(대화 B)

제임스 선생

12. 김 : 제임스 선생, 안녕 하십니까?

James

- ne yes
 kiləhsimnita/kiləssimnita/ [it]is so; [that]'s right
 7. Ne, kiləhsimnita. Yes, I am. ('Yes, that's right.')

Kim

- muəs what(thing)?
 muəs il what (as direct object)
 hasimnikka do [you] do?
 8. Sənsəng il muəs (il) hasimnikka? What do you do? ('As for you, what do [you] do?')

James

- cə nin I (as a topic); as for me
 haksəng/hakssəng/ student
 haksəng imnita [I] am a student
 9. Cə nin haksəng imnita. I am a student.

Kim

- kongpu studying
 kongpu-hamnikka do [you] study?
 10. Muəs il kongpu-hamnikka? What do [you] study?

James

- Hankuk/Hangkuk/ Korea
 mal language; utterance; speech
 Hankuk mal/Hangkungmal/ Korean (language)
 kongpu-hamnita [I] study
 11. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. [I] study Korean.

Dialogue BKim

- Ceimsi Sənsəng Mr. James
 12. Ceimsi Sənsəng, annyəng-hasimnikka? Good morning, Mr. James.

아

13. 제임스 : 아, 안녕하세요니까, 김 선생?

잘

있습니다

14. 김 : 예, 잘 있습니다.

요즘

어떻게

지나십니까

15. 제임스 : 요즘 어떻게 지나십니까?

덕분에

16. 김 : 덕분에 잘 지냅니다.

재미

어떻습니까

17. 선생은 재미 어떻게습니까?

그저

18. 제임스 : 그저 그렇습니다.

부인

부인도, 부인께서도

19. 김 : 부인께서도 안녕하세요니까?

20. 제임스 : 예, 잘 있습니다.

James

a
13. A, annyeng-hasimnikka, Kim
Sensang?

oh
Oh, how are you, Mr. Kim?

Kim

cal
issimnita
14. Ne, cal issimnita.

well
[there] is; [there] exists
(Yes) I'm fine. ('I exist well.')

James

yocim
ettèhke/ettèhke/
cinasimnikka
15. Yocim ettèhke cinasimnikka?

these days; lately
how; in what way
are [you] getting along?
How are you getting along these days?

Kim

tèkpun e/tèkppune/
16. Tèkpun e cal cinamnita.

cæmi
ettèhsimnikka/ettèssimnikka/
17. Sensang in cæmi ettèhsimnikka?

(at favor)
I'm doing fine, thank you. ('I'm
getting along well at your favor.')

fun; interest
how is [it]?
And how are you? ('As for you, how is
fun?')

James

kice
18. Kice kilèhsimnita.

just
Just so-so. ('It is just so.')

Kim

puin
puin to }
puin kkesè to }
19. Puin (kkesè) to annyeng-
hasimnikka?

your wife; lady
your wife also
How is your wife? ('Is your wife also
at peace?')

James

20. Ne, cal issimnita.

She is fine. ('Yes, [she] exists
well.')

- 21. 미안합니다.
- 22. 고맙습니다.
- 23. 천만에 말씀입니다.
- 24. 실례합니다.
- 25. 실례했습니다.
- 26. 실례하겠습니다.
- 27. 안 됐습니다.
- 28. (아니요) 괜찮습니다.
- 29. 안녕히 가십시오.
- 30. 안녕히 계십시오.
- 31. 또 뵙겠습니다.

ADDITIONAL GREETING EXPRESSIONS

- | | |
|---|---|
| 21. Mianhamnita. | { I'm sorry
Thank you for your trouble. |
| 22. Komapsimnita. | Thank you. |
| 23. Chenman e malssim imnita. | { You're welcome.
Not at all.
Don't mention it. |
| 24. Sillye-hamnita./silyehamnita/ | Excuse me (on leaving, on interrupting). |
| 25. Sillye-haessimnita. | Excuse me (for what was done). |
| 26. Sillye-hakessimnita. | Excuse me (for what I'm going to do). |
| 27. An twessimnita. | That's too bad. |
| 28. (Aniyo) kwanchanhsimnita.
/kwanchanssimnita/ | Not at all. ('No, that's all right,') |
| 29. Annyenghi kasipsiyo. | Goodbye (to someone leaving). ('Go peacefully.') |
| 30. Annyenghi kyesipsiyo. | Goodbye (to someone staying). ('Stay peacefully.') |
| 31. Tto pwepkessimnita. | { See you again.
So long.
I'll see you again. |

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

- 1.2. The expression Annyeng-hasimnikka? ('Are you at peace?') is a general greeting similar to such English expressions as 'How are you?', 'How do you do?', 'Good morning.', 'Good evening.', etc. It is used for first meetings at any time of the day. The usual response to Annyeng-hasimnikka? are Annyeng-hasimnikka?; Ne, annyeng-hasimnikka?
3. Chaim pwepsimnita. ('I meet you for the first time.') is regularly said by someone who has just been introduced. The response is usually Chaim pwepsimnita.; Annyeng-hasimnikka?.
4. Kim Kisu is a full name: the family name Kim plus the given name Kisu. Most Korean names consist of three syllables: the first is a family name, the last two are a given name. Cə 'I' is the politest equivalent of na.

6. Sensang means either 'teacher' or polite 'you'. After a family name or a family name plus a given name it is used as a title or term of address like English Mr., Mrs., or Miss. This form of address (i.e. Name + Sensang) is most commonly used among or to the teachers of all levels, regardless of age and/or sex, but is also commonly used among and to educated male adults. Mr./Mistta/, Mrs./Missessi/, and Miss /Missi/, followed by the family name are commonly used by Koreans as forms of address when speaking to equals and young people. These forms of address are not applied to individuals older than or superior to the speaker. A full or last name + Ssi 'Mr. _____' occurs for other than the addressee to refer to a male adult of any age, rank or status. A family name + Ssi is also used as a term of address directly to the addressee who is a blue-collar worker.
7. Ne, kiləhsimnita. ('What you just said is right, that's so.') is used as a response when you agree to the Yes-No question regardless of whether it is negative or affirmative. Aniyo, the opposite of Ne, means 'What you just said is wrong.' It is used in a parallel way as opposed to Ne. Often Ne and Aniyo are used similarly as 'yes' and 'no' in affirmative Yes-No questions but are the other way around in negative Yes-No questions.
- 10.11. When a situation is obvious, the subject or topic in a Korean sentence is usually omitted. For example, (Sensang in) muēs il kongpu-hamnikka? 'What do you study?'; (Na nin) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. 'I study Korean.' Note that the subjects or topics in brackets may be omitted in speech. Kongpu-hamnita 'studies' is one of many Korean verbs which are formed from nouns. The noun kongpu 'studying' makes a verb (stem) by simply adding another verb (stem) ha- 'to do', that is, kongpu + ha- kongpu-ha- 'to study'. (See Grammar Notes, the Verbals.) Examples:
- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| <u>Kongpu-hamnita</u> . | '[I] study.' |
| <u>Kongpu-hamnikka?</u> | 'Do [you] study?' |
12. Ceimsi Sensang, annyeng-hasimnikka? ('Mr. James, how are you?') and Annyeng-hasimnikka, Ceimsi Sensang? ('How are you, Mr. James?') can be freely interchangeable.
15. Yocim ettəhke cinasimnikka? ('How do you pass by these days?') is a polite greeting to someone you know well, to ask him how things are going. The usual responses are Təkpun e cal cinamnita. ('I pass by well at your favor.') or Kice kiləhsimnita. 'Just so-so.'

19. Puin without being preceded by a name means either 'lady' or 'your wife'.
A family name (with or without being followed by a given name) + Sənsəŋ
(or a title) + puin means 'Mrs. _____' or 'Mr. so-and-so's wife'.
Example:
Kim Sənsəŋ puin 'Mrs. Kim' or 'Mr. Kim's wife'
21. Mianhamnita. is commonly used to apologize, or to express thanks immediately upon receiving something.
23. Chənmən e malssim imnita. ('A million words.') is a formal response to 'Thank you.', complimentary statements, and apologies. The English equivalent is 'You're welcome' or 'Not at all.'
- 24.25. Sillye-hamnita. ('I commit rudeness.'), Sillye-həssimnita. ('I committed rudeness.'), Sillye-hakessimnita. ('I'll commit rudeness.') are different only in time: present, past, and future, respectively. The proper one depends on the situation. Sillye-hamnita. and Sillye-hakessimnita. are used interchangeably for what is not done. Sillye-həssimnita. is used for something already done. 'Excuse me.' in English is used generally for all three expressions.
27. An twessimnita. 'That's too bad.' ('[It] has not become.') is used to express the speaker's sympathy or regret.
28. (Aniyo), kwəŋchanhsimnita. 'Not at all.' ('(No), that's not bad.') is an informal response to Mianhamnita., Komapsimnita., Sillye-hamnita. (or Sillye-hakessimnita. or Sillye-həssimnita.), or to An twessimnita.
- 29.30. When two people part, the one who goes away says Annyəŋhi kyesipsiyo. ('Stay peacefully.'), and the one who remains says Annyəŋhi kasipsiyo. ('Go peacefully.'). If both are departing, they both say Annyəŋhi kasipsiyo.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The Verbals and the Copula

In Korean, inflected words, which may be used by themselves as complete sentences, are called Verbals. Korean verbals are made up of two main parts: Verb Stems + Endings.

Neither of the two main components in a verbal occurs alone. The verbals occur in a variety of forms depending on what endings are added to the verb stems,

but the verb stems maintain their shapes, in most instances. Hereafter, we will call verb stems as well as all members of the inflected class of words Verbs.

In Korean dictionaries, verbs always are listed with the ending -ta. For instance, ka-ta 'to go', o-ta 'to come', mek-ta 'to eat', ca-ta 'to sleep', ilk-ta 'to read'. This is called the dictionary form of a verb. When -ta is dropped from the dictionary form the Verb Stem remains. It is very important to recognize every verb stem because all the inflected forms are based on them.

Examples of Verbals:

(Cə nɪn) <u>Kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'(I)'m studying.'
(Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>kalɪchɪmnita</u> .	'(I) teach Korean.'
Cal <u>cinamnita</u> .	'[I]'m fine.' ('I pass by well.')
<u>Komapsɪmnita</u> .	'(I) thank (you).'

Imnita is a verb: i- is its stem and -mnita is its ending. Imnita and the other inflected forms of i- (for example, its dictionary form i-ta) are used in sentences like 'Noun A is Noun B.' Often Noun A is not stated, but is understood. Thus, the verb stem i- is equivalent to one meaning of the English verb 'to be'. Notice, however, that the English verb 'to be' is used not only to connect two nouns ('A is B') as in 'I am a teacher', but is also used in sentences like 'A is in such and such a state', as in 'She is beautiful'. The Korean verb imnita is used only for 'A is B', never in sentences like 'A is beautiful'. Imnita is called the Copula; i- is the stem of the Copula.

The Copula never occurs alone. It is always preceded immediately by a noun and there is no pause between the noun and the Copula.

The Copula is distinguished from other verbals only in that the Copula never occurs as a complete sentence, whereas other verbals may occur as complete sentences. Observe the following Copula expressions:

(Cə nɪn) <u>Kim imnita</u> .	'(I) am Kim.'
(Kɪ kəs;) <u>Muəs imnikka?</u>	'What is (it)?'
(Cə nɪn) <u>Mikuk salam imnita</u> .	'(I) am an American.'
(Cɛɪmsɪ nɪn) <u>Haksəng imnita</u> .	'(James) is a student.'

2. Particles in/nin, ɪl/lɪl, e

There is a class of uninflected words in Korean which occurs within a sentence or at the end of a sentence, but never at the beginning of one. These words are never preceded by a pause; they are regularly pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. All such words are called Particles.

Some particles have only one shape; others occur in either of two shapes determined by the final sound of the preceding word.

- (a) in/nin 'as for', 'in reference to' is a two-shape particle: in occurs after a word ending in a consonant and nin occurs after a word ending in a vowel.

- (1) It follows the general topic (often one already under discussion) about which something new or significant is about to be stated or asked:

Examples:

Ce nin haksang imnita.	'I am a student.'
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.	'My name is James.'
Sensang in Mikuk salam imnikka?	'Are you an American?'

- (2) in/nin also occurs as the particle of comparison following a topic which is being compared: A in/nin 'A in comparison with (others)' or 'insofar as we're talking about A.' Examples:

Sensang in mues il hasimnikka?	'What are YOU doing?'
Ce nin Yenge nin kongpu-hamnita.	'ENGLISH I am studying.'

(in/nin never follows an interrogative word (i.e. a word that asks a question: 'What?', 'Who?', 'Where?', etc.)

- (b) il/lil is a two-shape particle: il occurs after a noun ending in a consonant and lil after a noun ending in a vowel. The particle il/lil singles out the preceding noun as the direct object of the following inflected expression. Examples:

Mues <u>il</u> kongpu-hamnikka?	'What do [you] study?'
Hankuk mal <u>il</u> kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] am studying Korean.'
Ilpon mal <u>il</u> kalichimnita.	'[He] teaches Japanese.'
Cungkuk mal <u>il</u> mal-hamnita.	'[He] speaks Chinese.'

- (c) e

When the particle e occurs between two nouns, it is called the Possessive Particle. Noun 1 + e + Noun 2 means 'Noun 1's Noun 2' or 'Noun 2 of Noun 1'.

1. Examples:

ce e ilim	'my name'
hakkyo e ilim	'the name of the school'
Kim e chaek	'Kim's book'

3. Nouns and Noun phrases.

Korean nouns are uninflected words, that is, they have only one form. (They do not, for example, reflect the singular-plural distinction as English nouns do.) In Korean two or more nouns often make up noun phrases and are used as though they were one word. Compare:

(a) Single nouns:

Mikuk	'America', 'the U.S.'
salam	'person', 'man'
mal	'language', 'utterance'

(b) Noun Phrases:

(1) Country name + salam = Nationality

Mikuk salam	'(an) American' ('America person')
Yengkuk salam	'(an) Englishman' ('Britian person')
Ilpon salam	'(a) Japanese' ('Japan person')
Cungkuk salam	'(a) Chinese' ('China person')

(2) Country name + mal = language of the country named

Hankuk mal	'Korean (language)' ('Korea language')
Cungkuk mal	'Chinese (language)' ('China language')
Pullanse mal	'French' ('France language')
Yenge*	'English'

Note 1: Place name + mal = dialect

Seul mal	'Seoul dialect'
Pusan mal	'Pusan dialect'

Note 2: Place name + salam = Person of the place named

Nam-Han salam	'South Korean'
Pusan salam	'Pusanian'
Seul salam	'Seoulite'
Nyuyok salam	'New Yorker'

A noun which may occur as a free form is called a Free Noun. Hereafter, any noun or noun phrase which occurs in a position where a free noun can be substituted shall be called a Nominal Expression or simply a Nominal.

----- x -----

* Yenge is a single-word expression for 'English'.

Yengkuk mal ('British language') is rarely used for English.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita. | My name is James. |
| 2. Ce ilim in <u>Kim</u> imnita. | My name is Kim. |
| 3. Ce ilim in <u>Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu. |
| 4. Ce ilim in <u>Kim Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu Kim. |
| *5. Ce ilim in <u>Pak</u> imnita. | My name is Park (family name). |
| *6. Ce ilim in <u>I Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu Lee (family name + given name). |
| *7. Ce ilim in <u>Chwe</u> imnita. | My name is Choe (family name). |
| *8. Ce ilim in <u>Ceng</u> imnita. | My name is Chung (family name). |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ce nin <u>haksæng</u> imnita. | I am a student. |
| 2. Ce nin <u>sensæng</u> imnita. | I am a teacher. |
| 3. Ce nin <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnita. | I am a Korean. |
| 4. Ce nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an American. |
| 5. Ce nin <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> imnita. | I am an American student. |
| 6. Ce nin <u>Hankuk haksæng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean student. |
| 7. Ce nin <u>Hankuk mal haksæng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) student. |
| 8. Ce nin <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) teacher. |
| *9. Ce nin <u>Mikuk mal sensæng</u> imnita. | I am an American (language) teacher. |
| *10. Ce nin <u>Yenge sensæng</u> imnita. | I am an English teacher. |
| *11. Ce nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an American. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Ce nin <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnita. | I am a Korean. |
| *2. Ce nin <u>Yengkuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an Englishman. |
| *3. Ce nin <u>Ilpon salam</u> imnita. | I am a Japanese. |
| *4. Ce nin <u>Cungkuk salam</u> imnita. | I am a Chinese. |
| *5. Ce nin <u>Tokil salam</u> imnita. | I am a German. |
| *6. Ce nin <u>Pullanse salam</u> imnita. | I am a Frenchman. |
| *7. Ce nin <u>Seul salam</u> imnita. | I am from Seoul. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in Mikuk salam imnikka? | {Are you an American?
Is the teacher an American? |
| 2. Sənsəŋ in <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a Korean?
Is the teacher a Korean? |
| 3. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəŋkuk salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you an Englishman?
Is the teacher an Englishman? |
| 4. Sənsəŋ in <u>Ilpon salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a Japanese?
Is the teacher a Japanese? |
| 5. Sənsəŋ in <u>Cungkuk salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a Chinese?
Is the teacher a Chinese? |
| 6. Sənsəŋ in <u>Tokil salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a German?
Is the teacher a German? |
| 7. Sənsəŋ in <u>Pullansə salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a Frenchman?
Is the teacher a Frenchman? |
| 8. Sənsəŋ in <u>Səul salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you from Seoul?
Is the teacher from Seoul? |
| 9. Sənsəŋ in <u>Kim sənsəŋ</u> imnikka? | {Are you Mr. Kim
Is the teacher Mr. Kim? |
| *10. Sənsəŋ in <u>Hankuk yəca</u> imnikka? | Is the teacher a Korean woman? |
| *11. Sənsəŋ in <u>Mikuk yəca</u> imnikka? | Is the teacher an American woman? |
| *12. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəŋkuk yəca</u> imnikka? | Is the teacher an English woman? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Is the teacher an American? |
| 2. <u>Kim Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Is Mr. Kim an American? |
| 3. <u>Ceimsi Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam
imnikka? | Is Mr. James an American? |
| 4. <u>Pak Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam
imnikka? | Is Mr. Park an American? |
| 5. <u>Haksəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Is the student an American? |
| 6. <u>Hankuk mal haksəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam
imnikka? | Is the Korean (language) student an
American? |
| 7. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam
imnikka? | Is the Korean (language) teacher an
American? |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka? | { What do you do?
What does the teacher do? |
| 2. <u>Haksæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka? | What does the student do? |
| *3. <u>Tangsîn</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka? | What do you do (to husband or wife,
or to the same male adult friend)? |
| 4. <u>Ceimsi Sensæng</u> in muës (il)
hasimnikka? | What does Mr. James do? |
| 5. <u>I Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka? | What does Mr. Lee do? |
| 6. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës (il)
hasimnikka? | What does Mr. Choe do? |
| 7. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka? | What does Mr. Kim do? |
| 8. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) <u>kongpu-</u>
<u>hamnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Kim study? |
| *9. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) <u>pæumnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Kim learn? |
| *10. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il)
<u>kalichimnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Kim teach? |
| *11. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il)
<u>1(1)ksimnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Kim read? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës il
1(1)ksimnikka? | What does Mr. Kim read? |
| 2. <u>Pak Sensæng</u> in muës il
1(1)ksimnikka? | What does Mr. Park read? |
| 3. <u>Pak Sensæng</u> in muës il <u>pæumnikka?</u> | What is Mr. Park learning? |
| 4. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës il <u>pæumnikka?</u> | What is Mr. Choe learning? |
| 5. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës il
<u>kalichimnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Choe teach? |
| 6. <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> in muës kalichimnikka? | What is the American student teaching? |
| *7. <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> in muës il <u>mal-</u>
<u>hamnikka?</u> | { What does the American student say?
What does the American student speak? |
| 8. <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> in muës il mal-
hamnikka? | What does the Korean teacher say? |
| 9. <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> in muës il
<u>kongpu-hamnikka?</u> | What is the Korean teacher studying? |
| 10. <u>Ilpon haksæng</u> in muës il kongpu-
hamnikka? | What is the Japanese student studying? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) Korean. |
| 2. (Cə nɪn) <u>Mikuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) the American language. |
| 3. (Cə nɪn) <u>Ilpon mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) Japanese. |
| 4. (Cə nɪn) <u>Cungkuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) Chinese. |
| 5. (Cə nɪn) <u>Yəŋgə ɪɪl</u> kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) English. |
| 6. (Cə nɪn) <u>Hankuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) Korean. |
| 7. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>kalɪchimnita</u> . | I('m) teach(ing) Korean. |
| 8. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>mal-hamnita</u> . | I speak Korean. |
| 9. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>pəumnita</u> . | I('m) learn(ing) Korean. |
| 10. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>ɪ(ɪ)ksɪmnita</u> . | I('m) read(ing) Korean. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) mʉəs ɪl kongpu-hamnikka? | What do you study? |
| 2. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Hankuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka?
hamnikka? | Do you study Korean? |
| 3. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Mikuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study the American language? |
| 4. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Cungkuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study Chinese? |
| 5. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Ilpon mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study Japanese? |
| 6. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Yəŋgə ɪɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study English? |
| 7. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Tokil mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study German? |
| 8. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Pullanse mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka? | Do you study French? |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ce nin Yenge lil mal-hamnita. | I speak English. |
| 2. <u>Kim Sensaeng</u> in Yenge lil mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim speaks English. |
| 3. Kim Sensaeng in <u>Pullanse mal</u> il mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim speaks French. |
| 4. Kim Sensaeng in Pullanse mal il <u>pæumnita</u> . | Mr. Kim is learning French. |
| 5. <u>Hankuk haksæng</u> in Pullanse mal il pæumnita. | Korean students are learning French. |
| 6. Hankuk haksæng in <u>Tokil mal</u> il pæumnita. | Korean students are learning German. |
| 7. Hankuk haksæng in Tokil mal il <u>ilksimnita</u> . | Korean students read German. |
| 8. <u>Yengkuk haksæng</u> in Tokil mal il ilksimnita. | British students read German. |
| 9. Yengkuk haksæng in <u>Cungkuk mal</u> il ilksimnita. | British students read Chinese. |
| 10. Yengkuk haksæng in Cungkuk mal il <u>kalichimnita</u> . | A British student is teaching Chinese. |
| 11. <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> in Cungkuk mal il kalichimnita. | An American student is teaching Chinese. |

K. Response Drill (based on the dialogues)

Teacher:

1. Annyæng-hasimnikka?
2. Chæim pwepsimnita.
3. Ce ilim in Kim Kisu imnita.
4. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
5. (Sænsæng in) muæs (il) hasimnikka?
6. Muæs il kongpu-hamnikka?
7. Ceimsi Sænsæng, annyæng-hasimnikka?
8. Yocim ettæhke cinasimnikka?
9. (Sænsæng in) cæni (ka) ettæhsimnikka?

Student:

- Ne, annyæng-hasimnikka?
- Annyæng-hasimnikka? Chæim pwepsimnita.
- Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.
- Ne, kilæhsimnita.
- Ce nin haksæng imnita.; Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
- Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
- Ne, cal issimnita.
- (Tækpun e) cal cinamnita.
- Kice kilæhsimnita.

L. Response Drill

Teacher:

1. Mianhamnita.
2. Sillye-hamnita.
3. Sillye-hakessimnita.
4. Sillyehæssimnita.
5. Annyenghi kasipsiyo.
6. Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.
7. Komapsimnita.
8. Mianhamnita.
9. An twessimnita.
10. Tto pwepkessimnita.

Student:

- Chenman e malssim imnita.
 (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita.
 Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.
 Annyenghi kasipsiyo.
 Chenman e malssim imnita.
 (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita.
 Ne, tto pwepkessimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Kim Sænsang:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. your name. | 9. that you read French. |
| 2. that you are an American. | 10. that Mr. Park is learning English. |
| 3. that you are a student. | 11. that the Korean (language) teacher is a woman from Seoul. |
| 4. that you are studying Korean. | 12. that the American is an English teacher. |
| 5. that you are fine. | 13. that the English teacher speaks Chinese. |
| 6. that Mr. Park teaches Korean. | 14. that the Chinese woman teaches German. |
| 7. that you are glad to meet him. | 15. that the German (language) student speaks Japanese. |
| 8. that you speak Japanese. | |

B. Conduct the following conversations:

Ask Mr. Kim:

1. if he is a Korean.
2. what he does.
3. what he teaches.
4. how he's getting along these days.
5. if the teacher is an American.
6. if the student is a Korean.
7. if he speaks Korean.
8. if Mr. James is a Korean (language) student.

Mr. Kim answers:

- that he is.
 that he is a teacher.
 that he teaches Korean.
 that he's doing fine.
 that he is.
 that he is an Englishman.
 that he does.
 that he is.

C. You've met a stranger at a party; tell him:

1. that you are glad to meet him.
2. that your name is so-and-so.
3. that you're studying Korean.
4. that Mr. Park is your Korean teacher.
5. that you'll see him again.

제 2 과 기 찾기

(대화 A)

- 잠간
시뻘
시뻘합니다
1. A: 잠간 시뻘합니다.

- 말, 말썸
좀
몰어 봅시다
2. 말썸 좀 몰어 봅시다.

3. B: 예, 무엇입니까?

- 대사관
미국 대사관이
어디
어디에
있습니까
4. A: 미국 대사관이 어디에 있습니까?

- 저기
저기에
쪽
왼쪽
왼쪽으로
가십시오
5. B: 저기에 있습니다. 왼쪽으로 가십시오.

UNIT 2. Finding One's Way Around
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- | | |
|---|---|
| camkan/camkkan/
sillye
sillye-hamnita | for a moment
rudeness
[I] commit rudeness |
| 1. Camkan sillye-hamnita. | Excuse me for a moment. |
| mal
malssim }
com | word; speech; language
a little |
| mule popsita/mulepopssita/ | let's inquire; let's ask |
| 2. Malssim com mule popsita. | May I ask you a question? ('Let's inquire a word.') |

B

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 3. Ne, mues imnikka? | Yes, what is [it]? |
|----------------------|--------------------|

A

- | | |
|--|--|
| tassakwan
Mikuk Tassakwan i
eti
eti e
issimnikka | embassy
the U.S. Embassy (as subject)
what place?
at what place?; where?
does [it] exist?; is [there]? |
| 4. Mikuk Tassakwan i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the U.S. Embassy? ('At what place does the U.S. Embassy exist?') |

B

- | | |
|---|--|
| caki
caki e
ccok
wen ccok
wen ccok ilo
kasipsiyo/kasipssiyo/ | that place; there
at that place; over there
side; direction
the left (side)
to the left
(please) go |
| 5. Caki e issimnita. Wen ccok ilo
kasipsiyo. | [It]'s over there. Go to the left. |

건물

저 건물

학교

6. A: 저 건물 이 학교입니 까?

7. B: 예, 그렇습 니다.

대단히

고 맙습 니다

8. A: 대단히 고 맙습 니다.

아니요

천만에 말스

9. B: 아니요, 천만에 말스 습니다.

(대화 B)

어메

시청

10. A: 시청이 어메 있습니 까?

이 건물

11. B: 아 건물 이 시청입 니다.

저것

저것은

12. A: 저것은 무 엇입니 까?

A

kenmul

building

ce kenmul

that building

hakkyo

school

6. Ce kenmul i hakkyo imnikka?

Is that building a school?

B

7. Ne, kilohsimnita.

Yes, it is.

A

tætanhi

very; very much

komapsimnita

[I]'m grateful

8. Tætanhi komapsimnita.

Thank you very much.

B

chenman e malssim

('a million words')

9. Aniyo, chenman e malssim imnita.

(No,) Not at all. ('You're welcome.')

Dialogue BA

ete

where

sicheng

City Hall

10. Sicheng i ete issimnikka?

Where is the City Hall?

B

i kenmul

this building

11. I kenmul i sicheng imnita.

This building is the City Hall.

A

ce kes

that (thing); the thing over there

ce kes in

as for that

12. Ce kes in mues imnikka?

What is THAT?

13. B: 그것
 여관
 그것은 여관입니다.
14. A: 어느 것
 백화점
 어느 것이 백화점입니까?
15. B: 옆
 옆에
 시청 옆에
 백화점은 시청 옆에 있습니다.
16. A: 공보
 공보원
 미국 공보원
 미국 공보원은 어디에 있습니까?
17. B: 바토
 앞
 앞에
 바토 앞에
 바토 앞에 있습니다.
18. A: 감사
 감사합니다
 대단히 감사합니다.
19. B: 아니요, 천만에요.

B

that: it

inn; hotel

It's a hotel. ('It's an inn.')

A

which one

department store

Which one is the department store?

B

the side

beside; by

beside the City Hall; next to
the City Hall

The department store is beside the City Hall. ('As for a department store it exists besides the City Hall.')

A

public information

information office

USIS

Where is USIS? ('As for USIS, where is [it]?')

B

just; right

the front

at the front

right ahead

[It]'s right up ahead.

A

gratitude

[I] thank you

Thanks a lot.

B

No, not at all.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues)

1. Camkan sillye-hamnita. 'Excuse me for a moment.' is usually said when you stop a stranger to get some information.
2. Malssim com mule popsita. ('Let us ask [you] a word') is often preceded by Camkan sillye-hamnita. and is regularly used to a stranger from whom you want to inquire about something, such as directions.
3. Mues 'what (thing)' is always a free noun. It is never used to modify a following noun.
5. Ccok 'direction' occurs after determinatives (See Grammar Note 3) or place names. It never stands along. Examples:

i ccok	'this way'
ce ccok	'that way'
ki ccok	'that way'
hakkyo ccok	'the direction of the school'
tassakwan ccok	'the direction of the embassy'
wen ccok	'the left'
clin ccok	'the right'
- 8.18 Komapsimnita. and Kamsa-hamnita. 'Thank you.' are freely interchangeable on any occasion.
10. ete 'where' is the contracted form of eti + e.
13. Yekwan generally refers to 'inns' or 'hotels' of all sizes. However, modern western-style hotels are often called hothel.
14. eni 'which', 'what' always occurs before a nominal (free or bound) as a determinative. It never occurs as a free form.
19. Chenman e yo. 'Not at all.' is the informal equivalent of Chenman e malssim imnita.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences

The nucleus of a Korean sentence comes at the end of the sentence. When the nucleus of a normal sentence is a verb, we talk about verb-stems and verb-endings. There are several levels and/or styles of speech which show the relationship between the speaker and the person spoken to and/or about. The distinctions of speech level are shown mostly by the inflected forms of verbs.

In all societies, everywhere, when people talk to one another, they give each other signals (gestures, tones of voice, word-choice, etc.) to show that they understand their personal relationship (equality, dominance, subordination) and the situation (polite-casual, formal-informal, etc.). Sometimes, in our democratic society, we like to pretend these things don't exist, but they do. Very few of us can talk to our boss the way we talk to our best friend. In Korean, the personal relationship signals are built into the language.

Formal Polite Speech is the polite style of speech commonly used between adults who do not have a casual relationship. The four forms of Formal Polite Speech verb-endings are listed below.

(a) Formal Polite Statement Form: -mnita ~ -(s)imnita

In Formal Polite Statements, -mnita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel; -(s)imnita to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kamnita.	'[I] go.'
o-	'to come'	Omnita.	'[I] come.'
pæu-	'to learn'	Pæumnita.	'[I] learn.'
kongpu-ha-	'to study'	Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'
mek-	'to eat'	Mek(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'
a(l)-	'to know'	Amnita.	'[I] know.'

(b) Formal Polite Question Form: -mnikka? ~ -(s)imnikka?

In Formal Polite Questions, -mnikka? is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, -(s)imnikka? to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

Kamnita.	'[I] go.'	Kamnikka?	'Do [you] go?'
Omnita.	'[I] come.'	Omnikka?	'Do [you] come?'
Pæumnita.	'[I] learn.'	Pæumnikka?	'Do [you] learn?'
Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'	Kongpu-hamnikka?	'Do [you] study?'
Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'	Ilk(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] read?'
Mek(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'	Mek(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] eat?'

(c) Formal Polite Imperative Form: -sipsiyo ~ -isipsiyo

In Formal Polite Requests, -sipsiyo is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel and -isipsiyo to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ha-	'to do'	Hasipsiyo.	'Please do [it].'
ka-	'to go'	Kasipsiyo.	'Please go.'
o-	'to come'	Osipsiyo.	'Please come.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule posipsiyo.	'Please ask.'
iss-	'to exist'	Issisipsiyo.	'Please stay.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkisipsiyo.	'Please read.'

(d) Formal Polite Propositive Form: -psita ~ -ipsita

In Formal Polite Proposals ('Let's ____.'), -psita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, and -ipsita is added to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kapsita.	'Let's go.'
kalichi-	'to teach'	Kalichipsita.	'Let's teach.'
mal-ha-	'to speak'	Mal-hapsita.	'Let's speak.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule popsita.	'Let's ask.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkipsita.	'Let's read.'

2. Particles i/ka, lo/ilo, e(a) i/ka

The particle i/ka singles out the preceding word as the emphasized subject of a sentence; i occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ka after a word ending in a vowel. When the particle i/ka is added, the subject is emphatic.

Observe the location of the emphasis in the English equivalents. Examples:

Hakkyo <u>ka</u> issimnita.	'There is <u>a school</u> .' ('A school exists.')
Ce <u>kənmul i</u> tāsakwan imnita.	' <u>That building</u> is the embassy.'
Ce <u>ka</u> Hankuk mal il pəumnita.	' <u>I</u> am studying Korean.'

(b) lo/ilo 'to, toward'

A place nominal + lo/ilo followed by such verbs as ka- 'to go', o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo occurs after a place noun which ends in a vowel and ilo after a noun ending in a consonant.

Examples:

Hakkyo lo kamnita.	{ '[I] go to school.'
Cip ilo osipsiyo.	{ '[I]'m going toward the school.'
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	'Please come to the house.'
	'Please go to the left (side).'

(c) e 'at', 'on', 'in', 'to'

A place (or location) noun + e indicates that the action of the following inflected expression takes place at the noun. Examples:

Səul i <u>Hankuk e</u> issimnita.	'Seoul is <u>in Korea</u> . ('Seoul is in Korea.')
Tāsakwan i <u>eti e</u> issimnikka?	' <u>Where</u> is the Embassy? ('At what place does the Embassy exist?')
Yəkwan in palo <u>aph e</u> issimnita.	'A hotel is right <u>ahead</u> .'
Chæk il <u>chæksang e</u> tuessimnita.	'[I] have placed ('put') the book <u>on the desk</u> .'

3. Determinatives

There is a small class of uninflected words in Korean which never occur by themselves but are followed by nominals. Words of this class are called Determinatives. A determinative + a nominal = a noun phrase. In Unit 2, we have the following determinatives: i 'this___', ce 'that___', ki 'the (or that)___', əni 'which___', olin 'right___', wen 'left___'. Observe the following examples:

i chæk	'this book'
i kəs	'this (thing)'
cə salam	'that man'
cə kəs	'that ('thing over there)'
kɪ kənmul	'that ('the') building'
kɪ salam	'that man (mentioned previously)'
ənɪ pəkwaçəm	'which department store'
ənɪ kəs	'which one'
olin ccok	'the right (direction)'
wen ccok	'the left (direction)'

Note that i 'this___' and cə 'that___' before nominals indicate nominals within the sight of the speaker, while kɪ 'that (or the)___' before a nominal refers to a previously mentioned one; olin 'the right___' and wen 'the left___' occur only before the word ccok.

4. Post-Nouns: kəs, pun, ccok

Kəs ('thing'), pun ('person'), ccok ('side') belong to a small class of Korean nouns which never occur alone but only after such words as determinatives, free nouns, or other modifier classes of words and make up nominal phrases. Words of this class are called Post-Nouns. Examples:

i kəs	'this (thing)'
cə pun	'that man (honored)'
khɪn kəs	'(a) big one'
wen ccok	'the left (side)'

5. Imnita and Issimnita

In Korean there is a distinction between the expression (a) 'A is B' and (b) 'There is an A.' or 'A exists.' In Unit 1, we learned that the copula i- (of which imnita is one inflected form) is used to denote 'Noun A is Noun B.' In contrast to the copula, the verb iss- (of which issimnita is one inflected form) means '(something) exists.' (See Grammar Note 1, Unit 1.) Compare:

(a)

(Kɪ kəs ɪn) chæk imnita.	'[It] is a book.'
I kənmul i hakkyo imnita.	'This building is a school.'
Na nin sənsəŋg imnita.	'I am a teacher.'

(b)

Chæk i issimnita.

'There is a book.'
('A book exists.')

Səul e tæsakwan i issimnita.

'There is an Embassy at Seoul.'
('An exbassy exists at Seoul.')

Note that a nominal i/ka + issimnita preceded by a personal noun as a topic occurs to express that the personal noun has or possesses the nominal. Examples:

Na nin chæk i issimnita.

'I have a book.'
('As for me a book exists.')Sənsəng in Hankuk mal sacən i
issimnikka?

'Do you have a Korean dictionary?'

Ne, (na nin) sikye ka issimnita.

'Yes, I have a watch.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the Embassy? |
| 2. <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the U.S. Embassy? |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo ka</u> ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the school? |
| 4. <u>Sichəng</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the City Hall? |
| 5. <u>Pəkhwacəm</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the department store? |
| 6. <u>Yəkwan</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the inn? |
| 7. <u>Kongpowən</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the information center? |
| 8. <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the USIS? |
| 9. <u>Hankuk Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the Korean Embassy? |
| 10. <u>Haksəng</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the student? |
| 11. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəng</u> i ətɪ e
issimnikka? | Where is the Korean (language)
teacher? |
| 12. <u>Kɪ kəs</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is it? |
| *13. <u>Aɪ ka</u> ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is the child? |
| 14. <u>Puin</u> i ətɪ e issimnikka? | Where is your wife? ('Where is the
lady?') |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>Cəki</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s over there. |
| *2. <u>Yəkɪ</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s over here. |
| 3. <u>Wen ccok</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s on the left. |
| *4. <u>Olin ccok</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s on the right. |
| 5. <u>Aph</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in front [of you]. |
| *6. <u>Twɪ</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in the back. |
| 7. <u>Yəph</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s beside [you]. |
| 8. <u>Hakkyo</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s at school. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in America. |
| 10. <u>Hankuk</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in Korea. |

C. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle.)

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Sichang i issimnita. | [There] is the City Hall. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a school. |
| 3. <u>Kenmul</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a building. |
| 4. <u>Yekwan</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is an inn. |
| 5. <u>Sensang</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a teacher. |
| *6. <u>Kyosil</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a classroom. |
| *7. <u>Sikye</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a watch. |
| *8. <u>Chæk</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a book. |
| *9. <u>Chæksang</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a {table.
desk. |
| *10. <u>Iyca</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a chair. |
| *11. <u>Yenphil</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a pencil. |
| *12. <u>Cito</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a map. |
| 13. <u>Al</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a child. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tæsakwan i yekl e issimnita. | The Embassy is here ('at this place'). |
| 2. Tæsakwan i <u>cækl</u> e issimnita. | The Embassy is over there ('at that place'). |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka cækl e issimnita. | The school is over there. |
| 4. Hakkyo ka <u>wen ccok</u> e issimnita. | The school is on the left. |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i wen ccok e
issimnita. | USIS is on the left. |
| 6. Mikuk Kongpowen i <u>i kenmul</u> e
issimnita. | USIS is in this building. |
| 7. <u>Pækhwacem</u> i i kenmul e issimnita. | The department store is in this
building. |
| 8. Pækhwacem i <u>aph</u> e issimnita. | The department store is ahead. |
| 9. <u>Yekwan</u> i aph e issimnita. | The inn is ahead. |
| 10. Yekwan i <u>yeph</u> e issimnita. | The inn is nearby. |

E. Substitution Drill (Supply lo/ilo Particle.)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the left. |
| *2. <u>Olin</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the right. |
| *3. <u>I</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go this way. |
| *4. <u>Ce</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go that way. |
| 5. <u>Hakkyo</u> (lo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to school. |
| 6. <u>Ce kŏnmul</u> (lo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to that building. |
| 7. <u>Pŏkhwacŏm</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the department store. |
| 8. <u>Sicheng</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the city hall. |
| 9. <u>Yŏkwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the inn. |
| 10. <u>Tŏsakwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the Embassy. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ce kŏnmul i hakkyo imnikka? | Is that building a school? |
| 2. Ce kŏnmul i tŏsakwan imnikka? | Is that building the embassy? |
| 3. Ce kŏnmul i Mikuk Tŏsakwan imnikka? | Is that building the U.S. Embassy? |
| 4. Ce kŏnmul i sicheng imnikka? | Is that building the City Hall? |
| 5. Ce kŏnmul i kongpowŏn imnikka? | Is that building the information center? |
| 6. Ce kŏnmul i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Is that building a department store? |
| 7. Ce kŏs i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Is that a department store? |
| 8. I kŏs i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Is this a department store? |
| 9. Kŏ kŏs i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Is it a department store? |
| 10. I kŏnmul i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Is this building a department store? |
| 11. ŏnŏ kŏs i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Which is the department store? |
| 12. ŏnŏ kŏnmul i pŏkhwacŏm imnikka? | Which building is the department store? |

G. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə kənmul i hakkyo imnikka? | Is that building a school? |
| 2. Cə salam i haksəng imnikka? | Is he ('that person') a student? |
| 3. Cə kəs i yəkwan imnikka? | Is that an inn? |
| 4. Cə kənmul i Mikuk Təsakwan imnikka? | Is that building the U.S. Embassy? |
| 5. Cə haksəng i Mikuk salam imnikka? | Is that student an American? |
| 6. Cə yeca ka Yəngə səsəng imnikka? | Is she ('that woman') an English teacher? |
| 7. Cə ccok i Mikuk Kongpowən imnikka? | Is USIS that way? |
| 8. Cə hakkyo ka Hankuk mal hakkyo imnikka? | Is that school a Korean language school? |
| 9. Cə kənmul i pəkhwacəm imnikka? | Is that building a department store? |
| 10. Cə puin i Hankuk yeca imnikka? | Is that lady a Korean woman? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Səsəng e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What is your name? |
| 2. Haksəng e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What is the student's name? |
| 3. Cə səsəng e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's that teacher's name? |
| 4. I kənmul e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of this building? |
| 5. Cə hakkyo e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that school? |
| 6. Cə Mikuk salam e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that American? |
| 7. Cə Hankuk salam e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that Korean? |
| 8. Kī salam e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that man? |
| 9. Cə yəkwan e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that inn? |
| 10. Cə ai e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that child? |
| 11. Cə puin e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that lady? |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pækhwacem in hakkyo yeph e
issimnita. | The department store is next to the
school. |
| 2. <u>Tæsakwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e
issimnita. | The Embassy is next to the school. |
| 3. <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e
issimnita. | The U.S. Embassy is next to the
school. |
| 4. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> in hakkyo yeph e
issimnita. | USIS is next to the school. |
| 5. <u>Hankuk yekwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e
issimnita. | The Korean inn is next to the school. |
| *6. <u>inhæng</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. | The bank is next to the school. |
| *7. <u>Sangcem</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. | The store is next to the school. |
| 8. <u>Hothel</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. | The hotel is next to the school. |
| *9. <u>Cip</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. | The house is next to the school. |
| *10. <u>Kongwen</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. | The park is next to the school. |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pækhwacem in sichæng yeph e issimnita. | The department store is next to the
City Hall. |
| 2. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>aph e</u> issimnita. | The department store is in front of
the City Hall. |
| 3. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>twi e</u> issimnita. | The department store is behind the
City Hall. |
| 4. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>wen ccok e</u>
issimnita. | The department store is on the left
side of the City Hall. |
| 5. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>oln ccok e</u>
issimnita. | The department store is on the right
side of the City Hall. |
| *6. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>aph ccok e</u>
issimnita. | The department store is on the front
side of the City Hall. |
| *7. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>twi ccok e</u>
issimnita. | The department store is on the back
side of the City Hall. |
| *8. Pækhwacem in sichæng <u>kakkai</u>
issimnita. | The department store is near the
City Hall. |

K. Substitution Drill (Supply in/nin Particle.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e
issimnita. | The department store is next to the
City Hall. |
| 2. <u>Sicheng</u> in <u>tæsakwan</u> yeph e
issimnita. | The City Hall is next to the Embassy. |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> nin <u>yekwan</u> yeph e issimnita. | The school is next to an inn. |
| *4. <u>Yekwan</u> in <u>inhæng</u> yeph e issimnita. | The inn is next to a bank. |
| *5. <u>inhæng</u> in <u>sangcæm</u> yeph e issimnita. | The bank is next to a store. |
| *6. <u>Sangcæm</u> in <u>hothel</u> yeph e issimnita. | The store is next to a hotel. |
| *7. <u>Hothel</u> in <u>cip</u> yeph e issimnita. | The hotel is next to a house. |
| *8. <u>Cip</u> in <u>kongwen</u> yeph e issimnita. | The house is next to a park. |
| *9. <u>Kongwen</u> in <u>kil</u> yeph e issimnita. | The park is right near the street. |

L. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e
issimnita. | The department store is next to the
City Hall. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> nin sicheng <u>aph</u> e issimnita. | The school is in front of the City
Hall. |
| 3. <u>Hankuk Tæsakwan</u> in sicheng <u>twi</u> e
issimnita. | The Korean Embassy is behind the
City Hall. |
| 4. <u>inhæng</u> in sicheng <u>wen ccok</u> e
issimnita. | The bank is on the left side of the
City Hall. |
| 5. <u>Sangcæm</u> in sicheng <u>olin ccok</u> e
issimnita. | The store is on the right side of
the City Hall. |
| 6. <u>Hothel</u> in sicheng <u>kakkai</u> issimnita. | The hotel is near the City Hall. |
| 7. <u>Kongwen</u> in sicheng <u>aph ccok</u> e
issimnita. | The park is on the front side of the
City Hall. |
| 8. <u>Cip</u> in sicheng <u>twi ccok</u> e issimnita. | The house is on the back side of
the City Hall. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> in sicheng <u>yeph</u> e
issimnita. | USIS is next to the City Hall. |

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Mikuk Təsakwan i issimnikka?

'Is there a U.S. Embassy?'

Student: Ne, Mikuk Təsakwan i
issimnita.

'Yes, [there] is a U.S. Embassy.'

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Cəki e issimnikka? | Ne, cəki e issimnita. |
| 2. Cə kəs i hakkyo imnikka? | Ne, cə kəs i hakkyo imnita. |
| 3. Kiləhsimnikka? | Ne, kiləhsimnita. |
| 4. I kənmul i sichəng imnikka? | Ne, i kənmul i sichəng imnita. |
| 5. (Sənsəng in) Mikuk salam imnikka? | Ne, Mikuk salam imnita. |
| 6. (Sənsəng in) Hankuk mal il
kongpu-hamnikka? | Ne, Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. |
| 7. Cal issimnikka? | Ne, cal issimnita. |
| 8. Mianhamnikka? | Ne, mianhamnita. |
| 9. Kwəanchanhsimnikka? | Ne, kwəanchanhsimnita. |
| 10. Hankuk mal il pəumnikka? | Ne, Hankuk mal il pəumnita. |
| 11. Yəngə lil mal-hamnikka? | Ne, Yəngə lil mal-hamnita. |
| 12. Ilpon mal il kalichimnikka? | Ne, Ilpon mal il kalichimnita. |

N. Response Drill (Answer the question based on the dialogue.)

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Sillye-hamnita. | Aniyo, kwəanchanhsimnita. |
| 2. Malssim com mule popsita. | Ne, muəs imnikka. |
| 3. Tətanhi komapsimnita. | Aniyo, chənman e malssim imnita. |
| 4. Yocim əttəhke cinasimnikka? | (Təkpun e) cal cinamnita. |
| 5. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Ne, kiləhsimnita. |
| 6. Sənsəng in muəs hasimnikka? | Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng in muəs il
kalichimnikka? | Hankuk mal il kalichimnita. |
| 8. Chək i əte issimnikka? | Chəksang e issimnita. |
| 9. Səul i əte issimnikka? | Hankuk e issimnita. |
| 10. 1yca ka əti e issimnikka? | Chəksang aph e issimnita. |

0. Grammar Drill (Based on Grammar Note 2 supply i/ka in a proper place.)

Tutor: Təsakwan ətə .issimnikka?

Student: Təsakwan i ətə issimnikka?

1. Sichəng (i) cəki e issimnita.
2. Hakkyo (ka) wen cək e issimnita.
3. Cəimsi Sənsəng (i) Mikuk salam imnita.
4. Haksəng (i) kongpu-hamnita.
5. Yəki (ka) təsakwan imnita.
6. iyca (ka) ətə e issimnikka?
7. Kim Kisu (ka) haksəng imnikka?
8. Səul (i) Hənkuk e issimnikka?
9. ənə kəs (i) pəkhwacəm imnikka?
10. I kənmul (i) sichəng imnikka?

P. Transformation Drill (Transform the sentence as in the example supplying the particle i/ka.)

Tutor: I kəs i chək imnita.

'This is a book.'

Student: Chək i issimnita.

'There is a book.'

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I kəs i hakkyo imnita. | Hakkyo (ka) issimnita. |
| 2. I kəs i təsakwan imnita. | Təsakwan (i) issimnita. |
| 3. I kəs i sichəng imnita. | Sichəng (i) issimnita. |
| 4. I kəs i sikye imnita. | Sikye (ka) issimnita. |
| 5. I kəs i iyca imnita. | iyca (ka) issimnita. |
| 6. I kəs i kyosil imnita. | Kyosil (i) issimnita. |
| 7. I kəs i Cungkuk Təsakwan imnita. | Cungkuk Təsakwan (i) issimnita. |
| 8. I kəs i chəksang imnita. | Chəksang (i) issimnita. |
| 9. I kəs i pəkhwacəm imnita. | Pəkhwacəm (i) issimnita. |
| 10. I kəs i yəkwan imnita. | Yəkwan (i) issimnita. |

Q. Response Drill (Use the particle in/nin in place of i/ka and answer the questions as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka issimnikka?

'Is there a school?'

Student: Ne, hakkyo nin issimnita.

'Yes, there is a school...(but)...'

1. Cə kəs i pəkhwacəm imnikka?

Ne, cə kəs in pəkhwacəm imnita.

2. Sichəng i wen ccok e issimnikka?

Ne, sichəng in wen ccok e issimnita.

3. Cəimsi ka Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka?

Ne, Cəimsi nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.

4. Iyca ka yəki e issimnikka?

Ne iyca nin yəki e issimnita.

5. Kim Kisu ka Hankuk salam imnikka?

Ne, Kim Kisu nin Hankuk salam imnita.

6. Səul i Hankuk e issimnikka?

Ne, Səul in Hankuk e issimnita.

7. Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lll kalichimnikka?

Ne, Pak Sənsəng in Yəngə lll kalichimnita.

8. Mikuk salam i Cungkuk mal il pəumnika?

Ne, Mikuk salam in Cungkuk mal il pəumnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Supply the right particle wherever appropriate: in/nin, il/lll, e, ilo/lo.)

Tutor: Cə ilim Cəimsi imnita.

Student: Cə ilim in Cəimsi imnita.

1. Cə (nin) haksəng imnita.

2. Muəs (il) kongpu-hamnikka?

3. Hankuk mal (il) pəumnita.

4. Pak Sənsəng in Yəngə (lll) kalichimnita.

5. Təsakwan in cəki (e) issimnita.

6. Wen ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo.

7. Cə kəs (in) muəs imnikka?

8. Palo aph (e) issimnita.

9. Hakkyo (lo) kasipsiyo.

10. Olin ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo.

11. Cə nin Yəngə (lll) mal-hamnita.

12. Cəimsi Sənsəng in Ilpon mal (il) kalichimnita.

EXERCISES

A asks B for the following information and B responds.

A asks:

1. where the U.S. Embassy is.
2. what that building is.
3. which building the department store is.
4. where USIS is.
5. where the City Hall is.
6. what he does.
7. how he's doing these days.
8. whether that building is a department store.
9. whether the school is next to the City Hall.
10. whether the school is behind the City Hall.
11. whether the department store is in front of the U.S. Embassy.
12. whether USIS is beside the Embassy.
13. whether that is the school building.
14. where a bank is.
15. whether the park is near the street.
16. whether the store is beside the street.

B answers:

- that it is next to the City Hall.
- that it is the USIS building.
- that the department store is in front of USIS.
- that it is in front of the department store.
- that it is in front of USIS.
- that he teaches Korean.
- that he's doing O.K.
- that it is.
- that it is behind the City Hall.
- that it is in front of the City Hall.
- that it is next to the Embassy.
- that it is in the Embassy building.
- that it is a department store.
- that it is near the park.
- that it is beside the street.
- that it is so.

제 3 과 길 찾기(계속)

(대화 A)

여보세요

기

좀

물 어 브겠읍니다

1. A: 여보세요, 기 좀 물 어 브겠읍니다.

어디를

찾습 니까

2. B: 예, 어디를 찾습 니까?

여

서울 여

가는 기

아십 니까, 압 니까

3. A: 서울 여에 가는 기을 아십 니까?

똑 바로

가십 시요

4. B: 예, 똑 바로 가십 시요.

여기에서

멈 니까, 멀 읍 니까

5. A: 여기에서 멈 니까?

UNIT 3. Finding One's Way Around (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- yepose yo
kil
com
mule pokessimnita
1. Yepose yo! Kil com mule
pokessimnita.

hello there!; say!
street; road; way
a little
I will inquire

Excuse me. May I ask you for directions?
('I'll inquire about the street a
little.')

B

- eti lil
chacsimnikka/chassimnikka/
2. Ne, eti lil chacsimnikka?

where (as direct object)
do [you] look for?

Certainly, where do you want to go?
('What (place) are you looking for?')

A

- yek
Seul Yek e
kanin kil
asimnikka
amnikka }
3. Seul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka?

station
to Seoul Station
the way to ('going way')

do [you] know?

Can you tell me how to get to Seoul
Station? ('Do you know the way to
Seoul Station?')

B

- ttokpalo
kasipsiyo
4. Ne, ttokpalo kasipsiyo.

straight ahead, straight
(please) go

Go straight ahead.

A

- yeki ese
me(li)mnikka
5. Yeki ese memnikka?

from here
is [it] far?

Is [it] far from here?

안 됩니다

가깝습니다

6. B: 아니요, 안 됩니다. 가깝습니다.

7. A: 대단히 고맙습니다.

관찮습니다

8. B: 아니요, 관찮습니다.

(대화 B)

어디에

가십니까, 갑니까

9. 박: 어디에 가십니까?

정거장

10. 김: 정거장에 갑니다.

정거장에서

하겠습니다

무엇을 하겠습니다

11. 박: 정거장에서 무엇을 하겠습니다?

거기

거기에서

만나겠습니다

친구

B

- an mæmnita [it] is not far
 kakkapsimnita/kakkapssimnita/ [it]'s near
 6. Aniyō, an mæmnita. Kakkapsimnita. No, it's not far. It's near(by).

A

- tætanhī very; very much
 komapsimnita I'm grateful
 7. Tætanhī komapsimnita. Thank you very much.

B

- kwæanchanhsimnita [that]'s O.K.
 8. Aniyō, kwæanchanhsimnita. (No,) Not at all.

Dialogue BA

- eti e in what place; to what place
 kasimnikka }
 kamnikka } do [you] go?
 9. eti e kasimnikka? Where are you going? ('Where do you go?')

B

- cəngkəcang railroad station
 10. Cəngkəcang e kamnita. I'[m] go[ing] to the station.

A

- cəngkəcang esə at the station; from the station
 hakessimnikka will you do?
 muəs (il) hakessimnikka what will you do?
 11. Cəngkəcang esə muəs (il) What are you going there for? ('What are you going to do at the station?')
 hakessimnikka?

12. 김 : 거기에서 친구를 만나겠습니다.

누구

13. 박 : 그 친구는 누구입니까?

그분

그분을

14. 김 : 제임스 선생입니다. 그분을 압니까?

모릅니다

학교 선생

15. 박 : 아니요, 모릅니다. 학교 선생입니까?

아닙니다

외교관

16. 김 : 아니요, 학교 선생이 아닙니다. 외교관입니다.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. 알겠습니까?

18. 예, 알겠습니다.

19. 아니요, 모르겠습니다.

20. 다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.

21. 잊어 버렸습니다., 잊었습니다.

B

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| kəki | that place |
| kəki esə | at that place; there |
| mannakessimnita | [I] will meet |
| chinku | friend |
12. Kəki esə chinku lil mannakessimnita. I'm going to meet a friend there.

A

- | | |
|------|------------------|
| nuku | who; what person |
|------|------------------|
13. Kɪ chinku nin nuku imnikka? Who is he ('that friend')?

B

- | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| kɪ pun | he (honored); ('that person') |
| kɪ pun ɪl | him (as direct object) |
14. Ceimsɪ Sənsəŋ imnita. Kɪ pun ɪl amnikka? (He is) Mr. James. Do you know him?

A

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| molimnita | [I] do not know |
| hakkyo sənsəŋ | (school) teacher |
15. Aniyo, molimnita. Hakkyo sənsəŋ imnikka? No, I don't know [him]. Is he a teacher?

B

- | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| an imnita | [he] is not |
| wekyokwan | diplomat; foreign service personnel |
16. Aniyo, hakkyo sənsəŋ ɪ an imnita. Wekyokwan imnita. No, [he] is not a (school) teacher. [He] is in the foreign service.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

- | | |
|--|--|
| 17. Alkessimnikka? | Do you understand? ('Will you know?') |
| 18. Ne, alkessimnita. | Yes, I understand. ('Yes, I'll know.') |
| 19. Aniyo, molikessimnita. | No, I don't understand. ('No, I'll not know.') |
| 20. Tasɪ (hanpən) malssim-hasipsiyo. | Please say [it] once more. |
| 21. Ice pelyəssimnita. }
Icessimnita. | I forgot [it]. |

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

1. Yepose yo. 'Hello there!' ('Please look here.') is the informal polite equivalent of the less frequently used form Yeposipsiyo. Yepose yo. is said only when you try to get the attention of a passerby and is not said as the equivalent of the English greeting expression 'Hi!' or 'Hello.' Yepose yo! also occurs regularly when you make and/or receive a phone call.
Kil com mule pokessimnita. ('I'll inquire [you] about the street a little.') is used when you ask someone for street directions.
2. The verb stem chac- means 'to look for (something, someone)', 'to find', 'to get (money at the bank)', 'to claim (something)', etc.
3. Seul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka? means literally 'Do you know the street which goes to Seoul Station?' The phrase 'place noun + e kanin kil' is the equivalent of English 'the way to + place noun.'
5. The verb stem in Memnikka? 'Is [it] far?' is me(1)-. 1 in me(1)- is dropped when either -(1)mnita or -(1)mnikka ending is added to the stem.
13. Nuku 'who' or 'what person' is a noun. When nuku is used as the subject of a sentence, with the particle 1/ka, it has the irregular form nuka. When other particles follow, the full form nuku occurs. For example, nuku lil 'whom', nuku wa 'with whom', nuku eke 'to whom', nuku e 'whose', etc.
14. Ki pun 'he (honored)' is the politer equivalent of ki salam ('that person'). Salam is a free noun, whereas pun occurs only as a post-noun.
15. The verb stem mol1- 'do not know' is the negative of the verb stem a(1)- 'know'. When one of -(1)mnita, -(1)mnikka, -(1)psita and -(1)sipsiyo endings is added to the stem a(1)-, 1 is dropped and is not pronounced.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Intransitive vs. Transitive

Korean verbs fall into two main classes: Action Verbs and Description Verbs.

An action verb is used in sentences like 'X does something' or 'X takes a certain action', whereas a description verb is used in sentences like 'X is in such and such a state'. A Korean action verb corresponds generally to an English verb; a Korean description verb, to English 'be + adjective'.

The only difference between action and description verbs is that most description verbs do not occur in either propositative or imperative sentences. Otherwise, the forms of description verbs are similar to those of action verbs.

Korean verbs are further classified into another two main classes: Transitive and Intransitive. A transitive verb is one which may be preceded by an object, that is, noun + 11/111 may precede the verb. There is no change in the verb itself. An intransitive verb is one which is never preceded by an object. Both transitive and intransitive verbs may be preceded by an emphasized subject, that is, noun + 1/ka.

All description verbs are intransitive verbs; most action verbs are transitive, but some are intransitive and others are both transitive and intransitive. Examples:

Group 1 (intransitive verbs)

Hakkyo ka <u>kakkapsimnita</u> .	'The school is near.'
Chæk i <u>cohsimnita</u> .	'The book is good.'
Yeki ese tassakwan i <u>mæ(11)mnikka?</u>	'Is the embassy far from here?'
Haksæng i <u>kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'The student is studying.'
Hakkyo ka <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'School begins.'

Group 2 (transitive verbs)

Yænge 111 <u>pæumnita</u> .	'[I]'m learning English.'
Hankuk mal 11 <u>kalichimnita</u> .	'[I]'m teaching Korean.'
Yænge chæk 11 <u>1(1)kimnita</u> .	'[I] read an English book.'
Hakkyo 111 <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'[I] begin school.'

Note that inflected forms (e.g. 'verbals') may occur as complete sentences. In Korean when the context or situation is clear as to the subject and/or topic of a sentence, the speaker often omits the subject or the topic, and the sentence consists of the verbal alone, or the verbal plus its modifiers and/or objects.

The topic/subject in the following examples may be omitted.

Examples:

(Sənsəŋ in) ətɪ e kamnikka?	'Where are (you) going?'
(Cə nin) hakkyo e kamnita.	'(I) am going to school.'
Ne, (hakkyo ka) məmnita.	'Yes, [it] ('the school') is far.'

2. Future Tense in Korean

Tenses in a Korean sentence are indicated in verbals. The form -kess- is infixed between the verb stem and the verb ending to mark the future tense. There is a small class of forms which occur after verb stems but always before verb endings. We shall call them Verb Suffixes. The form -kess- is called the Future Tense Suffix. When a verbal is a statement sentence and includes -kess-, it indicates the speaker's intention for the future. If the verbal which includes -kess- is a question sentence, the speaker asks the addressee about his future intention or opinion. If the subject or the topic of the sentence is other than the speaker or the addressee, the sentence which includes -kess- denotes an opinion or presumption about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Examples;

(Cə nin) hakkyo e kakessimnita.	'I will go to school.'
(Cə ka) Yəŋgə lil pəukessimnita.	'I will study English.'
(Sənsəŋ in) muəs il hakessimnikka?	{ 'What are you going to do?' 'What will you do?'
Chinku lil mannakessimnikka?	'Are you going to meet a friend?'
Hakkyo ka kakkapkessimnikka?	'Will the school be near (do you think)?'
Kim Sənsəŋ i cip e isskessimnita.	'Mr. Kim must be home (I suppose).'

3. Honorifics

Whenever the subject and/or the topic in the sentence is honored, a verb suffix -(1)si- is added immediately after the verb stem. We shall call the suffix -(1)si- the Honorific Suffix. When -(1)si- and other suffixes such as the future tense suffix -kess- occur in the same verb, the honorific suffix -(1)si- always precedes other suffixes. In an inflected form the honorific suffix is not used if the subject in the sentence is inferior to the speaker. Note that the speaker never honors himself, that is, the suffix -(1)si- in a verbal does not occur when the subject and/or the topic is the speaker. -Si- occurs after a stem ending in a vowel; -isi- after a stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

a. ətɪ e kamnikka?	'Where are [you] going.'
ətɪ e kasimnikka?	'Where are [you] going?' (H)
ətɪ e kasikessimnikka?	'Where will [you] go?' (H)

- b. Mues il hamnikka? 'What do [you] do?'
 Mues il hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?' (H)
 Mues il hasikessimnikka? 'What will [you] do?' (H)
- c. Kim Sensaeng i kalichimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.'
 Kim Sensaeng i kalichisimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.' (H)
 Kim Sensaeng i kalichisikessimnita. 'Mr. Kim will teach (I think).' (H)
- d. Ce salam in Yenge lil psumnita. 'He's learning English.'
 Ce salam in Yenge lil Pausimnita. 'He's learning English.' (H)
 Ce salam in Yenge lil pousikessimnita. 'He will learn English.' (H)

4. Negative an

There are two ways of expressing negation in Korean statement and question sentences. One simple way is the use of the word an immediately before an inflected expression. However, with some verbs, an does not normally occur; another form of negation is used. (See Unit 4.) Compare:

- a. Hakkyo e kamnita. '[I] go to school.'
 Hakkyo e an kamnita. '[I] don't go to school.'
- b. Kim Sensaeng i omnita. 'Mr. Kim's coming.'
 Kim sensaeng i an omnita. 'Mr. Kim is not coming.'
- c. Ne, kalichimnita. 'Yes, [I] teach.'
 Aniyo, an kalichimnita. 'No, [I] don't teach.'

5. Particle ese 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'

A place nominal + ese denotes either dynamic location or point of departure for the following inflected expression depending on what verb follows after it. Examples:

- Ce nin Seul ese omnita. 'I'm coming from Seoul.'
 Hakkyo ka cip ese memnita. 'The school is far from the house.'
 Uli nin kyosil ese kongpu-hamnita. 'We study in the classroom.'
 Cengkecang ese chinku lil mannakessimnita. 'I'll meet a friend at the station.'
 Kim Sensaeng i Seul ese il-hamnita. 'Mr. Kim works in Seoul.'

Compare the above construction with place nominal + e in Unit 2. Before issimnita 'exists', a place nominal + e may occur but not a place nominal + ese.

6. Particle e 'to'

A place nominal + e followed by either ka- 'to go' or o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the action of the inflected expression. Compare e with lo/1lo in Unit 2, Grammar Note 2. Observe the examples:

Ce nin hakkyo e kamnita.

'I'm going to school.'

Ce e cip e osipsiyo.

'Please come to my house.'

Cengkəcang e kakessimnikka?

'Will you go to the station?'

Kim Sensang in Mikuk e an omnita.

'Mr. Kim is not coming to America.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>eti</u> il chacsimnikka? | What (place) are [you] looking for? |
| 2. <u>Mues</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | What are you looking for? |
| 3. <u>eni hakkyo</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | What school are you looking for? |
| 4. <u>eni haksang</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which student are you looking for? |
| 5. <u>eni kil</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which street are you looking for? |
| 6. <u>eni pakhwacem</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which department store are you looking for? |
| 7. <u>Nuku</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Whom are you looking for? |
| 8. <u>eni kyosil</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which classroom are you looking for? |
| 9. <u>eni sensang</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which teacher are you looking for? |
| 10. <u>eni ai</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which child are you looking for? |
| 11. <u>eni pun</u> (il) chacsimnikka | Whom (H) are you looking for? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Seul Yek</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Seoul Station? |
| 2. <u>Seul Sicheng</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Seoul City Hall? |
| 3. <u>Cengkəcang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the station? |
| 4. <u>Pakhwacem</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the department store? |
| 5. <u>Sicang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the market place? |
| 6. <u>Kongwen</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the park? |
| *7. <u>Tapang</u> e kanin il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the tearoom? |
| *8. <u>Siktang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the restaurant? |
| *9. <u>Kim Sensang cip</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Mr. Kim's house? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Ttokpalo kasipsiyo. | Go straight ahead. |
| 2. <u>Wen ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the left. |
| 3. <u>Olin ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the right. |
| *4. <u>I ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go this way (direction). |
| *5. <u>Ce ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go that way (direction). |
| 6. <u>Seul Yek ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to Seoul Station. |
| 7. <u>Cengkechang ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the railroad station. |
| 8. <u>Sicheng ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go toward the City Hall. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Tssakwan ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the U.S. Embassy. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Yeki ese memnikka? | Is it far from here? |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from school? |
| 3. <u>Cengkechang</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the station? |
| 4. <u>Mikuk Tssakwan</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the U.S. Embassy? |
| 5. <u>Seul Yek</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from Seoul Station? |
| 6. <u>Sicheng</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the City Hall? |
| *7. <u>Sangcem</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the store? |
| 8. <u>Pekhwacem</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the department store? |
| *9. <u>Tapang</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the tearoom? |
| *10. <u>Kongwen</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the park? |
| *11. <u>Sicang</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the market place? |
| 12. <u>Mikuk</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from America? |
| *13. <u>Uphyenkuk</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the post office? |
| *14. <u>Samusil</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the office? |
| *15. <u>Kikchang</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the theatre? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Na nin cəngkəcang e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the railroad station. |
| 2. Na nin <u>kongwen</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the park. |
| 3. Na nin <u>kikcang</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the theatre. |
| 4. Na nin <u>inhəng</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the bank. |
| 5. Na nin <u>sangcəm</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the store. |
| 6. Na nin <u>Cungkuk siktang</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to a Chinese restaurant. |
| 7. Na nin <u>Səul Uphənkuk</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Post Office. |
| 8. Na nin <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the Bank of Korea. |
| 9. Na nin <u>Səul Pəkhwacəm</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Department Store. |
| *10. Na nin <u>təsakwan siktang</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to the Embassy dining hall. |
| *11. Na nin <u>na e samusil</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to my office. |
| *12. Na nin <u>Ceimsi Sənsəng cip</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to Mr. James' house. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kəki esə muəs (il) həkessimnikka? | What are you going to do there?
('What will you do there? ') |
| 2. <u>Cəngkəcang</u> esə muəs (il) həkessimnikka? | What are you going to do at the station? |
| 3. <u>Tapang</u> esə muəs (il) həkessimnikka? | What are you going to do at the tea-room? |
| 4. <u>Kongwen</u> esə muəs (il) həkessimnikka? | What are you going to do in the park? |
| 5. <u>Hakkyo</u> esə muəs (il) həkessimnikka? | What are you going to do at school? |
| 6. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>chəkessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to look for at school? |
| 7. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>pəukessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to study at school? |
| 8. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>kalichikessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to teach at school? |
| 9. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>mal-həkessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to say at school? |
| 10. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>mule</u> <u>pəkessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to inquire about at school? |
| 11. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>kongpu-</u> <u>həkessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to study at school? |
| 12. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>ilkkessimnikka</u> ? | What are you going to read at school? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. K ₁ chinku nin nuku imnikka? | Who is that friend [of yours]? |
| 2. K ₁ <u>salam</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that man? |
| 3. C _e <u>haksæng</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that student over there? |
| 4. C _e <u>Mikuk salam</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that American over there? |
| 5. C _e <u>Ilpon salam</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that Japanese over there? |
| 6. C _e <u>pun</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that man (honored)? |
| 7. C _e <u>Mikuk wekyokwan</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that American diplomat? |
| 8. K ₁ <u>Hankuk haksæng</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is the Korean student? |
| 9. <u>Hankuk mal sæsæng</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is the Korean (language) teacher? |
| 10. C _e <u>pun</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is that lady? |
| 11. C _e <u>ai</u> nin nuku imnikka? | Who is that child? |

H. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tutor: eti lil chacsimnikka? /Søul Yæk/
/Seoul Station/ | 'What (place) are you looking for?'
/Seoul Station/ |
| Student: Søul Yæk il chacsimnita. | 'I'm looking for Seoul Station.' |
| 1. Muës il chacsimnikka? /Hankuk mal
chæk/ | Hankuk mal chæk il chacsimnita. |
| 2. eti e kasimnikka? /uphyenkuk/ | Uphyenkuk e kamnita. |
| 3. K ₁ Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka?
/Ceimsi/ | Ceimsi imnita. |
| 4. Sæsæng in muës hakessimnikka?
/Hankuk mal kongpu/ | (Na nin) Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)
hakessimnita. |
| 5. Cængkæcang esë nuku lil
manakessimnikka? /chinku/ | Chinku lil manakessimnita. |
| 6. Pækhwacem i eti e issimnikka?
/uphyenkuk twi e/ | Uphyenkuk twi e issimnita. |
| 7. Kim Sæsæng in hakkyo esë muës il
kalichimnikka? /Yenge/ | Yenge lil kalichimnita. |
| 8. eni kænmul i inhæng imnikka? /wen
ccok kænmul/ | Wen ccok kænmul i inhæng imnita. |
| 9. eti esë chinku lil mannakessimnikka?
/tapang/ | Tapang esë mannakessimnita. |
| 10. Søul Yæk in eti lo kamnikka?
/olin ccok/ | Olin ccok ilo kamnita. |

11. Nuka Hankuk mal il pæumnikka?

/Mikuk salam/

Mikuk salam i pæumnita.

12. Sænsæng samusil i eti e issimnikka?

/tæsakwan kænmul/

Tæsakwan kænmul e issimnita.

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo sænsæng imnikka?

'Is [he] a school teacher?'

Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo sænsæng i)
an imnita.

'No, [he] is not.'

1. I kəs i chæksang imnikka?

Aniyo, (chæksang i) an imnita.

2. (Hakkyo ka) mæmnikka?

Aniyo, an mæmnita.

3. Cængkæcang e kamnikka?

Aniyo, an kamnita.

4. Kɪ pun il amnikka?

Aniyo, molimnita.

5. Hankuk mal il pæumnikka?

Aniyo, an pæumnita.

6. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka?

Aniyo, an mannakessimnita.

7. Yænge lil kalichimnikka?

Aniyo, an kalichimnita.

8. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnikka?

Aniyo, an kakkapsimnita.

9. Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?

Aniyo, an kakessimnita.

10. Kil il mule pokessimnikka?

Aniyo, an mule pokessimnita.

11. Yænphil il chackessimnikka?

Aniyo, an chackessimnita.

J. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yænge lil pæumnikka?

'[Are] you learn[ing] English?'

Student: Yænge lil pæukessimnikka?

'Will you learn English?'

1. Hakkyo e kamnikka?

Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?

2. Muəs il hamnikka?

Muəs il hakessimnikka?

3. Nuku lil mannamnikka?

Nuku lil mannakessimnikka?

4. Ilpon mal il pæumnikka?

Ilpon mal il pæukessimnikka?

5. Pækhwacəm il chacsimnikka?

Pækhwacəm il chackessimnikka?

6. (Sænsæng in) cip e issimnikka?

(Sænsæng in) cip e isskessimnikka?

7. Nuku lil pwepsimnikka?

Nuku lil pwepkessimnikka?

8. Nuka Yænge lil kalichimnikka?

Nuka Yænge lil kalichikessimnikka?

K. Response Drill

- Tutor: Kongpu-hakessimnikka? 'Will you study?'
 Student: Ne, (na nin) kongpu-hakessimnita. 'Yes, I'll study.'
1. Hankuk mal il pæukessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il pæukessimnita.
 2. Cip e isskessimnikka? Ne (na nin) cip e isskessimnita.
 3. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) chinku lil mannakessimnita.
 4. Yøngø lil kalichikessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Yøngø lil kalichikessimnita.
 5. inhæng e kakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) inhæng e kakessimnita.
 6. Hakkyo e an kakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) hakkyo e an kakessimnita.
 7. K1 chæk il chackessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) k1 chæk il chackessimnita.
 8. Kil il mulø pokessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) kil il mulø pokessimnita.
 9. K1 kës il hakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) k1 kës il hakessimnita.
 10. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnita.

L. Response Drill

- Tutor: Muës il kongpu-hakessimnikka? 'What will you study?' /Chinese/
 /Cungkuk mal/
 Student: Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnita. 'I will study Chinese.'
1. eti e kasikessimnikka? /cøngkøcang/ Cøngkøcang e kakessimnita.
 2. eti esø chinku lil mannakessimnikka? Tapange esø mannakessimnita.
 /tapang/
 3. en1 mal il pæukessimnikka? Hankuk mal il pæukessimnita.
 /Hankuk mal/
 4. Nuku e samusil il chackessimnikka? Kim Søsæng e samusil il
 /Kim Søsæng/ chackessimnita.
 5. Søsæng in cip esø muës il (Cip esø) chæk il ilkkessimnita.
 hakessimnikka? /chæk/
 6. Tapang esø nuku lil mannakessimnikka? Chinku lil mannakessimnita.
 /chinku/
 7. Nuka Yøngø lil kalichikessimnikka? Mikuk salam i kalichikessimnita.
 /Mikuk salam/

M. Grammar Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Mues il kongpu-hamnikka?

'What are you studying?'

Student: Mues il kongpu-hasimnikka?

'What are you studying?'

1. eti e kamnikka?

eti e kasimnikka?

2. Mues il hamnikka?

Mues il hasimnikka?

3. eni mal il pæumnikka?

eni mal il pæusimnikka?

4. Nuku lil chacsimnikka?

Nuku lil chacisimnikka?

5. Nuka Yenge lil kalichimnikka?

Nuka Yenge lil kalichisimnikka?

6. Səul Yek e kanin kil il amnikka?

Səul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka?

7. K1 chinku nin nuku imnikka?

K1 chinku nin nuku isimnikka?

8. Cə pun in hakkyo səsəng imnikka?

Cə pun in hakkyo səsəng isimnikka?

9. (Səsəng in) wekyokwan imnikka?

Səsəng in wekyokwan isimnikka?

10. I salam il molimnikka?

I salam il molisimnikka?

11. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka?

Hankuk mal il mal-hasimnikka?

N. Response Drill (as a level drill)

Tutor: Ceims1 Sənsəng in eti e kamnikka?

'Where does Mr. James go?'

/hakkyo/

/school/

Student: Hakkyo e kasimnita.

'He goes to school.'

1. Ceims1 Sənsəng in mues il kongpu-hamnikka? /Hankuk mal/

Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnita.

2. Ceims1 Sənsəng in nuku lil chacsimnikka? /Pak Sənsəng/

Pak Sənsəng il chacisimnita.

3. Ceims1 Sənsəng in nuku lil mannamnikka? /chinku/

Chinku lil mannasimnita.

4. Ceims1 Sənsəng in Səul Yek e kanin kil il amnikka? /aniyo/

Aniyo, molisimnita.

5. Ceims1 Sənsəng in Yenge lil kalichimnikka? /aniyo/

Aniyo, an kalichisimnita.

6. Ceims1 Sənsəng in wekyokwan imnikka? /ne/

Ne, wekyokwan isimnita.

7. Ceims1 Sənsəng in Yenge lil pæumnikka? /aniyo/

Aniyo, an pæusimnita.

8. Ceims1 Sənsəng in Yenge lil ilksimnikka? /aniyo/

Aniyo, an ilksimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Ask a passerby:

- a. if he knows the way to USIA.
- b. if it is near.
- c. if the building (over there) is the railroad station.
- d. if he is going in the direction of the City Hall.
- e. if the park is far.
- f. if the station is to the left of the market place.

2. Mr. Kim asks:

You answer that:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a. where you're going. | you're going to the station. |
| b. what you'll do there. | you'll meet a friend. |
| c. who your friend is. | he is an American. |
| d. what your friend does. | he is in the foreign service. |
| e. how you know him. | he is with the U.S. Embassy. |
| f. if your friend speaks Korean. | he speaks a little. |
| g. if you know Mr. Park. | you know him well. |
| h. if you are a Korean teacher. | you are not. |
| i. if you're going to learn Japanese. | you're not. |

3. Tell Pak Sensang the following:

1. The department store is near the street.
2. The classroom is in this building.
3. The park is behind my house.
4. The store is next to the theatre.
5. The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.
6. The market (place) is in front of the Chinese restaurant.
7. The USIS is this way.
8. The Ambassador's office is on your right.
9. The school building is next to the inn.
10. This is the map of that lady's child.

4. Find out the following information from Pak Sensang:

1. Which building is the department store.
2. Where he is going.
3. What Mr. James does.

4. Whom he's going to meet.
5. Who teaches Korean.
6. Which classroom he is looking for.
7. Who his friend is.
8. How he knows him.
9. If he knows the way to the City Hall.
10. If he is going to be home.

5. Tell Pak Sensang that:

1. you're looking for Kim's house.
2. you're in the foreign service.
3. you're going to meet James at the restaurant.
4. your office is not far from here.
5. you will be home.
6. you don't know that Korean's name.
7. this Korean lady is not { in the foreign service.
a diplomat.
8. the Bank of Korea is straight ahead.
9. you're not going to come to school.
10. the post office is not near.

제 4 과 물건 사기

(대화 A)

어제

갔읍니까

1. 이 : 김 선생, 어제 어디에 갔읍니까?

시내

상점

갔읍니다

2. 김 : 시내 상점에 갔읍니다.

샀어요

3. 이 : 무엇을 샀어요?

용품

이상 용품

4. 김 : 이상 용품을 좀 샀읍니다.

오늘

또

가겠어요

안 가겠어요

5. 이 : 오늘은 시내에 또 안 가겠어요?

글씨

글씨요

채방

UNIT 4. Shopping
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ece | yesterday |
| kassimnikka | did [you] go? |
| 1. Kim Sensang, ece eti e kassimnikka? | Where did you go yesterday, Mr. Kim? |

Kim

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| sinæ | downtown |
| sangcem | store |
| kassessimnita | [I] went; [I] had gone |
| 2. Sinæ sangcem e kassessimnita. | [I] went to a store downtown. |

Lee

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| sasse yo | did [you] buy? |
| 3. Mues il sasse yo? | What did [you] buy? |

Kim

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| yongphum | necessary goods |
| ilsang yongphum | daily necessities |
| 4. Ilsang yongphum il com sassimnita. | [I] bought some daily necessities. |

Lee

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| onil | today |
| tto | again |
| kakesse yo | will you go? |
| an kakesse yo | ('will you not go?') |
| 5. Onil in sinæ e tto an kakesse yo? | Are you going downtown again today? |
| | ('Will you not go downtown again?') |

Kim

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| kilsse } | well; maybe |
| kilsse yo } | |
| chækpang | bookstore |
| tillikessimnita | [I]'ll stop by |
| com | a little; a little while |
| 6. Kilsse yo. Nan nin chækpang e com | Maybe. I'll stop by a bookstore |
| tillikessimnita. | (for a while). |

들르겠습니다

좀

6. 김 : 글썽해요. 나는 책방에 좀 들르겠습니다.

그럼

같이

나와

나와 같이

갑시다

7. 이 : 그럼, 나와 같이 갑시다.

그럼시다

그려갑시다

사겠어요

8. 김 : 예, 그럼시다. 선생은 무엇을 사겠어요?

나도

보겠습니다

값

비쌉니까?

9. 이 : 나도 책을 좀 보겠습니다. 책 값이 비쌉니까?

그리

비싸지 않습니다

쌉니다

10. 김 : 아니요, 그리 비싸지 않습니다. 쌉니다.

Lee

kiləm

if so; then

kathi

together

na wa

with me

na wa kathi

(together) with me

kapsita

let us go

7. Kiləm, na wa kathi kapsita.

Then, let's go together.

Kim

kiləhapsita }

let's do so

kiləpsita }

sakesse yo

will you buy?

8. Ne, kiləpsita. Sənsəng in muəs il
sakesse yo?Let's (do so). What are you going
to buy?Lee

na to

I also; me too

pokessimnita

I'll see [it]; I'll look at
[it]

kaps

price

pissamnikka

is [it] expensive?

9. Na to chæk il com pokessimnita.
Chæk kaps i pissamnikka?I would like to see some books too.
('I'll also see books a little.')
Are books expensive?Kim

kili

so; like that

pissaci anhsimnita/anssimnita/

[it] is not expensive

ssamnita

[it] is cheap

10. Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita.
Ssamnita.No, [they]'re not so expensive.
[They] are [fairly] cheap.Dialogue B

(--at the store--)

Cəmwən

ese

quickly; (please)

osipsiyo

come!

ese osipsiyo

(welcome!); come in

11. ese osipsiyo. Muəs il sasikessimnikka? Please come in. May I help you?
('What would you like to buy?')

(대화 B)

어서

오십시오

어서 오십시오

11. 점원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 사시겠습니까?

여기에서

수건

팝니다, 팝니까

12. 이 : 여기에서 수건을 팝니까?

색

무슨 색

원하세요

13. 점원 : 예, 팝니다. 무슨 색을 원하세요.

노란 색

좋아합니다

14. 이 : 노란 색을 좋아합니다. 노란 것이 있어요?

여러 가지

어떻습니까

15. 점원 : 여러 가지가 있습니다. 이것이 어떻습니까?

얼마

좋습니다

16. 이 : 예, 좋습니다. 그거 얼마입니까?

Lee

yeki ese

here; at this place

suken

towel

phalimnikka }

do [you] sell?

phamnikka }

12. Yeki ese suken il phamnikka?

Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?')

Cemwen

musin

what sort of

sæk

color

wenhase yo

do [you] want?

13. Ne, phamnita. Musin sæk il

Yes, we do. What color would you like? ('What sort of color do you want?')

wenhase yo?

Lee

nolan sæk

yellow color

cohahamnita

[I] like; [I] prefer

14. Nolan sæk il cohahamnita. Nolan

('[I] like yellow color.') Yellow, please. ('Do you have yellow ones?')

kæs i isse yo?

Cemwen

yele kaci

several kinds; many kinds

ettehsimnikka

how is [it]?

15. Yele kaci ka issimnita. I kæs i

We have several kinds. How do you like this one? ('How is this one?')

ettehsimnikka?

Lee

elma

how much

cohsimnita

[that]'s good

16. Ne, cohsimnita. K1 kæs, elma

On, that's nice. How much is it?

imnikka?

Cemwen

osip

50

osip Wen

fifty Won W50

17. Osip Wen e phamnita.

W50. ('We sell it for W50')

오십

오십 원

17. 점원 : 오십 원에 팝니다.

하나

주십시오

18. 이 : 그거 하나 주십시오.

19. 점원 : 예, 여기(에) 있습니다.

Lee

hana

one

cusipsiyo

give [me]

18. Ki kes, hana cusipsiyo.

Please give [me] one [of them].

Cəmwen

19. Ne, yeki (e) issimnita.

Here you are.

NUMERALS (1)

1 il	11 sip-il	21 isip-il	31 samsip-il
2 i	12 sip-i	22 isip-i	40 sasip
3 sam	13 sip-sam	23 isip-sam	50 osip
4 sa	14 sip-sa	24 isip-sa	60 yuksip ~ nyuksip
5 o	15 sip-o	25 isip-o	70 chilsip
6 yuk	16 sip-yuk /simnyuk/	26 isip-yuk /isimnyuk/	80 phalsip
7 chil	17 sip-chil	27 isip-chil	90 kusip
8 phal	18 sip-phal	28 isip-phal	91 kusip-il
9 ku	19 sip-ku	29 isip-ku	99 kusip-ku
10 sip	20 i-sip	30 samsip	100 (il)pæk
101 pæk-il	200 ipæk	1,001 chən-il	
102 pæk-i	300 sampæk	1,011 chən-sip-il	
103 pæk-sam	400 sapæk	1,111 chən-pæk-sip-il	
104 pæk-sa	500 opæk	2,000 ichən	
105 pæk-o	600 yukpæk /nyukpæk/	3,000 samchən	
106 pæk-yuk	700 chilpæk	4,000 sachən	
107 pæk-chil	800 phalpæk	5,000 ochən	
108 pæk-phal	900 kupæk	6,000 yukchən ~ nyukchən	
109 pæk-ku	999 kupæk-kusip-ku	7,000 chilchən	
110 pæk-sip	1,000 (il)chən	10,000 (il)man	
	100,000 sipman /simman/	1,000,000 pækman /pəngman/	

수 자 (1)

1	일	11	십 일	21	이십 일	31	삼십 일
2	이	12	십 이	22	이십 이	40	사십
3	삼	13	십 삼	23	이십 삼	50	오십
4	사	14	십 사	24	이십 사	60	육십
5	오	15	십 오	25	이십 오	70	칠십
6	육	16	십 육	26	이십 육	80	팔십
7	칠	17	십 칠	27	이십 칠	90	구십
8	팔	18	십 팔	28	이십 팔	91	구십 일
9	구	19	십 구	29	이십 구	99	구십 구
10	십	20	이십	30	삼십	100	(일)백

101	백 일	200	이백	1,001	천 일
102	백 이	300	삼백	1,011	천 십 일
103	백 삼	400	사백	1,111	천 백 십 일
104	백 사	500	오백	2,000	이천
105	백 오	600	육백	3,000	삼천
106	백 육	700	칠백	4,000	사천
107	백 칠	800	팔백	5,000	오천
108	백 팔	900	구백	6,000	육천
109	백 구	999	구백 구십 구	7,000	칠천
110	백 십	1,000	(일)천	10,000	(일)만
				100,000	십만
				1,000,000	백만

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Sinæ ('the inside of city') originally meant any part of a city which had walls around it. Today, it refers to the downtown area in general.
3. Sasse yo? 'Did [you] buy?' is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite form Sassimnikka?
5. Tto 'again', 'also', 'too', is an adverb which occurs before a sentence, a verbal, or other words of a modifier class.
6. Kilsse yo. 'Well...' is a kind of hesitating response to or comment upon someone's question, statement, suggestion or command.
9. Chæk kaps 'the price of the book' is a noun phrase which literally means 'book price'. Kaps 'price' occurs after certain nouns. For example, cip kaps 'the rent' or 'the price of a house', ppesî kaps 'bus fare', imsik kaps 'food price'.
10. Kili before verbs or words of a modifier class in a negative statement means '(not) so', '(not) very' or '(not)that'. In propositative, imperative and question sentences, it means 'like that', 'such a' or 'in such a way'.
11. esë osipsiyo. ('Come quickly.') is a general greeting expression for welcoming; it is commonly used by business people to customers.
12. Yeki esë X il/lil pha(lî)mnikka? ('Do you sell X here?') is one common way of asking store clerks a certain item you want to buy. Yeki e X i/ka issimnikka? ('Do you have X here?' or 'Is there X here?') is another common question in such a situation. The stem of pha(lî)mnikka? 'Do [you] sell?' is pha(lî)-.
13. Musin 'what sort of', 'what', occurs before a noun, and asks about the type or the characteristics of the noun: musin chæk 'what kind of book', musin mal 'what language', musin salam 'what kind of person', musin cip 'what type of house', musin cha 'what kind of car'.
14. Nolan 'yellow', hayan 'white', phalan 'blue', kkaman 'black', ppalkan 'red', are all modifier class words formed from the verb stems nola- 'to be yellow', haya- 'to be white', phala- 'to be blue', kkama(h)- 'to be black', ppalka- 'to be red', by the addition of the modifier ending -n/in/nin (See Unit 5). The verb stem cohaha- 'to like' has an unpredictable negative form: silhæha- 'to dislike'.

15. Yele 'several', 'many' ('more than a few but not too many in number') is a numeral which may occur before free or post nouns only as a determinative: yele kaci 'many kinds', yele salam 'several people', yele pun 'many people (H)'. Kaci 'kind' occurs only as a post-noun preceded by numerals of Korean origin, and never occurs after other modifiers. Examples:

<u>yele kaci</u>	'several kinds'
<u>han kaci</u>	'one kind'
<u>tu kaci</u>	'two kinds'
<u>se kaci</u>	'three kinds'

In the verbal ettëhsimnikka? 'How is [it]?', ettëh- 'how is' is its verb stem, of which inflected forms are used only as question words. Most Korean question words are either nouns or adverbs.

16. The verb stem coh- 'to be good', 'to be nice', 'to be O.K.', has as its antonymous verb stem nappi- 'to be bad'. elma imnikka? 'How much is [it]?' is a fixed expression when you ask about the price of something. elma 'how much' occurs always as a noun and is never used as a modifier.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Informal Polite Speech

We noticed in the Grammar Notes of Unit 2 that Formal Polite Speech is a level and/or style of speech. In standard Korean, there is another style and/or level of speech which is no less polite than the Formal Polite but is considered more casual and friendly. This style of speech is called Informal Polite Speech. Usually both styles are mixed in one's speech, but in general women tend to use more informal polite speech than men. Informal Polite Speech is often called Yo speech style, because any sentence which ends in the particle yo is Informal Polite Speech. Regardless of the sentence type (i.e. statement, question, imperative, propositative), yo at the end of an utterance is the sign that is an Informal Polite sentence.

When the particle yo occurs immediately after a verb which does not have a verb-ending but is inflected from the stem in a certain form ending in a vowel, the inflected form which precedes yo is called an Infinitive. Note that an infinitive is a word, whereas a verb stem is not a word. An infinitive is formed from a verb stem by a certain phonetic change at the end of the stem.

Infinitives are formed not only from verb stems but also from verb stem plus suffix(es), that is, verb stem + (1)si + (tense suffixes) can be made into infinitives by adding e at the end of the suffixes. For example, the verb stem

ha- 'to do' + (suffixes) can have the following kinds of infinitive:

hæ (or hayæ), hasie (or hase), hakesse, hæsse (or hayesse), hasikesse, hasiæsse, etc.

For the time being, however, our term Infinitive refers to the inflected form without any suffix. Yo may be added to the infinitive to make an informal polite speech present form. The verbs we have had so far are listed below.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Formal Polite Present statement</u>	<u>Informal Polite Present</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hæ yo
'to study'	kongpu-ha-	kongpu-hamnita	kongpu-hæ yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isse yo
'to learn'	pæu-	pæumnita	pæwe yo
'to teach'	kalichi-	kalichimnita	kalichie yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilk(s)imnita	ilke yo
'to ask'	mule po-	mule pomnita	mule pwa yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo
'to be so'	kilæh-	kilæhsimnita	kilæhæ yo <u>or</u> kilæ yo
'to know'	a(1)-	amnita	alæ yo
'to look for'	chac-	chac(s)imnita	chace yo
'to be far'	mæ(1)-	mæmnita	mæle yo
'to meet'	manna-	mannamnita	manna yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo
'to stop by'	tilll-	tillimnita	tillæ yo
'to look at'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo <u>or</u> poa yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo
'to sell'	pha(1)-	pha(1)imnita	phalæ yo
'to like'	cohaha-	cohamnita	cohahæ yo
'to want'	wænha-	wænhamnita	wænhæ yo
'to be good'	coh-	cohsimnita	coha yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cue yo

Note that the verbs which occur hereafter will be treated individually for the formation of Infinitives. Refer to the following rules and the glossary at the end of the book for the infinitive form of each verb.

Observe the following regularities in forming infinitives from verb stems. Do not try to memorize the rules at this point; rather it is simpler to memorize each inflected form as a separate word. It is not necessary to memorize the verbs listed below. Add yo to the infinitive to make informal polite speech:

- a. Stems ending in a or æ do not change:

ka-	ka yo	'goes'
sa-	sa yo	'buys'
sæ-	sæ yo	'stands'

Exception:

ha-	hæ yo <u>or</u> hayæ yo	'does'
-----	-------------------------	--------

- b. Stems ending in e, æ or we have alternative forms:

mæ-	mæ yo <u>or</u> mææ yo	'ties'
twe-	twe yo <u>or</u> tweæ yo	'becomes'

- c. Stems ending in o change o to wa:

o-	wa yo	'comes'
po-	pwa yo	'sees'

- d. Stems ending in i change i to æ:

khi-	khæ yo	'is big'
ssi-	sæ yo	'writes'

- e. Stems ending in u add æ:

cu-	cæ yo	'gives'
tu-	tæ yo	'places'

- f. The copula stem i- changes to iye or iyæ.

- g. Stems ending in i have three alternatives:

swi-	swiæ yo <u>or</u> swiye yo <u>or</u> swyæ yo	'rests'
masi-	masiæ yo <u>or</u> masiye yo <u>or</u> masyæ yo	'drinks'
kitali-	kitaliæ yo <u>or</u> kitaliye yo <u>or</u> kitalyæ yo	'waits (for)'
kalichi-	kalichiæ yo <u>or</u> kalichiye yo <u>or</u> kalichyæ yo	'teaches'

- h. Stems ending in consonants: these are divided into several groups on the basis of the morphophonemic changes of the final sounds.

Most consonant stems belong to Group 1, and are called a-adding stems; Group 2 stems are called a-adding stems; Group 3, we-replacing stems; Group 4, l-dropping stems; Group 5, l-doubling stems. Note that there is a small number of verbs which are not classed into one of the 5 groups. They will be treated separately as irregular verbs.

Group 1

mək-	məkə yo	'eats'
cuk-	cukə yo	'dies'
cap-	cape yo	'holds'
ip-	ipe yo	'wears'
nəlp-	nəlpə yo	'is wide'
pis-	pise yo	'combs'
iss-	isse yo <u>or</u> isse yo	'exists'
əps-	əpse yo <u>or</u> əpse yo	'does not exist'
pəs-	pəse yo	'takes off (clothes, hats, shoes)'
alh-	alhə yo	'aches', 'gets sick'

Group 2

cop-	copa yo	'is narrow'
noph-	nopha yo	'is high'
pokk-	pokka yo	'roasts (beans)'
noh-	noha yo	'places', 'puts'

Group 3

swip-	swiwe yo	'is easy'
elyəp-	elyewe yo	'is difficult'
kakkap-	kakkawə yo	'is near'
alimtap-	alimtawə yo	'is beautiful'

Group 4

mə(1)-	mələ yo	'is far'
ki(1)-	kilə yo	'is long(in length)'
a(1)-	alə yo	'knows'
sa(1)-	sələ yo	'lives'
mantı(1)-	mantilə yo	'makes'

Group 5

moli-	molla yo	'does not know'
-------	----------	-----------------

tall-	talla yo	'is different'
pul-	pulle yo	'calls'
hul-	hulle yo	'flows'

2. Past Tenses

A past tense form of a Korean verb denotes either 'something was in such state' or 'something which has been done', or 'someone took such and such action'.

There are two past tenses in Korean: Simple Past and Remote Past.

The simple past designates any action or description which has been finished before the speech takes place. The remote past denotes an action which was done or happened a relatively long time ago, or a description of a condition which ended a relatively long time ago. The remote past also is used to indicate the more remote of two or more past actions or descriptions occurring in the same context.

Past tenses in Korean are formed by infixing the suffixes -(a, e, ye)ss- for the Simple Past and -(a, e, ye)ssess- for the Remote Past between verb stems and endings. We shall call the suffixes the Past Tense Suffixes. Depending on the final sound of a verb stem, a certain vowel change takes place between verb stem and the past tense suffix. The verb element preceding -ss(ess)- is identical with the infinitive form, so it may be simpler to consider that the past tense is formed by infixing -ss(ess)- between infinitive and ending.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>F. P.</u> <u>Present</u>	<u>Inf. P.</u> <u>Present</u>	<u>F.P.</u> <u>Past</u>	<u>Inf.P.</u> <u>Past</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hæ yo	hæssimnita	hæssæ yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo	kassimnita	kassæ yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo	wassimnita	wassæ yo
'to see'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo	pwassimnita	pwassæ yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo	sassimnita	sassæ yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo	ssassimnita	ssassæ yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo	pissassimnita	pissa yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo	cinassimnita	cinassæ yo
'to want'	wenha-	wenhamnita	wenhæ yo	wenhæssimnita	wenhæssæ yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cue yo	cuessimnita	cuessæ yo
'to meet'	manha-	mannamnita	manha yo	mannassimnita	mannassæ yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isse yo	issessimnita	issessæ yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilksimnita	ilke yo	ilkessimnita	ilkessæ yo
'to be far'	mæ(1)-	mæmnita	mæle yo	mæssimnita	mæssæ yo

'to know'	a(l)-	amnita	alə yo	aləssimnita	aləsse yo
'to be near'	kakkap-	kakkapsimnita	kakkawə yo	kakkawəssimnita	kakkawesse yo
'to be different'	tali-	talimnita	talla yo	tallassimnita	tallasse yo
'not to know'	moli-	molimnita	molla yo	mollassimnita	mollasse yo

3. Particle to

To is a one-shape particle, which following a noun or another particle means 'also' or 'too' in an affirmative sentence; '(not) either' in a negative sentence. When to occurs after the object, topic, or emphasis subject of a sentence, the particles in/nin, il/lil, i/ka respectively are dropped.

Examples:

Na to amnita.	'I know [it], too.'
I kəs to chæk imnikka?	'Is this also a book?'
Ilpon mal to pəwəssimnita.	'[I] have studied Japanese also.'
Kim Sənsəng to molimnita.	'Mr. Kim doesn't know [it], either.'

4. Particle wa/kwa 'with', 'and'

Wa occurs after a word ending in a vowel; kwa after a word ending in a consonant. It occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Personal noun + wa/kwa means 'with the P. N.'

Examples:

<u>Na wa</u> (kathi) kapsita.	'Let us go <u>with me</u> .'
<u>Chinku wa</u> mannassimnita.	'[I] met <u>with a friend</u> .'
<u>Kim Sənsəng kwa</u> okesse yo.	'I'll come <u>with Mr. Kim</u> .'

- b. Noun 1 + wa/kwa + Noun 2 means 'N 1 and N 2'

Examples:

chæk kwa yənphil	'a book and a pencil'
hakkyo wa cip	'a school and a house'

5. -ci + anhsimnita

-ci is a verb ending which is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es). Hereafter, we shall call such a verb form the ci form.

The ci form is an inflected word which occurs before a small class of words. The verb anh- 'not' occurs only after the ci form and is used to mean the verb in the ci form is in negative. The distinction of tenses, levels of speech may be made in the verb anh-.

Compare:

Kaci anh(s)imnita.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anh(s)imnikka?	'Don't [you] go?'
Kaci anhkessimnita.	'I will not go.'
Kaci anhæssimnita.	'I did not go.'
Kaci anhe yo.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anhkessø yo.	'[I]'ll not go.'
Kaci anhæssø yo.	'[I] didn't go.'

6. Numerals

In Korean, there are two series of numbers, both of which occur either as free nouns or before a special class of nouns called Counters. One of the two series of the Korean numbers was borrowed from Chinese characters; the other is of Korean origin. The counters are a class of words which occur only as post-nouns preceded by numbers. Some counters occur after the character numbers; some occur after the numbers of Korean origin; others occur after both sets of numbers. Therefore, it is important to know which series of numbers a certain counter goes with. For example, the counter Wen 'Korean monetary unit' occurs only after the character numbers as do all other monetary units, whereas the counter sal 'year(s) old (age counter)' occurs only with the numbers of Korean origin. Some counters like kwæn 'book counter' occur after both series. In Unit 4 we have the numbers of the Chinese character origin, and in Unit 5 the numbers of Korean origin are listed. When the numbers of Korean origin are used as modifiers, the final sounds of the first four are dropped, thus making hana 'one' han, tul 'two' tu, ses 'three' se, nes 'four' ne. Others do not change (See Unit 5).

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>æce</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go yesterday? |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go today? |
| *3. <u>Achim</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go in the morning? |
| *4. <u>Ohu</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go in the afternoon? |
| *5. <u>Cenyæk</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go in the evening? |
| *6. <u>Pam</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go at night? |
| *7. <u>Kicække</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go the day before yesterday? |
| *8. <u>Onil achim</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go this morning? |
| *9. <u>æce pam</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go last night? |
| *10. <u>Kicække ohu</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go in the afternoon, the day before yesterday? |
| 11. <u>Onil ohu</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kassimnikka? | Where did [you] go this afternoon? |
| 12. <u>Onil ohu</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e <u>kakessimnikka</u> ? | Where will [you] go this afternoon? |
| *13. <u>Næil</u> <u>æti</u> e kakessimnikka? | Where will [you] go tomorrow? |
| *14. <u>Mole</u> <u>æti</u> e kakessimnikka? | Where will [you] go the day after tomorrow? |
| *15. <u>Næil pam</u> <u>e</u> <u>æti</u> e kakessimnikka? | Where will [you] go tomorrow night? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ilsang yongphum</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought some daily necessities. |
| 2. <u>Chæk</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a book. |
| 3. <u>Sukæn</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a towel. |
| 4. <u>I kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought this. |
| *5. <u>Nolan suken</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a yellow towel. |
| *6. <u>Nolan sæk yænphil</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a yellow pencil. |
| 7. <u>Yælæ kaci</u> <u>lil</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought several kinds. |
| 8. <u>Nolan kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a yellow one. |
| *9. <u>Ppalkan kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a red one. |
| *10. <u>Hayan kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a white one. |
| *11. <u>Phalan kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a blue one. |
| *12. <u>Kkaman kës</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a black one. |
| 13. <u>Hana</u> <u>lil</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought one. |
| 14. <u>Hankuk mal chæk</u> <u>il</u> sassimnita. | [I] bought a Korean book. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the books expensive? |
| 2. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka? | Are the books cheap? |
| 3. Chæk kaps i ettəhsimnikka? | How expensive are books? |
| 4. Chæk kaps i kwənchanhsimnikka? | Is the price of books reasonable ('not bad')? |
| 5. Chæk kaps i əlma imnikka? | How much is the book? ('What is the price of the book?') |
| 6. Chæk kaps i kice kiləhsimnikka? | Is the (price of) book just so? |
| 7. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the books expensive? |
| 8. Cip kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the houses expensive? |
| 9. Ilsang younphum kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the daily necessities expensive? |
| *10. Kutu kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the shoes expensive? |
| *11. Yangpok kaps i pissamnikka? | Are the suits expensive? |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I suken sæk in nolahsimnita. | The color of this towel is yellow. |
| *2. I suken sæk in ppalkahsimnita. | The color of this towel is red. |
| *3. I suken sæk in hayahsimnita. | The color of this towel is white. |
| *4. I suken sæk in kkamahsimnita. | The color of this towel is black. |
| *5. I suken sæk in phalahsimnita. | The color of this towel is blue. |
| *6. I suken sæk in nulehsimnita. | The color of this towel is yellowish. |
| *7. I suken sæk in pulkimnita. | The color of this towel is reddish. |
| *8. I suken sæk in himnita. | The color of this towel is whitish. |
| *9. I suken sæk in kəmsimnita. | The color of this towel is dark. |
| *10. I suken sæk in phulimnita. | The color of this towel is bluish. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Musin sæk il wənhase yo? | What color would you like? ('What color do you want?') |
| 2. Musin suken il wənhase yo? | What kind of towels would you like? |
| 3. Musin chæk il wənhase yo? | What books would you like? |
| 4. Musin yənphil il wənhase yo? | What kind of pencils would you like? |
| 5. Musin sikye lil wənhase yo? | What kind of watches would you like? |
| 6. Musin moca lil wənhase yo? | What kind of hats would you like? |
| 7. Musin phen il wənhase yo? | What kind of pens would you like? |
| 8. Musin phen il phamnikka? | What kind of pens do you carry ('sell')? |
| 9. Musin phen il sakessə yo? | What kind of pens will you buy? |

10. Musin phen il cohahamnikka?
 11. Musin phen il pokessimnikka?

What kind of pens do you prefer?
 What kind of pens would you like to see?

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yeki esə suken il phamnikka? | Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?') |
| *2. Yeki esə yangpok il phamnikka? | Do you carry suits here? |
| *3. Yeki esə son-suken il phamnikka? | Do you carry handkerchiefs here? |
| *4. Yeki esə yangmal il phamnikka? | Do you carry socks here? |
| *5. Yeki esə kutu lil phamnikka? | Do you carry shoes here? |
| *6. Yeki esə nekthai lil phamnikka? | Do you carry neckties here? |
| *7. Yeki esə waisyassil lil phamnikka? | Do you carry dress shirts here? |
| *8. Yeki esə kongchæk il phamnikka? | Do you carry notebooks here? |
| *9. Yeki esə sinmun il phamnikka? | Do you carry newspaper here? |
| *10. Yeki esə capci lil phamnikka? | Do you carry magazines here? |
| *11. Yeki esə tampæ lil phamnikka? | Do you carry cigarettes here? |
| *12. Yeki esə cito lil phamnikka? | Do you carry maps here? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I kes i ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this? ('How is this?') |
| *2. I son-suken (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this handkerchief ('hand towel')? |
| 3. I kutu (ka) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like these shoes? |
| 4. I sikye (ka) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this watch? |
| 5. I waisyassil (ka) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this dress shirt? |
| 6. I kongchæk (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this notebook? |
| 7. I sinmun (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this newspaper? |
| 8. I capci (ka) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this magazine? |
| 9. I yangpok (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this suit? |
| *10. I yangmal (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like these socks? |
| 11. I sæk (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this color? |
| 12. I sangcəm (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this store? |
| 13. I pækhwacəm (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this department store? |
| *14. I os (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this { this dress?
these clothes? |
| *15. I pang (i) ettəhsimnikka? | How do you like this room? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. K _i kəs, əlma imnikka? | How much is that? |
| *2. Cə moca, əlma imnikka? | How much is that hat? |
| *3. Cə kkaman yangpok, əlma imnikka? | How much is that black suit? |
| *4. Cə həyan kutu, əlma imnikka? | How much are these white shoes? |
| *5. I nolan son-suken, əlma imnikka? | How much is this yellow handkerchief? |
| *6. I phalan yangmal, əlma imnikka? | How much are these blue socks? |
| *7. K _i həyan waisyassi, əlma imnikka? | How much is the dress shirt? |
| *8. K _i ppalkan suken, əlma imnikka? | How much is the red towel? |
| *9. K _i kkaman yangmal, əlma imnikka? | How much are the black socks? |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I chæk, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this book for?
(At what price do you sell this book?) |
| *2. K _i moca, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell that hat for? |
| *3. Cə kkaman yangpok, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell that black suit for? |
| *4. Cə həyan kutu, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell these white shoes for? |
| *5. I nolan son-suken, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this yellow handkerchief for? |
| *6. I phalan yangmal, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell these blue socks for? |
| *7. I həyan waisyassi, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this dress shirts for? |
| *8. I ppalkan suken, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this red towel for? |
| *9. K _i kkaman yangmal, əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell those black socks for? |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. I moca nın o-sip Wən imnita. | This hat is W 50. |
| 2. Cə sikye (nın) i Wən imnita. | That watch is W 2. |
| 3. K _i kutu (nın) sa Wən imnita. | Those shoes are W 4. |
| *4. I mannyenphil (in) yuk Wən imnita. | This fountain pen is W 6. |
| *5. Cə kilim (in) phal Wən imnita. | That picture is W 8. |
| *6. K _i os (in) sip Wən imnita. | That dress is W 10. |
| 7. I sinmun (in) sip-il Wən imnita. | This newspaper is W 11. |
| 8. Cə capci (nın) sip-sam Wən imnita. | That magazine is W 13. |
| 9. K _i syassi (nın) sip-o Wən imnita. | That shirt is W 15. |

10. I son-sukən (in) sip-chil Wən imnita. This handkerchief is W 17.
 11. Cə 1yca (nin) sip-ku Wən imnita. That chair is W 19.

K. Grammar Drill (as a response drill based on Grammar Note 2)

- Tutor: əce hakkyo e kassimnikka? 'Did you go to school yesterday?'
 Student: Ne, kassimnita. 'Yes, I did.'
1. Moca lil sassimnikka? Ne, sassimnita.
 2. Chækpang e tillessimnikka? Ne, tillessimnita.
 3. Kim Sənsəng il mannassimnikka? Ne, mannassimnita.
 4. K1 chæk il ilkəssimnikka? Ne, ilkəssimnita.
 5. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issəssimnikka? Ne, cip e issəssimnita.
 6. Haksəng il chacəssimnikka? Ne, (haksəng il) chacəssimnita.
 7. Pak Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il kalichyəssimnikka? Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i) kalichyəssimnita.
 8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il pwəssimnikka? Ne, pwəssimnita.
 9. Cungkuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? Ne, (Cungkuk mal il) pəwəssimnita.
 10. I yənphil il wənhəssimnikka? Ne, (k1 yənphil il) wənhəssimnita.
 11. Kil il mule pwəssimnikka? Ne, (kil il) mule pwəssimnita.
 12. K1 chæk il phaləssimnikka? Ne, phaləssimnita.
 13. K1 sæk il cohəhəssimnikka? Ne, (k1 sæk il) cohəhəssimnita.

L. Response Drill

- Tutor: əce əti e kassimnikka? /sinə/ 'Where did you go yesterday?' /downtown/
 Student: Sinə e kassimnita. '[I] went downtown.'
1. Muəs il sassimnikka? /ilsang yongphum/ Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita.
 2. əce əti e tillessimnikka? /chækpang/ Chækpang e tillessimnita.
 3. Musin sæk il wənhəssimnikka? Nolan sæk il wənhəssimnita.
/nolan sæk/
 4. Muəs i issəssimnikka? /yələ kaci/ Yələ kaci ka issəssimnita.
 5. Nuku lil cohəhəssimnikka? /Ceimsi/ Ceimsi lil cohəhəssimnita.
 6. K1 kəs, əlma e phaləssimnikka? O-sip Wən e phaləssimnita.
/o-sip Wən/
 7. Nuka cip e wassimnikka? /Mikuk salam/ Mikuk salam i wassimnita.
 8. Muəs il chacəssimnikka? /haksəng/ Haksəng il chacəssimnita.
 9. Muəs il kongpu-həssimnikka? Hankuk mal il kongpu-həssimnita.
/Hankuk mal/

10. Muəs il pəwəssimnikka? /Ilpon mal/ Ilpon mal il pəwəssimnita.
 11. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyessimnikka? Pak Sənsəng i kalichyessimnita.
 /Pak Sənsəng/
 12. ətɪ esə kɪ chæk il pwassimnikka? Sinə chækpang esə pwassimnita.
 /sinə chækpang/

M. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

- Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnikka? 'Do you go to school?'
 Student: Aniyo, kaci anhsimnita. 'No, I don't (go).'
1. Hankuk mal il pəumnikka? Aniyo, pəuci anhsimnita.
 2. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? Aniyo, pissaci anhsimnita.
 3. Cip kaps i ssamnikka? Aniyo, ssaci anhsimnita.
 4. Onil chækpang e tillimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhsimnita.
 5. Kim Sənsəng il mannamnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhsimnita.
 6. Kɪ chæk il ilksimnikka? Aniyo, ilkeci anhsimnita.
 7. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka? Aniyo, mal-haci anhsimnita.
 8. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issimnikka? Aniyo, (cip e) issci/icci/ anhsimnita.
 9. I sæk il cohahamnikka? Aniyo, cohahaci anhsimnita.
 10. Yəki esə chæk il phamnikka? Aniyo, pha(l)ci anhsimnita.
 11. I kəs il wənhamnikka? Aniyo, wənhaci anhsimnita.
 12. Hakkyo ka məmnikka? Aniyo, mə(l)ci anhsimnita.
 13. Təsakwan i kakkapsimnikka? Aniyo, kakkapci anhsimnita.

N. Response Drill

- Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? 'Are [you] going to school?'
 Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkessimnita. ('Will you go to school?')
 'No, [I]'m not (going).'
 ('No, I'll not go.')
1. Hankuk mal il pəukessimnikka? Aniyo, pəuci anhkessimnita.
 2. Onil chækpang e tillikessimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhkessimnita.
 3. Kim Sənsəng il mannakessimnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhkessimnita.
 4. Kɪ chæk il ilkkessimnikka? Aniyo, ilkeci anhkessimnita.
 5. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka? Aniyo, mal-haci anhkessimnita.
 6. Kutu lɪl sakessimnikka? Aniyo, saci anhkessimnita.
 7. Moca lɪl phalkessimnikka? Aniyo, pha(l)ci anhkessimnita.
 8. Nolan syassɪ lɪl pokessimnikka? Aniyo, poci anhkessimnita.
 9. Kil il mule pokessimnikka? Aniyo, mule poci anhkessimnita.
 10. Kim Sənsəng il chackessimnikka? Aniyo, chacci anhkessimnita.

O. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5 with Past Tense)

Tutor: ace sinæ e kassimnikka?

'Did you go downtown yesterday?'

Student: Aniyo, kaci anhessimnita.

'No, I didn't (go).'

1. Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka?

Aniyo, pæuci anhessimnita.

2. K1 chæk il ilkæssimnikka?

Aniyo, ilkci anhessimnita.

3. Kim Sænsæng il mannæssimnikka?

Aniyo, mannaci anhessimnita.

4. Kutu lil sassimnikka?

Aniyo, saci anhessimnita.

5. Kil il mulæ pwæssimnikka?

Aniyo, mulæ poci anhessimnita.

6. Kim Sænsæng il chacæssimnikka?

Aniyo, (Kim Sænsæng il) chacci
anhessimnita.

7. Chæksang il phalæssimnikka?

Aniyo, phalci anhessimnita.

8. Samusil e tilæssimnikka?

Aniyo, tillici anhessimnita.

9. Sænsæng in Yængæ lil

Aniyo, kalichici anhessimnita.

kalichyæssimnikka?

10. Hakkyo ka mælæssimnikka?

Aniyo, mæ(1)ci anhessimnita.

11. Chæk kaps i pissæssimnikka?

Aniyo, pissaci anhessimnita.

12. Phalan sæk il wenhæssimnikka?

Aniyo, (phalan sæk il) wenhaci
anhessimnita.

13. Ceimsi Sænsæng il alæssimnikka?

Aniyo, alci anhessimnita.

P. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkyo e ka yo?

'Do you go to school?'

Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo.

'Yes, I do (go to school).'

1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo?

Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kongpu-hæ yo.

2. Chæk kaps i ssa yo?

Ne, (chæk kaps i) ssa yo.

3. Yangpok i pissa yo?

Ne, (yangpok i) pissa yo.

4. Hakkyo ka mælæ yo?

Ne, (hakkyo ka) mælæ yo.

5. Cængkæcang i kakkawæ yo?

Ne, (cængkæcang i) kakkawæ yo.

6. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam iye yo?

Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.

7. Sænsæng in cal issæ yo?

Ne, cal issæ yo.

8. Ceimsi Sænsæng in Yængæ lil mal-hæ yo?

Ne, Yængæ lil mal-hæ yo.

9. Sænsæng in cæ salam il alæ yo?

Ne, (cæ salam il) alæ yo.

10. Pækhwacæm i sichæng yæph e issæ yo?

Ne, sichæng yæph e issæ yo.

11. Yæki esæ suken il phalæ yo?

Ne, (suken il) phalæ yo.

12. Nolan sæk il wenhæ yo?

Ne, (nolan sæk il) wenhæ yo.

13. Hankuk mal il cohahæ yo?

Ne, (Hankuk mal il) cohahæ yo.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 14. Onil chækpang e tillæ yo? | Ne, (chækpang e) tillæ yo. |
| 15. K1 chæk i coha yo? | Ne, (k1 chæk i) coha yo. |
| 16. Sangcæm il chace yo? | Ne, sangcæm il chace yo. |
| 17. Sængsæng in Hankuk mal il pæwæ yo? | Ne, cæ nin Hankuk mal il pæwæ yo. |
| 18. Kim Sænsæng i kalichie yo? | Ne, Kim Sænsæng i kalichie yo. |

Q. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnikka? | 'Do you go to school?' |
| Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo. | 'Yes, I do ('go to school'). |
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? | Ne, kongpu-hæ yo. |
| 2. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka? | Ne, ssa yo. |
| 3. Yangpok i pissamnikka? | Ne, pissa yo. |
| 4. Hakkyo ka mæmnikka? | Ne, mælæ yo. |
| 5. Cængkæcang i kakkapsimnikka? | Ne, kakkawæ yo. |
| 6. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo. |
| 7. Kim Sænsæng in cip e issimnikka? | Ne, (cip e) issæ yo. |
| 8. Cæ salam il amnikka? | Ne, alæ yo. |
| 9. Yæki esæ sukæn il phamnikka? | Ne, phalæ yo. |
| 10. Kkaman sæk il wænhamnikka? | Ne, kkaman sæk il wænhæ yo. |
| 11. I kyosil il cohahamnikka? | Ne, cohahæ yo. |
| 12. Haksæng il chacsimnikka? | Ne, haksæng il chace yo. |
| 13. Cæ salam il molimnikka? | Ne, molla yo. |

R. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Tutor: Hakkyo e kasimnikka? | { 'Do you go to school?' |
| Student: Hakkyo e kase yo? | { 'Are you going to school?' |
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnikka? | Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase yo? |
| 2. Cungkuk mal il pæusimnikka? | Cungkuk mal il pæuse yo? |
| 3. Hankuk mal chæk il ilkisimnikka? | Hankuk mal chæk il ilkise yo? |
| 4. Kim Sænsæng in kutu lil sasimnikka? | Kim Sænsæng in kutu lil sase yo? |
| 5. Sænsæng i haksæng il chacisimnikka? | Sænsæng i haksæng il chacise yo? |
| 6. Annyæng-hasimnikka? | Annyæng-hase yo? |
| 7. Yocim ættæhke cinasimnikka? | Yocim ættæhke cinase yo? |
| 8. Ceimsi Sænsæng il asimnikka? | Ceimsi Sænsæng il ase yo? |
| 9. Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e osimnikka? | Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e ose yo? |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 10. Yəngə sənsəng i Hankuk mal chæk il
ilkisimnikka? | Yəngə sənsəng i Hankuk mal chæk il
ilkise yo? |
| 11. Ceimsi Sənsəng i na e samusil e
tillisimnikka? | Ceimsi Sənsəng i na e samusil e
tillise yo? |
| 12. Pak Sənsəng in wekyokwan isimnikka? | Pak Sənsəng in wekyokwan ise yo? |

S. Response Drill (as a grammar drill based on Grammar Notes 2 and 5)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech for the Formal Polite using the stimulus
/ne/ or /aniyo/.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? /aniyo/ | 'Are you going to school?' /no/ |
| Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkesse yo. | 'No, I'm not (going to go).' |
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnikka?
/ne/ | Ne, kongpu-hakesse yo. |
| 2. I chæk il ilkkessimnikka? /aniyo/ | Aniyo, ilkci anhkesse yo. |
| 3. Mikuk salam chinku lil
mannakessimnikka? /ne/ | Ne, mannakesse yo. |
| 4. Kil il mulə pokessimnikka? /aniyo/ | Aniyo, mulə poci anhkesse yo. |
| 5. I chæksang il phalkessimnikka? /ne/ | Ne, phalkesse yo. |
| 6. Cə e samusil e tillikessimnikka?
/aniyo/ | Aniyo, tillici anhkesse yo. |
| 7. Yəngə lil kalichikessimnikka? /ne/ | Ne, kalichikesse yo. |
| 8. Cip e isskessimnikka/ikkessimnikka/?
/aniyo/ | Aniyo, (cip e) issci anhkesse yo. |

T. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech using the stimulus.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in eti e
kasiessimnikka? /sicang/ | 'Where did Mr. Kim go?' /market place/ |
| Student: Sicang e kasse yo. | '[He] went to the market place.' |
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in eti e kasiessimnikka?
/chækpang/ | Chækpang e kasiessa yo. |
| 2. Mues il sassimnikka? /Hankuk kilim/ | Hankuk kilim il sasse yo. |
| 3. Ceimsi Sənsəng i mues il mulə
pwassimnikka? /kil/ | Kil il mulə pwasse yo. |

4. Nuka sɛnsæŋ cip e tilɫɛssimnikka? Chinku ka tilɫɛssɛ yo.
/chinku/
5. Sɛnsæŋ e yangpok əlma e sassimnikka? O-sip Wɛn e sassɛ yo.
/o-sip Wɛn/
6. Kɪ Mikuk salam in nuku iyɛssimnikka? Ceimsɪ Sɛnsæŋ iyɛssɛ yo.
/Ceimsɪ Sɛnsæŋ/
7. Sɛnsæŋ in ɛce musin chæk il Ilpon mal chæk il ilkɛssɛ yo.
ilkɛssimnikka? /Ilpon mal chæk/
8. I chæk, əlma e phalɛssimnikka? O-sip Wɛn e phalɛssɛ yo.
/o-sip Wɛn/
9. Hankuk mal in nuka kalichyɛssimnikka? Pak Sɛnsæŋ i kalichyɛssɛ yo.
/Pak Sɛnsæŋ/
10. Nuka Yəŋgə sɛnsæŋ iɛssimnikka? Mikuk yɛca ka Yəŋgə sɛnsæŋ iɛssɛ yo.
/Mikuk yɛca/

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions on the basis of the dialogues at the beginning of this Unit: Formal Polite question in Informal Polite and vice versa.)

Tutor: ɛce ɛti e kassimnikka? 'Where did you go yesterday?'
Student: Sinə sangcɛm e kassɛ yo. 'I went to a store downtown.'

1. Pækhwacɛm ɛsɛ muɛs il sassɛ yo?
2. Onil in sinə e an kakessimnikka?
3. Chæk kaps i pissa yo?
4. Chækpang ɛsɛ suken il phamnikka?
5. Musin sæk il wɛnhase yo?
6. Sɛnsæŋ in nolan waisyassɪ lil cohaɬɛssimnikka?
7. Sɛnsæŋ e moca, əlma ye yo?
8. Sɛnsæŋ e kutu, əlma e sassimnikka?
9. Səul e os kaps i ssamnikka?
10. Sɛnsæŋ in onil achim e muɛs hakesɛ yo?
11. ɛce cɛnyɛk e muɛs hæssimnikka?
12. Onil pam e cip e isskessɛ yo?
13. ɛce ohu e ɛti e kassɛ yo?
14. Nəil nac e ce samusil e tillikessimnikka?
15. Sɛnsæŋ in yosə musin chæk il ilkise yo?

EXERCISES

Conduct the following conversations, once in Formal Polite Speech and once in Informal Polite Speech:

A. You ask Mr. Kim:

- a. where he's going to go this afternoon.
- b. what he'll buy.
- c. what kind of pictures he likes.
- d. what he's going to do at school.
- e. what books he's going to read.
- f. where he'll stop by.
- g. who is going to teach English.
- h. whom he's going to meet.
- i. where he's going to teach Korean.
- j. How much he is going to pay for shoes.
- k. where he'll be tonight.

Mr. Kim answers:

- that he's going to the market place.
- that he's going to buy some pictures.
- that he likes Korean pictures.
- that he's going to study.
- that he's going to read English books.
- that he's going to stop by his friend's office.
- that he (i.e. Mr. Kim) will teach it.
- that he's going to meet a friend.
- that he will teach [it] at a school.
- that he's going to pay ₩ 95.
- that he'll be in class.

B. Ask Mr. Kim:

- a. if the books are expensive.
- b. if he's going downtown.
- c. if downtown is near.
- d. if he has black shoes.
- e. if they sell many kinds.
- f. if they sell towels here.
- g. where Mr. Lee's office is.
- h. if he wants a pencil.
- i. if he wants several kinds.
- j. if he'll drop in the school.
- k. if he's looking for USIS.
- l. if he knows the way to Seoul Station.
- m. where he went yesterday.
- n. what he bought.
- o. how much he paid for the pen.
- p. how much the book was.
- q. what color he liked.

Mr. Kim answers:

- that they are not (expensive).
- that he is (going downtown).
- that it is far.
- that he doesn't.
- that they don't.
- that they do.
- that he doesn't (know).
- that he wants paper.
- that he does.
- that he won't.
- that he's looking for the Embassy.
- that he doesn't know.
- that he went to a store.
- that he bought some daily necessities.
- that he paid ₩ 35.
- that it was ₩ 55.
- that he liked blue color.

- | | |
|---|---|
| r. what book he read yesterday. | that he read a Korean book. |
| s. where he stopped by this morning. | that he stopped by his friend's office. |
| t. who taught Korean. | that Mr. Park taught it. |
| u. whom he met at school. | that he met an American teacher. |
| v. what the man's name was. | that (it) was James. |
| w. what the American asked [him]. | that he asked him for directions. |
| x. how much the <u>camwen</u> sold this book for. | that he sold it for W 65. |
| y. how much he paid for his shoes. | that he paid W 73. |
| z. whom he looked for. | that he looked for his teacher. |

C. Say the following in Korean:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| a. W 12 | i. W 103 |
| b. W 23 | j. W 214 |
| c. W 34 | k. W 358 |
| d. W 45 | l. W 893 |
| e. W 56 | m. W 2,539 |
| f. W 67 | n. W 7,927 |
| g. W 78 | o. W10,111 |
| h. W 89 | p. W11,123 |

D. Mr. James asks the price of the following objects and you answer with the given price.

- | <u>Mr. James</u> | <u>You</u> |
|------------------------|------------|
| a. this yellow towel | W 28 |
| b. that Seoul map | W 52 |
| c. those red shoes | W 250 |
| d. those black suits | W 3,210 |
| e. these blue socks | W 8 |
| f. that hat | W 79 |
| g. that American watch | W 1,700 |
| h. this dress shirt | W 95 |
| i. your fountain pen | W 55 |
| j. that chair | W 527 |
| k. this woman's dress | W 250 |

E. Pak Sənsəŋ will respond with /Ne, kiləpsita./ 'Yes, let's do so.' when you propose to:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a. go downtown with him. | h. meet friends. |
| b. see the picture. | i. read that book. |
| c. buy some daily necessities. | j. come again tomorrow. |
| d. stop by a bookstore. | k. learn Chinese. |
| e. sell the house. | l. stay at home. |
| f. ask the street directions. | m. find out that Korean's name. |
| g. find Mr. Kim. | |

제 5 과 물건 사기 (계속)

(대화 A)

(-책방에서-)

사전

좋은 사전

1. 김 : 실테합니다. 여기 좋은 사전이 있습니까?

영한 사전

사전 말입니까

2. 점원 : 영한 사전 말입니까?

3. 김 : 예.

4. 점원 : 예, 있습니다.

보여 주십시오

5. 김 : 좀 보여 주십시오.

자

6. 점원 : 자, 여기 있습니다.

어떤

어떤 사전

7. 김 : 이것은 어떤 사전입니까?

UNIT 5. Shopping (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(--Kim stopped by a bookstore--)

Kim

sacən

dictionary

cohın sacən

a good dictionary

1. Sillye-hamnita. Yəki cohın sacən
1 issımnikka?

Excuse me. Do you have a good
dictionary here?

Cəmwən

Yəng-Han sacən

English-Korean dictionary

sacən mal imnikka

do you mean [a] dictionary?

2. Yəng-Han sacən mal imnikka?

Do you mean an English-Korean dictionary?

Kim

3. Ne.

Yes.

Cəmwən

4. Ne, issımnita.

Yes, we do.

Kim

poyə cusipsiyo

please show [me]

5. Com poyə cusipsiyo.

May I see it? ('Please show [it to
me].')

Cəmwən

ca

well; here

6. Ca, yəki issımnita.

Here you are! ('Here! [it] is.')

Kim

əttən

what kind of

əttən sacən

what kind of dictionary

7. I kəs in əttən sacən imnikka?

Is this a good dictionary? ('What
kind of dictionary is this?')

대단히 좋습니다

그러나

다른 것

8. 점원 : 대단히 좋습니다. 그러나 다른 것도 있습니다.

어떻습니까

9. 김 : 다른 것은 어떻습니까?

비싼 사전

그리고

큰 책

10. 점원 : 다른 것은 좀 비싼 사전입니다. 그리고 큰 책입니다.

작은 것

11. 김 : 나는 작은 것이 좋습니다. 이 작은 것을 사겠습니다.

또

필요합니까

12. 점원 : 또 다른 것이 필요합니까?

종이

펜과 종이

13. 김 : 아, 펜과 종이는 어디에서 팝니까?

다음

다음 집

문 방구 점

14. 점원 : 다음 집이 문 방구 점입니다.

(대화 B)

(-문 방구 점에서-)

드립 가요

15. 점원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 드립 가요?

16. 김 : 종 이와 펜이 있습니까?

원하십니까

17. 점원 : 예, 있습니다. 종 이는 무슨 종 이를 원하세요?

타이프 종 이

18. 김 : 타이프 종 이를 원합니다.

두 가지

두 가지 종 이

19. 점원 : 아, 그러세요? 두 가지 종 이가 있습니다.

20. 김 : 얼마예요?

Cəmwən

təim

next; next time

təim cip

the next door ('next house')

munpangkucəm

stationary shop

14. Təim cip i munpangkucəm imnita.

There's a stationary shop next door.
('Next door is a stationary shop.')Dialogue B

(--Kim enters next door--)

Cəmwən

təlil kka yo

shall [I] give [you]?

15. əsə osipsiyo. Mues il təlil
kka yo?Come in. What would you like? ('What
shall I give you?')Kim

16. Congi wa phen i issimnikka?

Do you have paper and pens?

Cəmwən

wənhəsimnikka

do [you] want?

17. Ne, issimnita. Congi nin musin
congī līl wənhase yo?Yes, we have. What kind of paper do
you want?Kim

thaiphī congī

typewriter paper

18. Thaiphī congī līl wənhamnita.

I want typewriter paper.

Cəmwən

tu kaci

two kinds

tu kaci congī

two kinds of paper

19. A, kiləse yo? Tu kaci congī ka
issimnita.Fine. ('Oh, is that so?') We have two
kinds of typewriter paper.Kim

20. əlma (i)ye yo?

How much are [they]?

한 가지

손

손 장

오십 원

21. 점원 : 한 가지는 손 장에 칠십 원입니다. 그리고,
다른 것은 오십 원에 팝니다.

더

더 싹니다

더 싹는 거

좀 더 싹는 거

없어요

22. 김 : 좀 더 싹는 것은 없어요?

지금

23. 점원 : 예, 좀 더 싹는 것은 지금 없습니다.

그러면

오십 원 짜리

24. 김 : 그러면, 오십 원 짜리를 주십시오.

Cəmwən

han kaci

one kind

swin

fifty

swin cang

fifty sheets; fifty pieces

o-sip Wən

₩50

21. Han kaci nin swin cang e chil-sip
Wən imnita. Kılıko, talın kəs
in o-sip Wən e phamnita.

One (kind) is ₩70 for 50 sheets, and
the other is ₩50. ('We sell it
for ₩50.')

Kim

tə

more

tə ssamnita

[it]'s cheaper

tə ssan kəs

cheaper one; cheaper kind

com tə ssan kəs

a little cheaper one

əpsə yo

don't [you] have?; isn't [there]?

22. Com tə ssan kəs in əpsə yo?

Don't you have anything cheaper?

Cəmwən

cikım

now

23. Ne, tə ssan kəs in cikım
əpsımnita.

No, not right now. ('We don't have a
cheaper kind now.')

Kim

kıləmyən

then; if so

o-sip Wən ccali

₩50 worth; in the value of ₩50

24. Kıləmyən, o-sip Wən ccali lıl
cusipsiyo.

Then I'll take the 50 Won kind.
('Then give me the ₩50's.')

수 자 (2)

1	하나	11	열 하나	21	스물 하나
2	둘	12	열 둘	29	스물 아홉
3	셋	13	열 셋	30	삼십
4	넷	14	열 넷	40	마흔
5	다섯	15	열 다섯	50	쉰
6	여섯	16	열 여섯	60	예순
7	일곱	17	열 일곱	70	일흔 (이른)
8	여덟	18	열 여덟	80	여든
9	아홉	19	열 아홉	90	아흔
10	열	20	스물 (스무)	99	아흔 아홉
100	(일)백	200	이백	300	삼백
101	백 하나	210	이백 열	401	사백 하나
102	백 둘	220	이백 스물	502	오백 둘
103	백 셋	230	이백 삼십	603	육백 셋
104	백 넷	240	이백 마흔	704	칠백 넷
105	백 다섯	250	이백 쉰	805	팔백 다섯
106	백 여섯	260	이백 예순	906	구백 여섯
107	백 일곱	270	이백 일흔	911	구백 열 하나
108	백 여덟	280	이백 여든	922	구백 스물 둘
109	백 아홉	290	이백 아흔	1,000	(일)천
119	백 열 아홉	300	삼백	10,000	(일)만

NUMERALS (2)

1 han(a)	11 yəl-han(a)	21 simul-han(a)
2 tu(1)	12 yəl-tu(1)	29 simul-ahop
3 se(s)	13 yəl-se(s)	30 {səlhin səlin
4 ne(s)	14 yəl-ne(s)	40 mahin
5 tasəs	15 yəl-tasəs	50 swin
6 yəsəs	16 yəl-yəsəs	60 yesun
7 ilkop	17 yəl-ilkop	70 il(h)in
8 {yətəl yətə(1)p	18 yəl-yətəl	80 yətin
9 ahop	19 yəl-ahop	90 ahin
10 yəl	20 simu(1)	99 ahin-ahop
100 (11)-pæk	200 ipæk	300 sampæk
101 pæk-han(a)	210 ipæk-yəl	401 sapæk-han(a)
102 pæk-tu(1)	220 ipæk-simul	502 opæk-tu(1)
103 pæk-se(s)	230 ipæk-səlhin	603 yukpæk-se(s)
104 pæk-ne(s)	240 ipæk-mahin	704 chilpæk-ne(s)
105 pæk-tasəs	250 ipæk-swin	805 phalpæk-tasəs
106 pæk-yəsəs	260 ipæk-yesun	906 kupæk-yəsəs
107 pæk-ilkop	270 ipæk-il(h)in	911 kupæk-yəl-han(a)
108 pæk-yətəl(yətəp)	280 ipæk-yətin	922 kupæk-simul-tu(1)
109 pæk-ahop	290 ipæk-ahin	1,000 (11)chən
119 pæk-yəl-ahop	300 sampæk	10,000 (11)man

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Yeki (e) X i/ka issimnikka? ('Is there X here?') is another expression commonly used in the situations similar to Yeki ese X il/lil phamnikka? ('Do [you] sell X at this place?'). It means something like 'Do you carry X here (where X is a certain thing you want to buy)?'. Cohin 'good, nice' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem coh- 'to be good' (See Grammar Note 1).
2. Mal imnikka? 'Do you mean...?' is always immediately preceded by something. The affirmative response to X mal imnikka? 'Do you mean X?' is Ne, X mal imnita. 'Yes, I mean X.' Yeng-Han 'English-Korean' is the contracted form of either Yenge Hankuk mal 'English-Korean language' or Yengkuk Hankuk 'Britian-Korea'. This kind of contraction in one word made out of two or more words appears often in Korean. In each case, the first syllables of the words are brought together to make the contraction. Examples: Han-Yeng 'Korea(n)-English (Britian)', Han-Il 'Korea(n)-Japan(ese)', Cung-Tok 'Sino-German', Han-Mi 'Korea-U.S.'.
6. Ca 'well', 'here!' occurs always at the beginning of the sentence followed by a pause to signify that the speaker is going to suggest or produce something.
7. etten 'what sort of' is a question noun-modifier word which denotes the quality or characteristics of the following noun. Compare with musin 'what kind of' which denotes the type, essence or denomination of the following noun.
8. Talin 'different', 'other' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem tali- 'to be different'.
10. Kiliko 'And' occurs at the beginning of the sentence and is followed by a pause.
11. The verb stem of the noun-modifier word cakin 'small' is cak- 'to be small in size'; cek- means 'to be little in quantity'.
12. The verb stem philyo-ha- 'to be needed', 'to be necessary', is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by the emphasized subject but never by an object. Examples:

Talin kes i philyo-hamnita.

'[I] need another one' ('A different thing is needed'.)

Chæk i philyo-hamnikka?

'Do you need a book?' ('Is a book needed?')

14. Taim 'the next time', 'next' occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative.
15. The verb stem tilli- 'to give' is the politest equivalent of cu-. A sentence which ends in -(1)l kka yo? is always a question sentence (See Grammar Note 2).
22. Tə 'more', '-er' occurs immediately before description verbs or other adverbs (See Grammar Note 3). The antonym of tə is the adverb təl 'less..'.
(See Grammar Note 3).
24. Ccali 'worth', 'value' is a post-noun which occurs only after a stated amount of money. If followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali describes the value of the noun. If not followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali indicates the denomination of money in the stated amount. Examples:

pæk Wən ccali sikye
o-sip Wən ccali moca
sip Wən ccali
o-sip Pul ccali

a watch which is W100 worth
a hat which is W50 worth
W10 bill
\$50 bill

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -n/in/nin

The verb ending -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es): -n is added to a description verb stem which ends in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem which ends in a consonant; -nin, to an action verb stem. The inflected form which ends in -n/in/nin occurs only before a noun as a modifier of the noun, and never alone nor before other classes of words. It shows only the present action or state of the modified noun. We shall call the words of this class Present Noun-Modifier Words and the -n/in/nin ending the Present Noun-Modifier Ending. Examples:

Group 1

pissan sikye
mən hakkyo
nolan yənphil
kkamhan moca

'(an) expensive watch'
'a school which is far'
'(a) yellow pencil'
'(a) black hat'

Group 2

cohin chæk	'(a) good book'
copin kil	'(a) narrow street'
nəlpin kyosil	'(a) large classroom'

Group 3

kanin salam	'a man who is going'
canin ai	'a sleeping child'
kalichinin yəca	'a woman who is teaching'
chæk il ilknin haksəng	'a student who is reading a book'
nə ka pəunin mal	'the language that I'm learning'

2. -l/il kka yo? 'Shall I...?', 'Shall we...?', 'Will [it]... (do you think)?'

The construction -l/il kka yo? occurs only as a final form of a question sentence. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is the speaker, he asks the addressee's consent or permission for the action he is going to take. If the subject or the topic of the sentence includes both the speaker and addressee, the speaker asks the addressee whether he is interested in doing something. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or the speaker plus addressee, the speaker asks the addressee for his opinion about the possibility of the action or description occurring in the future. Note: -l is added to a stem ending in a vowel; -il to a stem ending in a consonant (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 9). Examples:

Tapang e kal kka yo?	{ 'Shall I go to the tearoom?'
	{ 'Shall we go to the tearoom?'
Sənsəng cip e tɪllɪl kka yo?	{ 'Shall I stop by your house?'
	{ 'Shall we stop by the teacher's house?'
Kim Sənsəng i ol kka yo?	'Will Mr. Kim come?'
Hakkyo ka məl kka yo?	'(Do you think) the school will be far?'

3. Adverbs

Adverbs are a class of words which may or may not be inflected. They occur before and modify other inflected expressions (i.e. verbals, noun-modifiers, sentences, other adverbs). This class of words is distinguished from noun-modifiers (See Grammar Note 1) which occur only before nouns. There are some nouns which occur sometimes as adverbs also. For examples: are two kinds of adverbs: (1) one kind may be separated by a pause from the subsequent inflected expressions, and (2) the other kind occur without pause as

an integral part of an inflected expressions. The adverbs of group (1) are called Sentence Adverbs; those of the group (2), simply Adverbs. We have had so far the following kinds of adverbs.

kiliko 'and'; kiləna 'but'; kiləmyən 'then'; ne 'yes'; aniyo 'no'; əttəhke 'how'; tto 'again', 'also'; kili '(not) so', 'in such a way'; com 'a little'; əse 'please', 'quickly'; ttokpalo 'straight ahead'; cal 'well', etc.

Some of these adverbs occur at the beginning of sentences which succeed always other sentences: others occur before inflected expressions which do not need to be preceded by other sentences.

(a). tə 'more', '-er' and təl 'less'

Tə and təl occur without pause before noun-modifier words, verbals or other adverbs. They denote the comparative degree of the following descriptive expression. Compare:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kɪ kəs i cohsmnita. | '[It] is good.' |
| Kɪ kəs i tə cohsmnita. | '[It] is better.' |
| Kɪ kəs i təl cohsmnita. | '[It] is poorer.' |
| 2. I chæk i pissamnita. | 'This book is expensive.' |
| I chæk i tə pissamnita. | 'This book is more expensive.' |
| I chæk i təl pissamnita. | 'This book is less expensive.' |
| 3. əlyəun mal | '[a] difficult language' |
| tə əlyəun mal | '[a] more difficult language' |
| təl əlyəun mal | '[a] less difficult language' |
| 4. Kim Sənsəŋg i Yəŋgə lil cal hamnita. | 'Mr. Kim speaks English well.' |
| Kim Sənsəŋg i Yəŋgə lil tə cal hamnita. | 'Mr. Kim speaks English better.' |
| Kim Sənsəŋg i (Ceimsɪ pota) Yəŋgə lil təl cal hamnita. | 'Mr. Kim speaks English less well (than James).' |

(b). tətanhi 'very'

Tətanhi 'very' occurs without pause before noun-modifiers, verbals or other adverbs. Compare:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Chæk i pissamnita. | 'The book is expensive.' |
| Chæk i tətanhi pissamnita. | 'The book is very expensive.' |
| 2. Ssan kutu lil sasse yo. | '[I] bought cheap shoes.' |
| Tətanhi ssan kutu lil sasse yo. | '[I] bought very cheap shoes.' |

3. Kim Sənsəŋ i Yəŋə lɪl cal 'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'
mal-hæ yo.

Kim Sənsəŋ i Yəŋə lɪl tətanhɪ 'Mr. Kim speaks English very well.'
cal mal-hæ yo.

4. Counters: cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, malɪ, pəl, tæ

In Unit 4, we noticed that certain counters such as Wən 'Korean monetary unit' occur only after numerals of character origin. The counters cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, etc. are some of the commonly used counters which occur only after Korean numerals.

(a). Cang is used in counting such things as paper, letters, towels, sheets, flat glasses, etc.

thaɪpɪ congɪ tasəs cang	'5 sheets of typing paper'
phyenci tu cang	'two letters'
tamyo se cang	'three blankets'

(b). Can is used in counting cups or glasses of liquid.

khəphi han can	'a cup of coffee'
sul tu can	'two glasses of wine'

(c). Kwən is used in counting books.

yəkɬa chæk yələ kwən	'several volumes of history books'
Yəŋə chæk tu kwən ɪl səsə yo.	'I bought two English books.'

(d). Kæ is used in counting common object nouns such as pencils, desks, chairs, etc.

Yənphil han kæ cuse yo.	'Give me a pencil.'
Chæksang ɪ tasəs kæ ɪssə yo.	'There are five desks.'
Iyca ka myech* kæ ɪssimnikka?	'How many chairs are there?'

*myech 'how many' is a determinative which occurs before counters as a question word.

(e). Pun or salam is used in counting persons. Pun is the honorific equivalent of salam.

sənsəŋ se pun	'three teachers'
haksəŋ tu salam	'two students'
Mikuk salam yələ pun	'several Americans'

(f). Mali is used in counting animals.

mal han mali	'one horse'
so tu mali	'two cattle'
kæ se mali	'three dogs'
koyangi ne mali	'four cats'

(g). Pel is used in counting suits.

yangpok tu pel	'two suits'
----------------	-------------

(h). Tæ is used in counting vehicles, airplanes, machines, etc.

catongcha yelæ tæ	'several automobiles'
pihængki se tæ	'three airplanes'

Note that all the counters occur typically after the determinative myæch 'how many?'. Also note that in Korean things are counted in the following manner:
Nominal + Numeral + Counter.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Yeki Hankuk mal sacen i issimnikka? | Do you have a Korean dictionary here? |
| 2. Yeki <u>Yeng-Han</u> sacen (i) issimnikka? | Do you have an English-Korean dictionary here? |
| 3. Yeki <u>thaiphi cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have typewriter paper here? |
| 4. Yeki <u>munpangkucem</u> (i) issimnikka? | Is there a stationary shop here? |
| 5. Yeki <u>yelae kaci cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have several kinds of paper here? |
| 6. Yeki <u>cohin sacen</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a good dictionary here? |
| 7. Yeki <u>ettan sacen</u> (i) issimnikka? | What kind of dictionary do you have here? |
| 8. Yeki <u>talin kes</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a different one here? |
| 9. Yeki <u>khin chæk</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a big book here? |
| 10. Yeki <u>cakin sacen</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a small dictionary here? |
| 11. Yeki <u>pissan sacen</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have any expensive dictionaries here? |
| 12. Yeki <u>ssan cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have cheap paper here? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Yeng-Han sacen mal imnikka? | Do you mean an English-Korean dictionary? |
| 2. <u>I cip</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean this house? |
| 3. <u>Pissan cong</u> i mal imnikka? | Do you mean expensive paper? |
| 4. <u>Yelae kaci</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean several kinds? |
| 5. <u>Khin suken</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean a big towel? |
| 6. <u>Mikuk salam</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean the Americans? |
| 7. <u>eni kes</u> mal imnikka? | Which do you mean? |
| 8. <u>Musin sacen</u> mal imnikka? | What dictionary do you mean? |
| *9. <u>ence</u> mal imnikka? | When do you mean? |
| 10. <u>Nuku</u> mal imnikka? | Whom do you mean? |
| 11. <u>Muæs</u> mal imnikka? | What do you mean? |
| 12. <u>eti</u> mal imnikka? | Where do you mean? |
| 13. <u>ettæhke</u> mal imnikka? | How do you mean? |
| 14. <u>Myæch salam</u> mal imnikka? | How many people do you mean? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Kí kəs, com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show [me] that. |
| *2. <u>Cə kılım</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show [me] that picture. |
| 3. <u>Kı capcı</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me that magazine. |
| 4. <u>Cə sinmun</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me that newspaper. |
| 5. <u>Nolan yangmal</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some yellow socks. |
| 6. <u>Phalan kəs</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me a blue one. |
| 7. <u>Kkamhan kutu</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some black shoes. |
| 8. <u>Hayan waisyassı</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some white shirts. |
| 9. <u>Ppalkan os</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me a red dress. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Talın kəs to issımnita. | [We] also have a different one(s). |
| 2. <u>Cohın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a good one. |
| 3. <u>Pıssan kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have an expensive one. |
| 4. <u>Ssan kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a cheap one. |
| 5. <u>Khın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a big one. |
| 6. <u>Cakın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a small one. |
| 7. <u>Nolan kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a yellow one. |
| 8. <u>Ppalkan kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a red one. |
| 9. <u>Phalan kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a blue one. |
| *10. <u>Kathın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have the same thing. |
| *11. <u>Alımtaun kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a beautiful one. |
| *12. <u>Yeppın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a pretty one. |
| *13. <u>Nelpın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a wide one. |
| *14. <u>Copın kəs</u> to issımnita. | [We] also have a narrow one. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Talin kəs in <u>əttəhsimnikka</u> ? | How is the other one? |
| 2. Talin kəs in <u>əlma imnikka</u> ? | How much is the other one? |
| 3. Talin kəs in <u>cohsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one good? |
| 4. Talin kəs in <u>nappimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one bad? |
| 5. Talin kəs in <u>khimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one big? |
| 6. Talin kəs in <u>caksimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one small? |
| 7. Talin kəs in <u>əpsimnikka</u> ? | Don't you have a different one? |
| 8. Talin kəs in <u>issimnikka</u> ? | Do you have another one? |
| 9. Talin kəs in <u>talimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one different? |
| *10. Talin kəs in <u>alimtapsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one beautiful? |
| *11. Talin kəs in <u>yeppimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one pretty? |
| *12. Talin kəs in <u>nə(1)psimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one wide? |
| *13. Talin kəs in <u>čopsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one narrow? |
| *14. Talin kəs in <u>kathsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one the same? |
| *15. Talin kəs in <u>swipsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one easy? |
| *16. Talin kəs in <u>əlyəpsimnikka</u> ? | Is the other one difficult? |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Talin kəs i philyo-hamnikka? | Do [you] need anything else? |
| 2. <u>Yəng-Han sacən</u> (i) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need an E-K dictionary? |
| 3. <u>Han-Yəng sacən</u> (i) philyo-hammikka? | Do you need a K-E dictionary? |
| 4. <u>Phen kwa congī</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a pen and paper? |
| 5. <u>Chəksang kwa ıyca</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a desk and a chair? |
| 6. <u>Moca wa kutu</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a hat and shoes? |
| 7. <u>Yəphil kwa kongchək</u> (i) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a pencil and a notebook? |
| 8. <u>Sacən kwa congī</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a dictionary and paper? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Phen kwa congī nīn eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy pens and paper?
('Where do [they] sell pens and
paper?') |
| 2. <u>Yangmal</u> (kwa) <u>yangpok</u> in eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy socks and suits? |
| 3. <u>Sinmum</u> (kwa) <u>capci</u> nīn eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy newspapers and
magazines? |
| 4. <u>Sikye</u> (wa) <u>son-sukən</u> in eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy watches and hand-
kerchiefs? |
| 5. <u>Congī</u> (wa) <u>phen</u> in eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy paper and pens? |
| 6. <u>Yangmal</u> (kwa) <u>kutu</u> nīn eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy socks and shoes? |
| 7. <u>Chæksang</u> (kwa) <u>lyca</u> nīn eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy tables and chairs? |
| 8. <u>Moca</u> (wa) <u>kutu</u> nīn eti esə phamnikka? | Where can I buy hats and shoes? |
| 9. <u>Yenphil</u> (kwa) <u>kongchæk</u> in eti esə
phamnikka? | Where can I buy pencils and note-
books? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Muəs il tīlīl kka yo? | What would you like? ('What shall I
give you?') |
| 2. <u>ənī chæk</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Which book would you like? |
| 3. <u>Musin sæk</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | What color would you like? |
| 4. <u>Talīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a different one? |
| 5. <u>Tə ssan congī</u> (līl) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like cheaper paper? |
| 6. <u>Tə pissan sikyo</u> (līl) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a more expensive
watch? |
| 7. <u>Tə cohīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a better one? |
| 8. <u>Tə cakīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a smaller one? |
| 9. <u>Tə khīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a bigger one? |
| 10. <u>Tə hayān kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a whiter one? |

I. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Chæk i pissamnita.	'The book is expensive.'
Student: Pissan chæk i issimnita.	'There's an expensive book.'
1. Sacæn i cohsimnita.	Cohin sacæn i issimnita.
2. Cip i khimnita.	Khin cip i issimnita.
3. Mannyenphil i caksimnita.	Cakin mannyenphil i issimnita.
4. Yangpok i kkamhamnita.	Kkamhan yangpok i issimnita.
5. Waisyassi ka hayamnita.	Hayan waisyassi ka issimnita.
6. Yenphil i nolahsimnita.	Nolan yenphil i issimnita.
7. Os i ppalkahsimnita.	Ppalkan os i issimnita.
8. Sicang i kakkapsimnita.	Kakkaun sicang i issimnita.
9. Kilim i alimtapsimnita.	Alimtaun kilim i issimnita.
10. Kyosil i nelpsimnita.	Nelpin kyosil i issimnita.
11. Samusil i copsimnita.	Copin samusil i issimnita.
12. Sæk i talimnita.	Talin sæk i issimnita.
13. Sacæn i pissamnita.	Pissan sacæn i issimnita.
14. Kilim i kathsimnita.	Kathin kilim i issimnita.
15. Chæk i swipsimnita.	Swiun chæk i issimnita.
16. Mal i elyepsimnita.	elyeun mal i issimnita.

J. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Haksæng i kongpu-hamnita.	'A student (is) study(ing).'
Student: Kongpu-hanin haksæng i issimnita.	'There is a student who is studying.'
1. Salam i omnita.	Onin salam i issimnita.
2. Mikuk salam i Hankuk mal il (mal-) hamnita.	Hankuk mal il (mal-)hanin Mikuk salam i issimnita.
3. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk e kamnita.	Mikuk e kanin Hankuk haksæng i issimnita.
4. Sænsæng i Yøngø lil kalichimnita.	Yøngø lil kalichinin sænsæng i issimnita.
5. Puin i kutu lil samnita.	Kutu lil sanin puin i issimnita.
6. Ai ka chæk il ilksimnita.	Chæk il ilknin ai ka issimnita.
7. Mikuk yeca ka kil il mulø pomnita.	Kil il mulø ponin Mikuk yeca ka issimnita.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. Hankuk yeca ka Cungkuk mal il kalichimnita. | Cungkuk mal il kalichinin Hankuk yeca ka issimnita. |
| 9. Haksæng i ki pun il amnita. | Ki pun il anin haksæng i issimnita. |
| 10. Yeca ka kilim il pomnita. | Kilim il ponin yeca ka issimnita. |

K. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tutor: Congi ka myeoch cang issimnikka?
/tu(1)/ | 'How many sheets of paper are there?
/two/ |
| Student: Tu cang issimnita. | 'There are two sheets [of paper]!. |
| 1. Sænsæng i myeoch pun issimnikka?
/se(s)/ | Se pun issimnita. |
| 2. Yænphil il myeoch kæ sassimnikka?
/tasæs/ | Tasæs kæ sassimnita. |
| 3. Haksæng i myeoch salam issimnikka?
/ne(s)/ | Ne salam issimnita. |
| 4. Mikuk haksæng i myeoch salam kongpu-hamnikka? /ilkop/ | Ilkop salam (i) kongpu-hamnita. |
| 5. Kyosil e yeca ka myeoch kæ issimnikka?
/ahop/ | Ahop kæ issimnita. |
| 6. Yæki e chæk i myeoch kwæn issimnikka?
/yæl-se(s)/ | Yæl-se kwæn issimnita. |
| 7. Khophi lil myeoch can masimnikka?
/yæle/ | Yæle can masimnita. |
| 8. Hakkyo e kyosil i myeoch kæ issimnikka? /simu(1)/ | Simu kæ issimnita. |
| 9. Kæ lil myeoch mali pwassimnikka?
/tasæs/ | Tasæs mali pwassimnita. |
| 10. Yangpok il myeoch pæl sassimnikka?
/tu(1)/ | Tu pæl sassimnita. |

L. Expansion Drill (Supply the proper counter /pun, salam, kœ, cang, kwên/ and expand the sentence as in the example.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Sœnsœng i issimnita. /hana/ | 'There is (a) teacher.' /one/ |
| Student: Sœnsœng i han pun issimnita. | 'There is one teacher.' |
| 1. Yœnphil i issimnita. /tul/ | Yœnphil i tu kœ issimnita. |
| 2. Haksœng i issimnita. /nes/ | Haksœng i ne salam issimnita. |
| 3. Congi ka issimnita. /yœsœs/ | Congi ka yœsœs cang issimnita. |
| 4. Chœksang il sassimnita. /tasœs/ | Chœksang il tasœs kœ sassimnita. |
| 5. Sinmun il sassimnita. /hana/ | Sinmun il han cang sassimnita. |
| 6. Kyosil e ilya ka issimnita. /ilkop/ | Kyosil e ilya ka ilkop kœ issimnita. |
| 7. Yœngœ chœk il sakessimnita. /yœtœl/ | Yœngœ chœk il yœtœl kwên sakessimnita. |
| 8. Na nin achim e khœphi lil masimnita.
/se(s)/ | Na nin achim e khœphi lil se can
masimnita. |
| 9. Congi lil cusipsiyo. /tul/ | Congi lil tu cang cusipsiyo. |
| 10. Mikuk salam il pwassimnita. /ses/ | Mikuk salam il se salam pwassimnita. |

M. Response Drill (Use tœtanhi in the proper place.)

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Tutor: K1 sacœn i cohsimnikka? | 'Is that dictionary good?' |
| Student: Ne, tœtanhi cohsimnita. | 'Yes, [it] is very good.' |
| 1. K1 chœk i pissamnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi pissamnita. |
| 2. Cœngkœcang i kakkapsimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi kakkapsimnita. |
| 3. Hankuk yœca ka yeppimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi yeppimnita. |
| 4. Samusil i copsimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi copsimnita. |
| 5. I chœk i talimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi talimnita. |
| 6. Cœ kutu ka kkamahsimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi kkamahsimnita. |
| 7. Han-Yœng sacœn i philyo-hamnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi philyo-hamnita. |
| 8. Pak Sœnsœng i cal kalichimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi cal kalichimnita. |
| 9. Ceimsi Sœnsœng i Yœngœ lil cal
(mal-)hamnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi cal (mal-)hamnita. |
| 10. Os i ppalkahsimnikka? | Ne, tœtanhi ppalkahsimnita. |

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Mues il tilil kka yo? /khal/

'What would you like? ('What shall I give you?') /knife/

Student: Khal il cusipsiyo.

'Please give [me] a knife.'

1. eni chæk il tilil kka yo? /Hankuk
mal sacen/

Hankuk mal sacen il cusipsiyo.

2. Musin sæk il tilil kka yo? /phalan
sæk/

Phalan sæk il cusipsiyo.

3. Talin kës il tilil kka yo? /k1 kës/

K1 kës il cusipsiyo.

4. Pissan yenphil il tilil kka yo?
/com ssan kës/

Com ssan kës il cusipsiyo.

5. Yeng-Han sacen il tilil kka yo?
/Han-Yeng sacen/

Han-Yeng sacen il cusipsiyo.

6. Cakin suken il tilil kka yo?
/khin son-suken/

Khin son-suken il cusipsiyo.

7. Nolan sæk yangmal il tilil kka yo?
/kkaman yangmal/

Kkaman yangmal il cusipsiyo.

8. Mikuk moca lil tilil kka yo?
/Ilpon moca/

Ilpon moca lil cusipsiyo.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e kal kka yo?

'Should I go home?'
'Do you want me to go home?'

Student: Ne, kasipsiyo.

'Yes, you should ('please go').'

1. I chæk il sal kka yo?

Ne, sasipsiyo.

2. Kim Sënsëng il mannal kka yo?

Ne, mannasipsiyo.

3. Kil il mule pol kka yo?

Ne, mule posipsiyo.

4. Yeki e issil kka yo?

Ne, {issisipsiyo.
kyesipsiyo.

5. I chæk il phal(il) kka yo?

Ne, phalisipsiyo.

6. Yeng-Han sacen il tilil kka yo?

Ne, cusipsiyo.

7. Kilim il kilil kka yo?

Ne, kilisipsiyo.

8. Sënsëng cip e tllil kka yo?

Ne, tllisipsiyo.

9. K1 al lil chacil kka yo?

Ne, chacisipsiyo.

10. I chæk il ilkil kka yo?

Ne, ilkisipsiyo.

P. Response Drill.

Tutor: Hakkyo lo kal kka yo? /cip/

'Shall we go to school?' /house/

Student: Cip ilo kapsita.

'Let 's go to the house, [instead].'

1. Hankuk mal il pæul kka yo? /Yəngə/

Yəngə lil pæupsita.

2. Pækhwacem esə sal kka yo? /sangcəm/

Sangcəm esə sapsita.

3. Kim Sənsəng il mannal kka yo?

Cemisi Sənsəng il mannapsita.

/Ceimsi Sənsəng/

4. Onil pækhwacem e tillil kka yo?

Nəil tillipsita.

/nəil/

5. Onil in Cungkuk mal il (mal-)hal

Yəngə lil (mal-)hapsita.

kka yo? /Yəngə/

6. Sinumn il ilkil kka yo? /capci/

Capci lil ilkipsita.

7. Kyosil esə kongpu-hal kka yo?

Samusil esə kongpu-hapsita.

/samusil/

8. Cənyək e samusil e issil kka yo?

Cip e issipsita.

/cip/

Q. Response Drill (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech beginning with Aniyo.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kassimnikka?

'Did you go to school?'

Student: Aniyo, kaci anhesse yo.

'No, I didn't (go).'

1. Ki sacən i cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cohci anhe yo.

2. Cakin kəs il sakessimnikka?

Aniyo, saci anhkessə yo.

3. Tto talin kəs i philyo-hamnikka?

Aniyo, philyo-haci anhe yo.

4. Phen kwa congī lil phaləssimnikka?

Aniyo, phalcı anhesse yo.

5. Congī lil wənhassimnikka?

Aniyo, wənhaci anhe yo.

6. Sinə e munpangkucem i issəssimnikka?

Aniyo, əpəssə yo.

7. Kil il mulə pwassimnikka?

Aniyo, mulə poci anhesse yo.

8. Tə ssan kəs in əpsimnikka?

Aniyo, issə yo.

9. Yəki esə phen il pha(lı)mnikka?

Aniyo, phalcı anhe yo.

10. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka?

Aniyo, ssacı anhe yo.

11. Yəng-Han sacən i issimnikka?

Aniyo, əpsə yo.

12. Nolan sæk il cohahamnikka?

Aniyo, cohahacı anhe yo.

R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: I kəs i issimnita. /talın kəs/

Student: Talın kəs to issimnikka?

'[We] have this.' /a different one/

'Do you have any others?'

'Do you have a different one, too?'

1. Cakın chæk i cohsimnita. /khin chæk/

Khin chæk to cohsimnikka?

2. Congi ka philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/

Yənphil to philyo-hamnikka?

3. I kəs in pissamnita. /cə kəs/

Cə kəs pissamnikka?

4. Na nin Hankuk mal il pəumnita.

Ceimsi to Hankuk mal il pəumnikka?

/Ceimsi/

5. Sukən il sassimnita. /yangpok/

Yangpok to sassimnikka?

6. Sacən il wənhamnita. /capci/

Capci to wənhamnikka?

7. Yəki esə kutu lıl phamnita. /moca/

Yəki esə moca to phamnikka?

8. Pak Sənsəng i kalichimnita.

I Sənsəng to kalichimnikka?

/I Sənsəng/

9. Ceimsi Sənsəng il mannamnita.

Chinku to mannamnikka?

/chinku/

10. Hankuk mal i swipci anhsimnita.

Ilpon mal to swipci anhsimnikka?

/Ilpon mal/

11. Hankuk mal il mal-haci anhsimnita.

Cungkuk mal to mal-haci anhsimnikka?

/Cungkuk mal/

S. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka məm̃nita. /sinə/

Student: Sinə to məm̃nita.

'The shcool is far.' /downtown/

'Downtown is far, too.'

1. Chæk i philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/

Yənphil to philyo-hamnita.

2. I kəs i issimnita. /talın kəs/

Talin kəs to issimnita.

3. Na nin Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.

Ceimsi to Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.

/Ceimsi/

4. Na nin Hankuk mal il kalichimnita.

Na nin Yəngə to kalichimnita.

/Yəngə/

5. Khin sacən i cohsimnita. /cakın
sacən/

Cakın sacən to cohsimnita.

6. Moca lıl sal kka hamnita. /kutu/

Kutu to sal kka hamnita.

7. Yəki esə capci lıl pha(lı)mnita.

Yəki esə sinmun to pha(lı)mnita.

/sinmun/

8. Kyosil i nəlphsimnita. /samusil/

Samusil to nəlphsimnita.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 9. Mikuk yəca nin alımtapsımnita.
/Hankuk yəca/ | Hankuk yəca to alımtapsımnita. |
| 10. Kim Sənsəng ıl chacsımnita.
/I Sənsəng/ | I Sənsəng to chacsımnita. |

T. Grammar Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Mikuk pəsakwan i kakkapsımnita.
/Mikuk Kongpowən/ | 'The U.S. Embassy is near.' /USIA/ |
| Student: Mikuk Kongpowən i tə
kakkapsımnita. | 'USIA is nearer.' |
| 1. Yənphil i pissamnita. /mannyənphil/ | Mannyənphil i tə pissamnita. |
| 2. I kılım i alımtapsımnita. /cə
kılım/ | Cə kılım i tə alımtapsımnita. |
| 3. Hankuk mal kyosil i nəlpsımnita.
/Cungkuk mal kyosil/ | Cungkuk mal kyosil i tə nəlpsımnita. |
| 4. Nə moca ka cohsımnita. /Kim Sənsəng
moca/ | Kim Sənsəng moca ka tə cohsımnita. |
| 5. İlpon mal i swıpsımnita. /Cungkuk
mal/ | Cungkuk mal i tə swıpsımnita. |
| 6. Cungkuk mal i əlyəpsımnita. /Hankuk
mal/ | Hankuk mal i tə əlyəpsımnita. |
| 7. Khın sacən i ssamnita. /cakin
sacən/ | Cakin sacən i tə ssamnita. |
| 8. İlpon in caksımnita. /Hankuk/ | Hankuk in tə caksımnita. |
| 9. Na nin sinmun ıl cohamnita.
/capci/ | Na nin capci lıl tə cohamnita. |
| 10. Pak Sənsəng in Yəngə lıl cal
hamnita. /Kim Sənsəng/ | Kim Sənsəng in (Yəngə lıl) tə cal
hamnita. |

U. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

Tutor: Yənphil kwa chæk in ənı kəs
i tē pissamnikka?

'Which one is more expensive, a
pencil or a book?'

Student: Chæk i tē pissamnita.

'A book is more expensive.'

1. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in ənı mal i
tē swipsimnikka?

Yəngə ka tē swipsamnita.

2. Hankuk mal kyosil kwa Cungkuk mal
kyosil in ənı kəs i tē nelpsimnikka?

Cungkuk mal kyosil i tē nelpsimnita.

3. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in ənı mal i
tē əlyəpsimnikka?

Hankuk mal i tē əlyəpsimnita.

4. Hankuk kwa İlpon in əti ka tē
caksimnikka?

Hankuk i tē caksimnita.

5. Kim Sənsəng kwa Pak Sənsəng in
nuka Yəngə lıl tē cal hamnikka?

Kim Sənsəng i tē cal hamnita.

6. Sənsəng e yangpok kwa moca nın ənı
kəs i tē ssamnikka?

Moca ka tē ssamnita.

7. Nyuyok kwa Wəsingthon in əti lıl
tē cohahamnikka?

Wəsingthon ıl tē cohahamnita.

V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: I chæk i ssamnita.

'This book is cheap.'

Student: Tē ssan chæk i issimnita.

'There's a cheaper one (book).'

1. I kilim i alımtapsimnita.

Tē alımtawn kilim i issimnita.

2. I kyosil i nelpsimnita.

Tē nelpın kyosil i issimnita.

3. I samusil i copsimnita.

Tē copın samusil i issimnita.

4. I sacən i cohsimnita.

Tē cohın sacən i issimnita.

5. I mal i swipsimnita.

Tē swıwn mal i issimnita.

6. I kyosil i caksimnita.

Tē cakın kyosil i issimnita.

7. I chæk i əlyəpsimnita.

Tē əlyəun chæk i issimnita.

8. I mannyənphil i ssamnita.

Tē ssan manyənphil i issimnita.

9. I kəs ıl cohahamnita.

Tē cohahanın kəs i issimnita.

10. I pun i (Yəngə lıl) cal hamnita.

(Yəngə lıl) tē cal hanın pun i
issimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Mr. Kim asks you:

- a. to show him the dictionary.
- b. to give him that.
- c. to go downtown together.
- d. to study Korean together.
- e. if you know him.
- f. if Korean is difficult.
- g. if you have read a book.
- h. if she teaches Korean.
- i. to buy this suit.

You respond:

- 'Which one do you mean?'
- 'What do you mean?'
- 'When do you mean?'
- 'Where do you mean?'
- 'Who(m) do you mean?'
- 'Yes, it is.'
- 'What kind of book do you mean?'
- 'Who do you mean?'
- 'How much do you want?'

2. You ask the store-clerk:

- a. if he carries any good K-E dictionary.
- b. to show you one.
- c. how it is.
- d. how the other one is.
- e. which one is better.
- f. if the bigger one is more expensive.
- g. where they sell fountain-pens and notebooks.
- h. how much they charge for a cup of coffee.
- i. if the department stores also carry magazines and newspapers.

He replies:

- 'Yes, we do.'
- 'Here you are.'
- 'It's very good, but we have another kind.'
- 'It's a little larger one.'
- 'They are the same.'
- 'The price is also the same.'
- '(They sell) at the stationary-store.'
- '₩20.'
- 'Yes, they do.'

3. Ask Mr. Kim:

- a. How many cups of coffee he drinks in the morning.
- b. How many students there are.
- c. How many books he has read.
- d. How many chairs there are in the room.
- e. How many sheets of paper he needs.
- f. How many colors he wants.
- g. How many hats he'll buy.
- h. How many teachers he has.

- i. How many suits he has.
 - j. How many horses there are on the street.
4. Tell Pak Sensaeng that:
- a. You like a bigger one.
 - b. You want a little more expensive watch.
 - c. You need a pencil and paper.
 - d. A beautiful woman came to your house.
 - e. There is no English-Korean dictionary here.
 - f. French is easy, but Korean is very difficult
 - g. The store on the left is a stationary shop, and the building on the right is a department store.
 - h. The dictionary is small, but it is a very good one.
 - i. The small one is fine for you, but you need the other one, too.
 - j. You are studying Korean, and your friend is teaching German.
 - k. You met a pretty Korean girl.
 - l. There is a child who is reading a newspaper.
 - m. You know an American who speaks Korean.
 - n. You don't know the lady who is buying shoes.
 - o. You have learned Korean, but you don't speak well.
 - p. Korean is not easy, but you like it.
 - q. Mr. Park doesn't speak Chinese, but he reads it well.

제 6 과 시간

(대화 A)

지금

몇, 몇

몇 시

1. A: 지금 몇 시이예요?

여덟 시

오 분

오 분 전

2. B: 여덟 시 오 분 전입니다.

일

시작

시작합니다

3. A: 몇 시에 일이 시작합니다?

아침

여덟 시 삼십 분

4. B: (아침) 여덟 시 삼십 분에 시작합니다.

하루

시간

몇 시간

5. A: 그럼, 하루에 몇 시간 일을 하세요?

UNIT 6. Time

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

cikim

now

myæch
mech/met/ }

how many?; what?

myæch-si/myæssi/

what time

1. Cikim myæch-si (i)ye yo?

What time is it (now)?

B

yætəl(p)-si/yætəlssi/

8 o'clock

o pun

5 minute(s)

o pun cən

5 minutes of; 5 minutes before

2. Yætəl(p)-si o pun cən imnita.

It's five minutes before 8.

A

il

work; job

sicak

beginning

sicak-hamnikka

do [you] begin?; does [it]
begin?

3. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?

What time do you start work? ('What
times does work begin?')B

achim

morning

yætəl(p)-si samsip pun

8:30

4. (Achim) yætəl(p)-si samsip pun
e sicak-hamnita.I start at 8:30. ('It begins at
8:30 a.m.')A

halu

one day

sikan

time; hour

myæch sikan/myæssikan/

how many hours?

5. Kıləm, halu e myæch sikan il il
hase yo?How many hours do you work a day
(then)?

여덟 시간(동안)

일합니다

6. B: 여덟 시간(동안) 일합니다.

대개

집에

7. A: 대개 몇 시에 집에 가세요?

다섯 시 쯤

사무실

떠납니다

사무실을 떠납니다

8. B: 대개 다섯 시 쯤 사무실을 떠납니다.

(대화 B)

며칠

9. A: 오늘이 며칠이지요?

삼월

일일

10. B: 삼월 일일입니다.

달

이 달

버서

11. A: 이 달이 버서 삼월입니까?

B

- yətəl(p) sikan (tongan) for eight hours
 11-hamnita [I] work
 6. Yətəl(p) sikan (tongan) 11-hamnita. I work (for) eight hours.

A

- tækæ usually
 cip e to the house; home
 7. Tækæ myəch-si e cip e kase yo? What time to you usually go home?

B

- tasəs-si ccim around 5 o'clock
 samusil office
 ttenamnita [I] leave
 samusil 11 ttenamnita [I] leave office
 8. Tækæ tasəs-si ccim samusil 11 ttenamnita. I usually leave my office around 5 o'clock.

Dialogue BA

- myəchil what day?; what date?; some days
 9. Onil 1 myəchil ici yo? What's today's date?

B

- Sam-wəl March
 11 11 the 1st(day of the month)
 10. Sam-wəl 11 11 imnita. (It's) March 1st.

A

- tal month; moon
 i tal this month
 pəlsə already
 11. I tal i pəlsə Sam-wəl imnikka? Is it March already? ('Is this month already March?')

- 이월
이십 팔일
12. B: 예, 그렇습니다. 어제가 이월 이십 팔일이었습니다.

- 무슨 요일
13. A: 그러면, 오늘이 무슨 요일이예요?

- 목요일
14. B: 목요일입니다.

- 이하터
- 이하터 갑니다
15. A: 어제 이하터 갑니까?

16. B: 아니요, 이하터 가지 않았습니다.

- 주일
이주일
사흘
지난 사흘
지난 사흘 동안
쉬었습니다
17. 이 주일에는 지난 사흘 동안 쉬었습니다.

- 왜요
- 몸
- 아팠니까
- (몸이) 아팠습니까
18. A: 왜요? 몸이 아팠습니까?

B

- I-wəl
isip-phal il
12. Ne, kiləhsımnita. əce ka I-wəl
isip-phal il iəssımnita.

February
28th (of the month)

Yes, it is. Yesterday was February
28th.

A

- musın yoıl
13. Kiləmyən, onıl i musın yoıl iye
yo?

what day of the week?

What day of the week is it (today),
then?

B

- Mokyoıl
14. Mokyoıl imnita.

Thursday

[It's] Thursday.

A

- il-halə
il-halə kamnita
15. əce il-halə kassımnikka?

in order to work; to work

[I] go to work

Did [you] go to work yesterday?

B

16. Aniyo, il-halə kaci anhəssımnita.
cuıl
i cuıl
sahıl
cinan sahıl
cinan sahıl tongan
swiəssımnita
17. I cuıl e nin cinan sahıl tongan
swiəssımnita.

No, I didn't (go to work).
week
this week
three days
last three days
for the last three days
[I] rested; [I] took a rest

This week I took three days off.
(¹As for in this week I took a rest
for the last three days.¹)

A

- wə yo
mom
aphımnikka
- (mom i) aphəssımnikka
18. Wə yo? Mom i aphəssımnikka?

how come?; why?

body

are [you] sick?; are [you]
hurt?

were [you] sick?

Why? Were you sick?

휴가

받았었습니다

19. B:

아니요, 휴가를 받았었습니다.

B

hyuka

vacation

patæssessimnita

[I] received, [I] had received

19. Aniyō. Hyuka lll patæssessimnita.

No. I took a vacation.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Myæch and its variant mech 'how many', 'what', 'some', occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative. Before counters or certain nouns in question sentences, it means 'how many' or 'what'; in a statement sentence it means 'some'. As a free noun myæch means 'how many' in a question sentence, and 'some' or 'several' in a statement sentence. Myæch plus certain counters make up (question) noun phrases. For example, myæch-si 'what time' is a noun phrase which is used only in asking time. Each phrase of this type should be memorized as a phrase. Myæch is pronounced as /myes/ before s; /myen/ before n; /myet/ before t, etc. When a vowel follows, the final sound ch is released and forms a syllable with the following vowel: myæch-si/myæssi/ 'what time', myæch salam/myæssalam/ 'how many people', myæch nal/myænnal/ 'how many days', myæch tal/myættal/ 'how many months', myæch i/myæchi/ 'how many (as a subject)' in Myæch i isse yo? 'How many are there?'.

2. Pun 'minute' is a time counter which occurs only after numerals of Chinese character origin. Numeral + pun designates either a point in time or a duration of time. Example:

han-si o pun

'5 minutes after 1 o'clock'

o pun

'five minutes'

3. The verb stem sicak-ha- 'to begin' is formed from the noun sicak 'the beginning' by adding ha-. Sicak-ha- is used either as a transitive verb or as an intransitive verb. Compare:

Il i sicak-hamnita.

'The work begins.'

Il il sicak-hamnita.

'[I] begin the work.'

The antonym of sicak-ha- is either kkith-na- 'to end', 'to be over' (intransitive verb), or kkith-næ- 'to finish' (transitive verb).

5. Kilæm 'then' is the contracted form of kilæmyen 'if so' which is a sentence adverbial. Both forms occur at the beginning of a sentence and are followed by a pause. Sikan 'hour', 'time', occurs either as a time counter or as a free noun. As a counter after Korean numerals sikan means 'hour': han sikan 'one hour', tu sikan 'two hours', se sikan 'three hours', myæch sikan 'how

many hours', yele sikan 'many hours', etc. As a free noun, it means 'time':
Sikan i issimnikka? 'Do you have time?'

Il-ha- 'to work' is a verb stem formed from the noun il 'work', 'job'. The
 antonym of il-ha- is no(1)- 'not to work', 'to play', 'to loaf'.

6. Tongan 'for', 'during' is a post-noun. The nominal that precedes usually
 is a time expression, and 'time expression + tongan' is an adverbial
 expression. Example: han sikan tongan 'for an hour', halu tongan 'for one
 day', il pun tongan 'for one minute', il-wel tongan 'during January', ki
tongan 'in the meantime'.
8. Ccim 'about', 'around' is a post-noun which occurs after other nominal
 expressions (e.g. time, place names, quality or quantity expressions) and
 denotes approximation of the preceding expressions. Examples:

han tal ccim	'about one month'
han tal tongan ccim	'for about one month'
il-wel ccim	'around January'
han sikan ccim	'about an hour'

The antonym of the verb stem ttena- 'to leave' is tah- 'to arrive'.

9. Myechil 'what date', 'some days' is one word; not a two-word compound of
myech + il.
11. The opposite word for pelsse 'already' is acik '(not) yet' which also means
 'still'. Compare:
- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Hakkyo ka acik sicak-haci | 'School has not begun yet.' |
| anhessimnita. | |
| Ce nin acik Hankuk mal il | 'I'm still studying Korean.' |
| pæumnita. | |
13. Yoil 'day of the week' occurs as a post-noun after certain nouns or
 determinatives. Examples: eni yoil 'which day of the week', musin yoil
 'what day of the week'.

14. Mokyoil 'Thursday' is one word. So is Ilyoil 'Sunday', Welyoil 'Monday', Hwayoil 'Tuesday', Suyoil 'Wednesday', Kimyoil 'Friday', Thoyoil 'Saturday'.
17. Halu 'one day', sahil 'three days' belong to a small class of one-word time expressions which enumerate days: halu 'one day', ithil 'two days', sahil 'three days', nahil 'four days', tassæ 'five days', yæssæ 'six days', ile 'seven days', yetile 'eight days', ahile 'nine days', yelhil 'ten days'. This class of time expressions also is used infrequently to designate days of the month.
19. Hyuka 'vacation', 'leave' is distinguished from panghak 'school vacation'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Time counters: nyæn 'year', hæ 'year', -wæl 'month', tal 'month', cuil 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun 'minute'. Korean time counters are classed in two groups: (a) those which occur after the numerals of Korean origin, and (b) those which occur after numerals of Chinese character origin. It is imperative to know the series of numerals with which each time counter is used.

The counters hæ 'year', tal 'month', cuil 'week', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour' occur after numerals of Korean origin.

The counters nyæn 'year', -wæl 'month', il 'day', pun 'minute' occur after numerals of Chinese character origin.

The above time counters are divided into three sub-classes without regard to the series of numerals with which they occur:

(a) Those which name:

1. the calendar months..... -wæl
2. hours..... -si

(b) Those which count:

1. the number of months..... tal
2. the number of weeks..... cuil
3. the number of hours..... sikan
4. the number of days (for only 20 days, 30 days, 40 days, 50 days, 60 days)..... nal

(c) Those which either:

1. name calendar years or enumerate years..... nyen
2. name dates or enumerate days..... il
3. specify the minutes or enumerate the minutes..... pun

Note that expressions of time in Korean are listed from the largest unit to the smallest unit: that is, in the order of year, month, day, hours, minute and second.

Note 1: Cuil 'week' is preceded by either set of numerals.

Note 2: **For** the words expressing the number of days from 1 day to 10 days, see number 17 of Notes on Dialogues in this Unit.

Note 3: The two time counters -wəl and -si are added to the numbers with a hyphen to signify that they occur only as parts of words which are expressions of time, i.e., -wəl for the names of months and -si for the hours of a day, respectively.

2. -ci yo?

We noticed in Unit 4 that the ci form occurs before the verb anh- 'not'. The ci form immediately followed by yo? (i.e. -ci yo?) occurs as an informal polite question sentence final form. If -ci yo? occurs without a preceding question word, the speaker expects the addressee to answer yes; if -ci yo? follows after a question word in the same sentence it simply substitutes for -(1)mnikka? or (infinitive) + yo?. Compare: Give attention to the final intonations.

Group 1

Kim Sənsəŋ ɪ Yəŋgə lɪl mal-haci yo?	'Mr. Kim speaks English, doesn't he?'
Hakkyo ka məlci yo?	'The school is far, isn't it?'
Hankuk mal ɪ əlyəpɕi yo?	'Korean is difficult, isn't it?'
Sənsəŋ ɪn Mikuk salam ɪci yo?	'You are an American, aren't you?'

Group 2

I kəs ɪ muəs ɪci yo?	'What's this?'
Hakkyo ka əti e ɪssɕi yo?	'Where is the school?'
Nuku lɪl mannassɕi yo?	'Whom did [you] meet?'
Myech-si e ɪl ɪl sɪcak-haci yo?	'(At) What time do [you] begin the work?'

Note that -ci yo may also occur as an informal polite final form of a statement, propositative or imperative sentence. We will learn more about it later.

3. -(1)lɛ 'in order to-'

The verb ending -(1)lɛ is added to an action verb stem, or to an action verb stem plus honorific suffix -(1)si: -lɛ is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -ilɛ to a stem ending in a consonant. Tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form ending in -(1)lɛ. The (1)lɛ form denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(1)lɛ form. The verbs which follow the -(1)lɛ form are usually ka- 'to go', o- 'to come', or tani- 'to attend'. Examples:

Na nin chæk (il) ilkilɛ hakkyo e tillikessɛ yo.	'I will stop by school to read books.'
Chinku lil mannalɛ wassimnita.	'I came to meet a friend.'
Hankuk mal il pœulɛ hakkyo e tanimnita.	'I am attending school to learn Korean.'
Chæk (il) salɛ sinɛ e an kakesse yo?	'Wouldn't you go downtown to buy books?'

4. Adverb phrases

In Unit 1 we learned that two or more nouns make up Noun Phrases, and that they occur as though they were one noun. Note that a noun phrase is used as a nominal. In Unit 5, we defined Adverbs. (See Grammar Notes 3, Unit 5.) If two or more words occur together and are used as if they were one adverb we shall call them Adverb Phrases. Hereafter, we shall use the term Adverbial for any word or phrase which occurs in a position where an adverb may be substituted. Note that some adverbials also occur as nominals but most adverbials are used only as adverbials. Nouns + particles are often used as adverb phrases. Example

(a) Question Adverb Phrases:

ɛti esɛ	'from where ('from what place') <u>or</u> where ('at what place')'
ɛti e } ɛti lo }	'to (<u>or</u> toward) where ('to what place')'
ɛti kkaci	'(as far as) where'
nuku wa	'with whom'
nuku eke	'(to) whom'
ɛlma e	'(for) how much ('at what price')'
ɛlma tongan	'(for) how long'
ɛlma na	'how (much)'
ɛnce kkaci	'until when'
ɛnce puthe	'from (<u>or</u> since) when'
myech-si e	'(at) what time'

myæchil e	'(on) what date'
musin } tal e	'(in) what month'
ənl }	
musin } hæ e	'(in) what year'
ənl }	
musin yoil e	'(on) what day of the week'
myæch sikan tongan	'(for) how many hours'
myæch pun tongan	'(for) how many minutes'
myæchil tongan	'(for) how many days'
myæch tal tongan	'(for) how many months'
myæch nyæn } tongan	'(for) how many years'
myæch hæ }	

(b) Time Adverb Phrases

achim e	'in the morning'
nac e	'at noon'
ohu e	'in the afternoon'
cənyək e	'in the evening'
pam e	'at night'
onil achim e	'this morning'
næll nac e	'tomorrow noon'
molæ ohu e	'in the afternoon of the day after tomorrow'
kilphi cənyək e	'in the evening of two days after tomorrow'
æce pam e	'last night'
i tal e	'this month'
i cuil e	'this week'
cinan cuil e	'last week'
cinan tal e	'last month'
talm hæ e	'next year'
talm tal e	'next month'
talm cuil e	'next week'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Myæch-si</u> imnikka? | What time is [it]? |
| 2. <u>Myæchil</u> imnikka? | What date is [it]? |
| *3. <u>Musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is [this]? |
| 4. <u>Musin yoil</u> imnikka? | What day (of the week) is [it]? |
| 5. <u>Musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month is [it]? |
| 6. <u>æni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week (of the month) is [it]? |
| *7. <u>Musin nal</u> imnikka? | What date }
What day } is [it]? |
| 8. <u>ænce</u> imnikka? | When will it be? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Onil i myæchil ici yo? | What's the date today? |
| 2. <u>Næil</u> (i) myæchil ici yo? | What's the date tomorrow? |
| 3. <u>Mole</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo? | What's the date the day after tomorrow? |
| 4. <u>Kilphi</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo? | What's the date two days after tomorrow? |
| 5. <u>æce</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo? | What was the date yesterday? |
| 6. <u>Kicække</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo? | What was the date the day before yesterday? |
| 7. <u>Ki cæn nal</u> (i) myæchil ici yo? | What was the date the day before that? |
| 8. <u>Næil</u> (i) myæchil ici yo? | What is the date tomorrow? |
| 9. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin yoil</u> ici yo? | What day (of the week) is it tomorrow? |
| 10. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> ici yo? | What day is it tomorrow? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Onil in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Wednesday. |
| *2. Onil in <u>Welyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Monday. |
| *3. Onil in <u>Hwayoil</u> imnita. | Today is Tuesday. |
| *4. Onil in <u>Mokyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Thursday. |
| *5. Onil in <u>Kimyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Friday. |
| *6. Onil in <u>Thoyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Saturday. |
| *7. Onil in <u>Ilyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Sunday. |
| 8. Onil in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Wednesday. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Cikim</u> i <u>myeoch-si</u> imnikka? | What time is it now? |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> (i) <u>myeochil</u> imnikka? | What date is it today? |
| *3. <u>Kimnyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year is it this year? |
| *4. <u>I hae</u> (ka) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year is it this year? |
| 5. <u>aece</u> (ka) <u>musin yoil</u> imnikka? | What day of the week was yesterday? |
| 6. <u>I tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month is this month? |
| *7. <u>Cinan tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month was last month? |
| 8. <u>Naeil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> imnikka? | What day is tomorrow? |
| 9. <u>once</u> (ka) <u>Suyoil</u> imnikka? | When is Wednesday? |
| *10. <u>Cangnyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year was last year? |
| 11. <u>I cuil</u> (i) <u>eni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week (of the month) is this week? |
| *12. <u>Naenyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year is next year? |
| *13. <u>Taim hae</u> (ka) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year is next year? |
| *14. <u>Taim tal</u> (i) <u>eni tal</u> imnikka? | What month is next month? |
| *15. <u>Taim cuil</u> (i) <u>eni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week of the month is next week? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Onil in Il-wel il il imnita. | Today is January first. |
| 2. Onil in <u>I-wel i il</u> imnita. | Today is February second. |
| 3. Onil in <u>Sam-wel sam il</u> imnita. | Today is March third. |
| 4. Onil in <u>Sa-wel sa il</u> imnita. | Today is April fourth. |
| 5. Onil in <u>O-wel o il</u> imnita. | Today is May fifth. |
| 6. Onil in <u>Yu-wel yuk il</u> imnita. | Today is June sixth. |
| 7. Onil in <u>Chil-wel chil il</u> imnita. | Today is July seventh. |
| 8. Onil in <u>Phal-wel phal il</u> imnita. | Today is August eight. |
| 9. Onil in <u>Ku-wel ku il</u> imnita. | Today is September ninth. |
| 10. Onil in <u>Si-wel sip il</u> imnita. | Today is October tenth. |
| 11. Onil in <u>Sipil-wel sip-il il</u> imnita. | Today is November eleventh. |
| 12. Onil in <u>Sipil-wel sip-i il</u> imnita. | Today is December twelveth. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cikim in yetelp-si imnita. | It is 8 o'clock now. |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> (in) <u>Welyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Monday. |
| 3. <u>Næil</u> (in) <u>Hwayoil</u> imnita. | Tomorrow is Tuesday. |
| 4. <u>Mole</u> (nin) <u>Suyoil</u> imnita. | The day after tomorrow is Wednesday. |
| 5. <u>Cikim</u> (in) <u>Sam-wel</u> imnita. | Now it's March. |
| 6. <u>æce</u> (nin) <u>Ilyoil</u> imnita. | Yesterday was Sunday. |
| 7. <u>Kicække</u> (nin) <u>isip il</u> imnita. | The day before yesterday was the 20th. |
| 8. <u>Kilphi</u> (nin) <u>I-wel il il</u> imnita. | Two days after tomorrow is February first. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What time do you start work?
('What time does your work begin?') |
| 2. <u>Myæchil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What date will you start work? |
| 3. <u>Musin yoil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What day (of the week) will you start work? |
| 4. <u>æni cuil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | Which week (of the month) will you start work? |
| 5. <u>Musin tal</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What month will you start work? |
| 6. <u>Musin nal</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What day will you start work? |

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 7. <u>ence</u> il i sicak-hamnikka? | When will you start work? |
| 8. <u>ence</u> <u>hakkyo</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When does school start? |
| 9. <u>ence</u> <u>kongpu</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When will your studies begin? |
| 10. <u>ence</u> <u>hyuka</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When does your vacation begin? |
| *11. <u>ence</u> <u>samu</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When is your office going to open? |
| *12. <u>ence</u> <u>panghak</u> (i) sicak-hamnikka? | When does (school) vacation begin? |
| *13. <u>ence</u> <u>suæp</u> (i) sicak-hamnikka? | When does the class begin? |
| *14. <u>ence</u> <u>suæp</u> (i) <u>kkith-namnikka</u> ? | When does the class end? |
| *15. <u>ence</u> <u>suæp</u> (i) <u>kkith-nassimnikka</u> ? | When was the class over? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Yætæl-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 8 o'clock. |
| 2. <u>Phal pun</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins in 8 minutes. |
| 3. <u>Phal il</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins on the 8th. |
| 4. <u>Phal-wæl</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins in August. |
| 5. <u>Yætæl(p)-si pan</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 8:30. |
| 6. <u>Achim ilkop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 7 in the morning. |
| 7. <u>Cenyæk yæsæs-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 6 in the evening. |
| 8. <u>Ohu tasæs-si pan</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 5:30 in the afternoon. |
| 9. <u>Suyoil pam ahop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 9 o'clock in Wednesday night. |
| 10. <u>Tasæs-si sip pun cæn</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 10 minutes to 5 o'clock. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. K1 salam in il-halæ kassimnita. | He went to work. |
| 2. K1 salam in <u>Kongpu-halæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to study. |
| 3. K1 salam in <u>chæk (il) salæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to buy a book. |
| 4. K1 salam in <u>Hankuk mal (il)</u> <u>pæulæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to learn Korean. |
| 5. K1 salam in <u>chinku (il) mannalæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to meet a friend. |
| 6. K1 salam in <u>il (il) chacilæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to find a job. |

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 7. K1 salam in <u>kil (il) mulə polə</u>
kassimnita. | He went to ask directions. |
| 8. K1 salam in <u>chæk (il) ilkilə</u>
kassimnita. | He went to read books. |
| 9. K1 salam in <u>hyuka (il) patilə</u>
kassimnita. | He's gone to ask for a vacation. |
| 10. K1 salam in <u>Yəngə (il) kalichilə</u>
kassimnita. | He went to teach English. |
| 11. K1 salam in Yəngə (il) kalichilə
<u>wassimnita.</u> | He came to teach English. |
| 12. K1 salam in Yəngə (il) kalichilə
<u>omnita.</u> | He comes to teach English. |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. I cuil e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked this week. |
| 2. <u>I tal</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked this month. |
| 3. <u>Cinan tal</u> e il-hæssimnita. | We worked last month. |
| 4. <u>Cinan cuil</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked last week. |
| 5. <u>Cinan hæ</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked last year. |
| 6. <u>Cinan Suyoil</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked last Wednesday. |
| 7. <u>Onil achim</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked this morning. |
| 8. <u>Onil cənyək</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked this evening. |
| 9. <u>Onil pam</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked tonight. |
| 10. <u>Onil ohu</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked this afternoon. |
| 11. <u>əce pam</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked last night. |
| 12. <u>əce nac</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked yesterday at noontime. |

K. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. ənce Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka? | When did [you] study Korean? |
| *2. <u>Nuka</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka? | Who studied Korean? |
| 3. <u>ətɪ esə</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka? | Where did [you] study Korean? |
| *4. <u>Wə</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka? | Why did [you] study Korean? |
| 5. <u>Myəch salam 1</u> Hankuk mal il
pəwæssimnikka? | How many people studied Korean? |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. <u>elma e</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How much did you pay for studying Korean? |
| 7. <u>ettæhkhe</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How did you study Korean? |
| *8. <u>Nuku wa</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | With whom did you study Korean? |
| *9. <u>elma tongan</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How long did you study Korean? |
| *10. <u>Myæchil tongan</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How many days have you studied Korean? |
| *11. <u>Myæch sikan tongan</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How many hours have you studied Korean? |
| *12. <u>Myæch cuil tongan</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How many weeks have you studied Korean? |
| *13. <u>Myæch tal tongan</u> Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? | How many months have you studied Korean? |

L. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Sahil tongan</u> cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed ('rested') at home for three days. |
| 2. <u>Se sikan</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three hours. |
| 3. <u>Sam pun</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three minutes. |
| 4. <u>Se cuil</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three weeks. |
| 5. <u>Sam cuil</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three weeks. |
| *6. <u>Sæk cuil</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three weeks. |
| *7. <u>Sæk tal</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three months. |
| 8. <u>Sam nyæn</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three years. |
| 9. <u>Yæle nal</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for several days. |
| 10. <u>Se sikan pan</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three hours and a half. |
| 11. <u>Se cuil pan</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three weeks and a half. |
| 12. <u>Sæk tal pan</u> tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. | I stayed at home for three months and a half. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 13. <u>Ne cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə
swiəssimnita. | I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half. |
| 14. <u>Sa cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə
swiəssimnita. | I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half. |
| *15. <u>Nək cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə
swiəssimnita. | I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half. |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| *1. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>halu</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was (<u>or</u> stayed) in Seoul for one
day. |
| *2. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ithil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for two days. |
| 3. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>sahil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for three days. |
| *4. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>nahil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for four days. |
| *5. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>tassə</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for five days. |
| *6. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yəssə</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for six days. |
| *7. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ile</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for seven days. |
| *8. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yətile</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for eight days. |
| *9. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ahile</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for nine days. |
| *10. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yəlhil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for ten days. |
| *11. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yəl-halu</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | I was in Seoul for eleven days. |
| *12. (Cə nin) Səul e yəl-halu tongan
<u>məmuləssimnita.</u> | I stayed in Seoul for eleven days. |

N. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Səul e halu tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Seoul for one day. |
| 2. <u>Washington</u> e <u>ithil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Washington for two days. |
| 3. <u>Ilpon</u> e <u>sahil</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Japan for three days. |
| 4. <u>Pusan</u> e <u>nahil</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Pusan for four days. |
| 5. <u>Inchən</u> e <u>tassə</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Inchon for five days. |
| 6. <u>Mikuk</u> e <u>yəssə</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in America for six days. |
| 7. <u>Cungkuk</u> e <u>ile</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in China for seven days. |
| 8. <u>Yengkuk</u> e <u>yətile</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in England for eight days. |
| 9. <u>Nam-Han</u> e <u>ahile</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in South-Korea for nine days. |
| 10. <u>Puk-Han</u> e <u>yelhil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in North-Korean for ten days. |
| 11. <u>Nyuyok</u> e <u>yel-halu</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in New York for eleven days. |
| 12. <u>Tokil</u> e <u>yel-sahil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Germany for thirteen days. |
| 13. <u>Pullansə</u> e <u>yel-tassə</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in France for fifteen days. |
| 14. <u>Ssolyen</u> e <u>yel-ile</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in the Soviet Union for seventeen days. |
| *15. <u>Kulapha</u> e <u>yel-ahile</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Europe for nineteen days. |
| *16. <u>Nammi</u> e <u>simu nal</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in South America for twenty days. |
| *17. <u>Ithəli</u> e <u>simu-halu</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Italy for twenty-one days. |
| *18. <u>Wellam</u> e <u>simu-ithil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Vietnam for twenty-two days. |
| *19. <u>Thækuk</u> e <u>simu-sahil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Thailand for twenty-three days. |
| *20. <u>Hwalan</u> e <u>simu-nahil</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Holland for twenty-four days. |
| *21. <u>Hocu</u> e <u>simu-tassə</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Australia for twenty-five days. |
| *22. <u>Into</u> e <u>simu-yəssə</u> tongan
issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in India for twenty-six days. |
| *23. <u>Təman</u> e <u>simu-ile</u> tongan issəssimnita. | [I] stayed in Taiwan for twenty-seven days. |

0. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tutor: Cikim myæch-si imnikka?
/yæl-si pan/ | 'What time is it now?' /10:30/ |
| Student: Yæl-si pan imnita. | '[It]'s 10:30.' |
| 1. Onil i myæchil imnikka? /O il/ | O il imnita. |
| 2. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?
/ahop-si/ | Ahop si e sicak-hamnita. |
| 3. æce ka musin yoil iæssimnikka?
/Mokyoil/ | Mokyoil iæssimnita. |
| 4. ænce hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka?
/ohu tasæs-si/ | Ohu tasæs-si e kkith-namnita. |
| 5. Myæch sikan tongan il (il) hamnikka?
/yætæl(p) sikan/ | Yætæl(p) sikan tongan il hamnita. |
| 6. Sænsæng in musin yoil e sicang e
kamnikka? /Thoyoil/ | Thoyoil e sicang e kamnita. |
| 7. ælma tongan Hankuk mal il
pæwæssimnikka? /tu tal/ | Tu tal tongan (Hankuk mal il)
pæwæssimnita. |
| 8. Myæch salam i Hankuk mal il mal-
hamnikka? /yælæ salam/ | Yælæ salam i mal-hamnita. |
| 9. Onil in myæch-si e cip e kamnikka?
/ohu ne-si/ | Ohu ne-si e (cip e) kamnita. |
| 10. æni tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka
sicak-hæssimnikka? /Chil-wæl/ | Chil-wæl e sicak-hæssimnita. |
| 11. ænce hyuka lil patkessimnikka?
/taim tal/ | Taim tal e (hyuka lil) patkessimnita. |
| 12. Onil cænyæk e nuku lil
mannakessimnikka? /chinku/ | Chinku lil mannakessimnita. |

P. Response Exercise (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech based on reality.)

Tutor: Yocim muəs hase yo?

'What are you doing these days?'

Student: Təsakwan esə il-hæ yo.

'I'm working at the Embassy.'

1. Onil i myechil iye yo?
2. əce ka musin yoil iyəsə yo?
3. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-həsə yo?
4. Halu e myech sikan Hankuk mal il pəuse yo?
5. Sənsəng in əlma toŋan təsakwan esə il-həsə yo?
6. Musin yoil e təkə sicang e kase yo?
7. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichye yo?
8. Haksəng i myech salam isə yo?
9. Sənsəng e yangpok əlma e sassə yo?
10. əlma tongan Hankuk e issəsə yo?
11. Myech-si e samusil e tillikəsə yo?

Q. Grammar Drill (Change the sentence ending -(i)mnikka? to -ci yo?)

Tutor: Onil i myechil imnikka?

'What's the date today?'

Student: Onil i myechil ici yo?

'What's the date today?'

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Muəs il cohahamnikka? | Muəs il cohahaci yo? |
| 2. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichimnikka? | Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichici yo? |
| 3. ənce hakkyo ka sicak-hamnikka? | ənce hakkyo ka sicak-haci yo? |
| 4. Myech-si e il i kkith-namnikka? | Myech-si e il i kkith-naci yo? |
| 5. əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phamnikka? | əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phalci yo? |
| 6. K1 kutu, əlma e sassimnikka? | K1 kutu, əlma e sassci yo? |
| 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? | əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssci yo? |
| 8. əce ka musin yoil iəssimnikka? | əce ka musin yoil iəssci yo? |
| 9. Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassimnikka? | Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassci yo? |
| 10. Tangsin in musin nala e kamnikka? | Tangsin in musin nala e kaci yo? |

R. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yətəl(p)-sɪ e ɪl ɪ sɪak-hamnita. '[I] start work at 8 o'clock.' ('The work begins at eight o'clock.')

Student: Yətəl(p)-sɪ e ɪl ɪ sɪak-haci yo? 'You start work at 8 o'clock, don't you?' ('The work begins at 8, doesn't it?')

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Tasəs-sɪ e cip e kamnita. | Tasəs-sɪ e cip kaci yo? |
| 2. Təsakwan ɪ məmnita. | Təsakwan ɪ məlci yo? |
| 3. Mom ɪ aphɪmnita. | Mom ɪ aphici yo? |
| 4. Yətəl(p) sikan ɪl ɪl hamnita. | Yətəl(p) sikan ɪl ɪl haci yo? |
| 5. Onɪl ɪ Sam-wəl ɪl ɪl ɪmnita. | Onɪl ɪ Sam-wəl ɪl ɪl ɪci yo? |
| 6. Kɪləhsɪmnita. | Kɪləhci yo? |
| 7. Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ ɪl asɪmnita. | Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ ɪl asici yo? |
| 8. Pak Sənsəŋ ɪl molɪsɪmnita. | Pak Sənsəŋ ɪl molɪsici yo? |
| 9. Taim tal e hyuka ɪlɪl patsɪmnita. | Taim tal e hyuka ɪlɪl patci yo? |
| 10. Yəki esə son-sukən ɪl phamnita. | Yəki esə son-sukən ɪl phalci yo? |
| 11. Chæk kaps ɪ pissamnita. | Chæk kaps ɪ pissaci yo? |
| 12. Kɪ ɪca ka kwəŋchanhsɪmnita. | Kɪ ɪca ka kwəŋchanhci yo? |
| 13. Kim Sənsəŋ e samusɪl e tɪllɪmnita. | Kim Sənsəŋ e samusɪl e tɪllɪci yo? |
| 14. Kkaman sək ɪl cohahamnita. | Kkaman sək ɪl cohahaci yo? |

S. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor. Na nɪn hakkyo e kamnita. Kongpu-hamnita. 'I['m] go[ing] to school.' 'I['m] study[ing].'

Student. Na nɪn hakkyo e kongpu-halə kamnita. 'I['m] go[ing] (to school) to study.'

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Na nɪn samusɪl e kamnita. ɪl-hamnita. | Na nɪn (samusɪl e) ɪl-halə kamnita. |
| 2. Na nɪn pəkhwacəm e kamnita. Chæk ɪl samnita. | Na nɪn (pəkhwacəm e) chæk ɪl salə kamnita. |
| 3. Na nɪn kyosɪl e kamnita. Chæk ɪl ɪlksɪmnita. | Na nɪn (kyosɪl e) chæk ɪl ɪlkɪlə kamnita. |
| 4. Na nɪn cəŋkəcang e kamnita. Chɪŋku Chɪŋku ɪlɪl mannamnita. | Na nɪn (cəŋkəcang e) chɪŋku ɪlɪl mannalə kamnita. |
| 5. Na nɪn hakkyo e kamnita. Hankuk mal ɪl pəumnita. | Na nɪn (hakkyo e) Hankuk mal ɪl pəulə kamnita. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. Na nin cikim cip e kamnita.
Swimnita. | Na nin cikim cip e swilə kamnita. |
| 7. Na nin sinə e kamnita. Chinku e
samusil e tillimnita. | Na nin (sinə e) chinku e samusil e
tillilə kamnita. |
| 8. Na nin tapang e kamnita. Cha lil
masimnita. | Na nin (tapang e) cha lil masilə
kamnita. |

T. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on reality.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cikim myəch-si imnikka? | 'What time is it?' |
| 2. Onil i myəchil imnikka? | 'What's the day today?' |
| 3. Cikim in musin tal imnikka? | 'What month is it (now)?' |
| 4. Onil i musin yoil imnikka? | 'What day of the week is it today?' |
| 5. Myəch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka? | 'What time do you start working?' |
| 6. Myəch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka? | 'What time does the school end?' |
| 7. ənce Hankuk e kasimnikka? | 'When are you going to Korea?' |
| 8. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il
pəwəssimnikka? | 'How long have you studied Korean?' |
| 9. Musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka? | 'What (week)day do you go to the market?' |
| 10. Halu e myəch sikan tongan il-
hamnikka? | 'How many hours a day do you work?' |
| 11. əlma tongan Hankuk e kyesyəssimnikka? | 'How long have you been in Korea?' |
| 12. Myəch tal tongan Səul e
isskessimnikka? | 'How many months will you stay in
Korea?' |
| 13. Myəch nyen tongan Səul e
isskessimnikka? | 'How many years will you stay in
Seoul?' |

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 6. Ce nin pelsse məkəsse yo.
Ne, kiləhsimnita. | Pəlsse məkəssimnikka? |
| 7. Onil i Kimyoil iye yo.
Ne, kiləhsimnita. | Pəlsse Kimyoil imnikka? |
| 8. Hakkyo ka kkith-nasse yo.
Ne, kiləhsimnita. | Pəlsse kkith-nassimnikka? |

W. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Tutor: Hakkyo ka pəlsse sicak-həssimnikka? | 'Has the school already started?' |
| Student: Aniyo, acik sicak-haci anhəssimnita. | 'No, it hasn't started yet.' |
| 1. Ppesi ka pəlsse ttənassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik ttənaci anhəssimnita. |
| 2. I tal i pəlsse Sa-wəl imnikka? | Aniyo, acik Sa-wəl i an imnita. |
| 3. Pihəngki ka pəlsse tahassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik tahci anhəssimnita. |
| 4. Pəlsse məkəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik məkci anhəssimnita. |
| 5. Achim sinmun il pəlsse ilkəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik ilkei anhəssimnita. |
| 6. Hyuka lil pəlsse patəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik patci anhəssimnita. |
| 7. Hankuk mal səsəng il pəlsse mannassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik mannaci anhəssimnita. |
| 8. Catongcha lil pəlsse sassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik saci anhəssimnita. |
| 9. Ki chək il Ceimsi eke cuəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik cuci anhəssimnita. |
| 10. Ki yenphil il Kim Səsəng eke tiliəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik tilici anhəssimnita. |

EXERCISES

1. Pak Sənsəŋ has asked what time it is. Give the following answers.
 - a. It's 8 o'clock.
 - b. It's 8:25.
 - c. It's 5 after 9.
 - d. It's 7:35.
 - e. It's 20 before 10.
 - f. It's a quarter to three.
 - g. It's about 2:30.
 - h. It's 6:28 in the morning.
 - i. It's 4 in the afternoon.
 - j. It's 7:43 in the evening.
 - k. It's 2 minutes after 10 at night.
2. Using a paper clock, practice asking and answering questions on time.
3. Using a calendar, practice asking and answering questions pertaining to dates, months and days of the week.
4. Ask Kim Sənsəŋ the following questions:
 1. What time it is now.
 2. What date it is today.
 3. What day of the week it is today.
 4. What year this is.
 5. What year last year was.
 6. What month last month was.
 7. What month next month will be.
 8. What year next year will be.
 9. What month this month is.
 10. What day tomorrow will be.
 11. What time he starts working in the morning.
 12. How many hours he works a day.
 13. How long he has been in America.
 14. How long he has taught Korean.
 15. How many days a week he comes to school.
 16. How many weeks the students have studied Korean.
 17. How many months the students will be in Washington.
 18. How many years he has lived in Washington.

5. Instructor says that he bought things at the following prices; the student repeats after the instructor with the book closed.

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1. W 56 | 16. W 813 |
| 2. W 72 | 17. W1,390 |
| 3. W 69 | 18. W2,917 |
| 4. W 91 | 19. W3,027 |
| 5. W 35 | 20. W4,014 |
| 6. W 98 | 21. W7,878 |
| 7. W 79 | 22. W3,427 |
| 8. W126 | 23. W4,592 |
| 9. W254 | 24. W4,760 |
| 10. W348 | 25. W8,352 |
| 11. W473 | 26. W7,265 |
| 12. W627 | 27. W6,327 |
| 13. W565 | 28. W5,279 |
| 14. W758 | 29. W9,822 |
| 15. W893 | 30. W6,789 |

제 7 과 시간(계속)

오셨습니까

1. 박 : 제임스 선생, 언제 한국에 오셨습니까?

이 년, 두 해

전에

이 년 전에, 두 해 전에

2. 제임스 : 이 년 전에 왔습니다.

그 전

그 전에는

무슨 일

3. 박 : 아, 그러세요? 그 전에는 무슨 일을
했습니까?

그 전에도

외교관으로

4. 제임스 : 그 전에도 외교관으로 있었습니다.

이번

처음

5. 박 : 이번이 한국에 처음인가요?

두 번

두 번째

왔습니다

UNIT 7. Time (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Park

- osiæssimnikka
 1. Ceimsi Sænsæng, ænce Hankuk e
 osiæssimnikka?

did [you] come?

When did you come to Korea, Mr.
 James?

James

- tu hæ }
 i nyæn }
 cæn e
 i nyæn } cæn e
 tu hæ }
 2. I nyæn cæn e wassimnita.

two years

before; previously; ago

two years ago

(I came) two years ago.

Park

- k1 cæn
 k1 cæn e nin
 musin il
 3. A kilæse yo? K1 cæn e nin musin
 il il hæssimnikka?

before that; the previous time

before then

what kind of job

(Oh, is that so?) What did you do
 before that? ('What kind of work
 did you do before then?')

James

- k1 cæn e to
 wekyokwan ilo
 4. K1 cæn e to wekyokwan ilo
 issæssimnita.

before that time also

as a diplomat

I was in the foreign service before,
 too. ('I exitised as a diplomat
 before that time, too.')

Park

- i pæn
 chæim
 5. I pæn i Hankuk e chæim in ka yo?

this time

first; the first time

Is the [your] first time in Korea?

6. 제임스 : 아니지요. 이번이 두 번 재입니다.
전에도 왔었습니다.

그 때

그 때에

무엇하러

7. 박 : 그 때에는 무엇하러 왔었어요?

천 구 백 오십 일 년

군 대

8. 제임스 : 그 때는 천 구 백 오십 일 년이었습니다.
나는 그 때에 군 대에 있었습니다.

언제 즈음

돌아 가세요

9. 박 : 언제 즈음 미국에 돌아 가세요?

후 에

한 달 후 에

떠나려고 합니다

10. 제임스 : 한 달 후 에 떠나려고 합니다.

무엇으로

11. 박 : 무엇으로 가시겠어요?

배

배로

가까 합니다

James

tu pən

twice

tu pən ccæ

the second time; for the second time

wassæssimnita

[I] came; [I] had come

6. An ici yo. I pən i tu pən ccæ
imnita. Cən e to wassæssimnita.

No, this is my second time. I've
been here before. ('I came before,
too.')

Park

kɪ ttæ

that time

kɪ ttæ e

at that time

muəs hale

to do what?; what for?

7. Kɪ ttæ e nɪn muəs hale wassæssə
yo?

What were you doing here then?
('What for did you come at that
time?')

James

çən-kupæk-osip-il nyən

the year 1951

kuntæ

military

8. Kɪ ttæ nɪn çən-kupæk-osip-il
nyən iyæssimnita. Na nɪn kɪ
ttæ e kuntæ e issæssimnita.

That was 1951. I was in the service.
('I was in the military at that
time.')

Park

ənce ccɪm

about when

tola kase yo

do [you] go back?

9. ənce ccɪm Mikuk e tola kase yo?

When are [you] going back to America?

James

hu e

later; afterward

han tal hu e

one month later

ttənalyəko hamnita

[I]'m going to leave

10. Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in a month (from
now.)

Park

muəs ilo

by what means

11. Muəs ilo kasikesse yo?

How are you going? ('By what means
will you go?')

12. 제임스 : 이번에는 배로 갑니까 합니다.

지난 번

비행기

13. 박 : 지난 번에 비행기로 왔어요?

했습니다

14. 제임스 : 예, 비행기를 했습니다.

한국 에서

미국 까지

얼마나

걸립니까

15. 박 : 한국 에서 미국 까지 (시간이) 얼마나
걸립니까?

스무 날

쉬는 시간 쯤

16. 제임스 : 배로는 대개 스무 날 걸립니다. 그리고,
비행기로는 쉬는 시간 쯤 걸립니다.

James

- pæ
pæ lo
kal kka hamnita
12. I pæn e nin, pæ lo kal kka
hamnita.
- ship; boat
by boat; by ship
[I]'m thinking of going;
('[I] intend to go')
This time, I'm (thinking of) going
by boat.

Park

- cinan pæn
pihængki
13. Cinan pæn e pihængki lo wassæ
yo?
- last time
airplane
Did you come by air (last time)?

James

- thassimnita
14. Ne, pihængki lil thassimnita.
- [I] rode; [I] got on; [I] took
Yes, I flew. ('I got on airplane, ')

Park

- Hankuk esæ
Mikuk kkaci
elma na
kellimnikka
15. Hankuk esæ Mikuk kkaci (sikan i)
elma na kellimnikka?
- from Korea
as far as America; to America
how long; how much
does it take?
How long does it take to get to
America (from Korea)?

James

- simu nal
selhin sikan ccim
16. Pæ lo nin ~~tæka~~ simu nal kellimnita.
Kiliko, pihængki lo nin selhin
sikan ccim kellimnita.
- twenty days
about thirty hours
It usually takes 20 days by boat and
(about) 30 hours by plane.

NUMERAL PHRASES

(a) 한 번

두 번

세 번

네 번

다섯 번

여섯 번

일곱 번

여덟 번

아홉 번

열 번

(b) 첫 번째

둘 번째

셋 번째

넷 번째

다섯 번째

여섯 번째

일곱 번째

여덟 번째

아홉 번째

열 번째

(c) 처음 - 첫 번째

두 번째

세 번째

네 번째

다섯 번째

여섯 번째

일곱 번째

아홉 번째

열 번째

(d) 이 배 - 두 배

삼 배 - 세 배

사 배 - 네 배

오 배 - 다섯 배

육 배 - 여섯 배

칠 배 - 일곱 배

팔 배 - 여덟 배

구 배 - 아홉 배

십 배 - 열 배

NUMERAL PHRASES

(a)

han pən	'once'
tu pən	'twice'
se pən	'three times'
ne pən	'four times'
tasəs pən	'five times'
yəsəs pən	'six times'
ilkop pən	'seven times'
yətəlp pən	'eight times'
ahop pən	'nine times'
yəl pən	'ten times'

(b)

chə(s) ccə	{ 'first' 'the first'
tu(l) ccə	{ 'second' 'the second'
se(s) ccə	{ 'third' 'the third'
ne(s) ccə	{ 'fourth' 'the fourth'
tasəs ccə	{ 'fifth' 'the fifth'
yəsəs ccə	{ 'sixth' 'the sixth'
ilkop ccə	{ 'seventh' 'the seventh'
yətəl(p) ccə	{ 'eighth' 'the eighth'
ahop ccə	{ 'ninth' 'the ninth'
yəl ccə	{ 'tenth' 'the tenth'

(c)

chəlm chəs pən ccə }	'the first time'
tu pən	{ 'the second time 'the second'
se pən ccə	{ 'the third time 'the third'
ne pən ccə	{ 'the fourth time 'the fourth'
tasəs pən ccə	{ 'the fifth time 'the fifth'
yəsəs pən ccə	{ 'the sixth time 'the sixth'
ilkop pən ccə	{ 'the seventh time 'the seventh'
yətəlp pən ccə	{ 'the eighth time 'the eighth'
ahop pən ccə	{ 'the ninth time 'the ninth'
yəl pən ccə	{ 'the tenth time' 'the tenth'

(d)

i pə }	'two times'
tu pə }	'twice'
sa pə }	'three times'
se pə }	
sa pə }	'four times'
ne pə }	
o pə }	'five times'
tasəs pə }	
yuk pə }	'six times'
yəsəs pə }	
chil pə }	'seven times'
ilkop pə }	
phal pə }	'eight times'
yətəlp pə }	
ku pə }	'nine times'
ahop pə }	
sip pə }	'ten times'
yəl pə }	

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Cən e without preceding any time expression means 'previously' or 'before'; point in time + cən e means 'before the point in time'; period of time + cən e means 'period of time ago'. Compare:
 - a. Kim Sənsəng in cən e ttənnassimnita. 'Mr. Kim has left previously.'
 - b. İl-wəl cən e ttənnassimnita. 'He left before January.'
 - c. Han tal cən e ttənnassimnita. 'He left one month ago.'
3. Kı cən e (nɪn) 'before then', 'before that time', is an adverbial phrase which denotes 'the time previous to the mentioned one'.
10. Hu e not preceded by any time expression means 'later'; point in time + hu e means 'after + the point in time'; period of time + hu e means 'period of time later'. Compare:
 - a. Hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet later'.
 - b. Han-si hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet after 1 o'clock.'
 - c. Han sikan hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet one hour from now.'
11. Muəs ilo ('by what') refers to a means of transportation.
14. The verb stem tha- is a transitive verb which means 'to ride', 'to mount', 'to get on', 'to take (vehicle)'. Compare it with thəu- 'to give a ride (to someone)'. The antonym of tha- is nəli- 'to get off', 'to descend'.
15. The adverbial question phrase əlma na 'how long?', 'how much', 'how?', occurs before description verbs, noun modifiers or other adverbs. The intransitive verb stem kəlli-, preceded by a time expression means 'to take' or 'to require'. Example:

Han sikan kəllimnita. 'It takes an hour.'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Numeral Phrases

In Unit 7 we have 4 series of numeral phrases: (a) han pen 'once', tu pen 'twice', se pen 'three times'...; (b) ches ccæ 'first' or 'the first', tu(1) ccæ 'second' or 'the second', se(s) ccæ 'third' or 'the third'...; (c) chælm or ches pen ccæ 'the first time' or 'first', tu pen ccæ 'the second time' or 'second'...; (d) i pæ or tu pæ 'two times' or 'twice', sam pæ or se pæ 'three times', sa pæ or ne pæ 'four times'..., etc.

The numerals of series (a) occur as adverbial phrases and are used to denote the frequency of action of the subsequent inflected expressions; the numerals of series (b) occur before other nominals or by themselves and denote order within a sequence; the numerals of series (c) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote order within a sequence of occurrences or points of time; the numerals of series (d) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote multiplication in quantity, quality, size or degree of the subsequent inflected expressions. Examples are provided in drills.

2. Particle lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity', 'by means of'

In Unit 2 we noticed that the particle lo/ilo after a place name indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo/ilo occurring after other types of nominals denotes that the nominal is a capacity or means of subject or topic of the sentence. Examples:

a. Title names + lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity of'

sensæng ilo	'as a teacher'
tæsa lo	'as an ambassador'
kongpokwan ilo	'an as information officer'

b. Transportation names + lo/ilo 'by means of'

ppæsi lo	'by bus'
kicha lo	'by train'
catongcha lo	'by automobile'
pihængki lo	'by airplane'
hæpsing ilo	'by jitney'
cæncha lo	'by streetcar'

Other nominal + lo/ilo 'in', 'by', 'with'

Yenge lo	'in English'
inkhi lo	'in ink'
yenphil lo	'with pencil'
ton ilo	'with money'
hyenkim ilo	'in cash'

3. -n/in/nin ka yo?

The construction -n/in/nin ka yo? occurs only as the final form of a question sentence. This construction is a kind of informal polite speech which can be substituted for previously learned Formal or Informal Polite Speech question forms. -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -n is added to a description verb stem ending in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem ending in a consonant; -nin to an action verb stem. (For the selection of -n, -in or -nin, see the rules for the formation of present noun-modifier ending, Unit 5.) Compare:

Ce yeca ka yeppin ka yo?	} 'Is that woman pretty?'
Ce yeca ka yeppimnikka?	
Ce yeca ka yeppe yo?	

4. -(1)lyeko

The verb ending -(1)lyeko is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus the honorific suffix -(1)si-. Tense suffixes do not occur before the -(1)lyeko ending. The inflected form ending in -(1)lyeko (or simply the -(1)lyeko form) occurs in two constructions:

(a) -(1)lyeko + ha- 'be going to-', 'intend to-'

The construction -(1)lyeko immediately followed by the verb ha- indicates that the subject or topic of the sentence intends a future action. Examples:

Hankuk e kalyeko hamnita.	{ '[I] intend to go to Korea.'
	{ '[I] 'm going to go to Korea.'
Yenge lil kalichilyeko haessimnita.	{ '[I] was going to teach English.'
	{ '[I] intended to teach English.'
Kim Sensang in naeil ttanallyeko hamnikka?	'Is Mr. Kim going to leave tomorrow?'

(b) -(1)lyəko + other than ha-

In the above construction, the -(1)lyəko form which may be followed by a pause denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(1)lyəko form. Compare this construction with the -(1)lə form (Unit 6, G.N. 3). Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko, Hankuk mal	'In order to go to Korea, [I]
il pæwə yo.	am studying Korean.'
Chæk il salyeko, sinæ chækpang	'[I] stopped by a bookstore
e tillessimnita.	downtown to buy books.'

5. -(1)l kka ha-

In Unit 3, we had the construction -(1)l kka yo? as a sentence final question form. The construction -(1)l kka immediately followed by ha- without a pause occurs in a statement sentence and denotes the speaker's intention for future action of the verb in the -(1)l form. The English equivalent for -(1)l kka ha- is either 'be thinking of doing something' or 'intend to do something'. The tenses and/or levels of speech for the whole construction are generated in ha-. Examples:

I pən e nin pæ lo kal kka hamnita.	'This time, I'm thinking of going by boat.'
Næil kkaci Səul e issil kka hæ yo.	'I intend to stay in Seoul until tomorrow.'
Na to kɪ ttæ e ttənəl kka hæssimnita. Kiləna....	'I was thinking of leaving at that time, too, but....'

6. Particle kkaci 'to', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by'.

Kkaci occurs either after a place name or a time name:

(a) Place name + kkaci denotes the destination or goal for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Pusan kkaci kakesse yo.	'I will go as far as Pusan.'
Səul esə Inchən kkaci əlma na mələ yo?	'How far is it from Seoul to Pusan?'

(b) Time name + kkaci denotes the final limit of action for the following inflected expressions.

næil kkaci	'until tomorrow' or 'by tomorrow'
onil kkaci	'till now' or 'by now'
han-si kkaci	'by one o'clock'

7. Inflected forms and Verb Phrases

We have noticed that each inflected form of a verb is used in certain ways. For example, the verb stem ka- 'to go' is inflected in many ways by adding endings to it. So far we have had the following types of inflections built on the stem ka- 'to go'. Note that a hyphen is inserted between the stem and the ending to distinguish them:

ka-mnita	ka-nin
ka-mnikka	ka-l
ka-psita	ka-lyəko
ka-sipsiyo	ka-lə
ka-ci	ka-ko

Each Korean verb is inflected in numerous forms. Many of these inflected forms are followed by other inflected forms. Some may be followed by other classes of words, namely nouns or particles. Therefore, it is important to know how each inflected form is used, e.g. whether as a verbal or as a modifier of another class of words. In Unit 4, we were introduced to the inflected form to which the particle yo can be added to make Informal Polite Speech. Remember that this form is called the Infinitive. An Infinitive is, then, distinguished from other inflected forms because it is not a verb stem + a certain ending, but instead is formed by a certain morphophonemic change in the final sound of the verb stem.

There are some verbs which occur without pause one after another. For example, mule po-ta 'inquires', alə po-ta 'finds out', tola ka-ta 'goes back', tola o-ta 'comes back', etc. In such cases, the first verb occurs always in an infinitive form while the second verb may occur in any inflected form.

Such second verb is called the Auxiliary Verb and the first verb the Principal Verb. Any compound of principal verb + auxiliary verb is a Verb Phrase. Many of the principal verbs and auxiliary verbs that occur in verb phrases also occur independently or together with other principal or auxiliary verbs in other verb phrases, but some do not. Each verb phrase is not a simple combination of the separate meanings of its two parts: it is a compound deriving its unique indivisible meaning from both its parts. For instance, a(1)- means 'know', and po- means 'see', but alə po- means 'to find out'. Therefore, each verb phrase must be learned separately for its own unique meaning. Study the following examples:

mule po-ta	'inquires'
alə po-ta	'finds out'
məkə po-ta	'tries (eating food)'

ipe po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
na ka-ta	'goes out'
tile ka-ta	'goes in'
olla ka-ta	'goes up'
tola ka-ta	'goes back'
nælie ka-ta	'goes down'
na o-ta	'comes out'
tile o-ta	'comes in'
tola o-ta	'comes back'
olla o-ta	'comes up'
nælie o-ta	'comes down'
towa cu-ta	'gives help'
ale cu-ta	'recognizes (one's ability)'
pillie cu-ta	'loans, lends'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ənce Hankuk e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to Korea? |
| 2. ənce <u>Mikuk</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to the United States? |
| 3. ənce <u>Səul</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to Seoul? |
| 4. ənce <u>ce samusil</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to my office? |
| 5. ənce <u>yəki</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come here? |
| 6. <u>Myəch-si</u> e yəki e osiəssimnikka? | What time did you come here? |
| 7. <u>Muəs ilo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | How ('by what means') did you come here? |
| 8. <u>Musin il lo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | On what business did you come here? |
| 9. <u>Muəs hale</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | Why ('to do what') did you come here? |
| 10. <u>Nuku wa</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | With whom did you come here? |
| 11. <u>Myəch-si ccim</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | Around what time did you come here? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Il nyən cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] one year ago. |
| 2. <u>Halu</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] yeaterday ('a day ago'). |
| 3. <u>Han sikan</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] one hour ago. |
| 4. <u>Sam cuil</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] three weeks ago. |
| 5. <u>Sək tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] three months ago. |
| 6. <u>Yələ tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] several months ago. |
| * 7. <u>əlma</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some time ago. |
| * 8. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some days ago. |
| * 9. <u>Myəch tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some months ago. |
| *10. <u>Myəch nyən</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some years ago. |
| *11. <u>Myəch cuil</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some weeks ago. |
| 12. Myəch cuil cən e <u>ttenassimnita</u> . | [He] left [here] some weeks ago. |
| *13. Myəch cuil cən e <u>tahassimnita</u> . | [He] arrived [here] some weeks ago. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I nyen cən e yeki e wasse yo. | I came here two years ago. |
| 2. <u>Ithil</u> cən e <u>cip</u> e wasse yo. | I came home two days ago. |
| 3. <u>Tu sikan</u> cən e <u>samusil</u> e wasse yo. | I came to my office two hours ago. |
| 4. <u>I cuil</u> cən e <u>Səul</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Seoul two weeks ago. |
| 5. <u>Tu tal</u> cən e <u>Mikuk</u> e wasse yo. | I came to America two months ago. |
| 6. <u>Yele nal</u> cən e <u>yeki</u> e wasse yo. | I came here several days ago. |
| 7. <u>I-sip il</u> cən e <u>Pusan</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Pusan twenty days ago. |
| 8. <u>Tu hæ</u> cən e <u>Wəsington</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Washington two years ago. |
| *9. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e <u>sinæ</u> e wasse yo. | I came to town some days ago. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Cə nin wekyokwan ilo issimnita. | I am in the foreign service. ('I exist as a diplomat.') |
| 2. Cə nin <u>sənsəng</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a teacher. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>haksəng</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a student. |
| * 4. Cə nin <u>təsa</u> lo issimnita. | I am an ambassador. |
| * 5. Cə nin <u>yengsa</u> lo issimnita. | I am a consul. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>kongpokwan</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a information officer. |
| * 7. Cə nin <u>kunin</u> ilo issimnita. | I am in the military service. |
| * 8. Cə nin <u>kongmuwən</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a {civil servant.
government employee. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>cəmwən</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a store clerk. |
| *10. Cə nin <u>samuwən</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a clerk. |
| *11. Cə nin <u>pişə</u> lo issimnita. | I am a secretary. |
| *12. Cə nin pişə lo <u>il-hamnita</u> . | I work as a secretary. |
| *13. Cə <u>yəca</u> nin pişə lo il-hamnita. | She ('that woman') works as a secretary. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I nyen cən kkaci wekyokwan ilo
issəssimnita. | [I] was in the foreign service until
two years ago. |
| 2. <u>Sahl</u> cən kkaci <u>sənsəng</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a teacher until three days
ago. |
| 3. <u>Se sikan</u> cən kkaci <u>haksəng</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a student until three hours
ago. |
| 4. <u>Ne cuil</u> cən kkaci <u>kunin</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was in the military service
until 4 weeks ago. |
| 5. <u>Tasəs tal</u> cən kkaci <u>təsə</u> (lo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was an ambassador until 5 months
ago. |
| 6. <u>Sipo il</u> cən kkaci <u>yəngsa</u> (lo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a consul until 15 days ago. |
| 7. <u>Yələ hæ</u> cən kkaci <u>pise</u> (lo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a secretary until several
years ago. |
| 8. <u>əlmə</u> cən kkaci <u>kongmuwən</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a civil servant until some
time ago. |
| 9. <u>Han tal</u> cən kkaci <u>cəmwən</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was a store clerk until one month
ago. |
| 10. <u>Yəhlil</u> cən kkaci <u>wekyokwan</u> (ilo)
issəssimnita. | [I] was in the foreign service until
10 days ago. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I pən i Hankuk e chəim in ka yo? | Is this your first time in Korea? |
| 2. I pən i Hankuk e <u>tu pən ccə</u> in
ka yo? | Is this your second time in Korea? |
| 3. I pən i Hankuk e <u>se pən ccə</u> in ka
yo? | Is this your third time in Korea? |
| 4. I pən i Hankuk e <u>ne pən ccə</u> in ka
yo? | Is this your fourth time in Korea? |
| 5. I pən i Hankuk e <u>tasəs pən ccə</u> in
ka yo? | Is this your fifth time in Korea? |
| 6. I pən i Hankuk e <u>yəsəs pən ccə</u> in
ka yo? | Is this your sixth time in Korea? |
| 7. I pən i Hankuk e <u>ilkop pən ccə</u>
in ka yo? | Is this your seventh time in Korea? |

8. I pən 1 Hankuk e yətəlp pən ccæ
in ka yo?

Is this your eighth time in Korea?

9. I pən 1 Hankuk e myəch pən ccæ
in ka yo?

How many times have you been in
Korea?

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng 11 han pən mannassimnita. | [I] met Mr. Kim once. |
| 2. Pak Sənsəng 11 tu pən mannassimnita. | [I] met Mr. Pak twice. |
| 3. I Sənsəng 11 se pən mannassimnita. | [I] met Mr. Lee three times. |
| 4. Ceimsi Sənsəng 11 <u>tases pən</u>
mannassimnita. | [I] met Mr. James five times. |
| 5. Chwe Sənsəng 11 yələ pən
mannassimnita. | [I] met Mr. Choe many times. |
| 6. Ki salam 11 yələ pən <u>pwassimnita</u> . | [I] saw him many times. |
| 7. Hankuk mal 11 yələ pən
<u>kalichiəssimnita</u> . | [I] taught Korean on many occasions. |
| 8. Kil 11 yələ pən <u>mule pwassimnita</u> . | [I] inquired about street directions
many times. |
| 9. Ki 11 11 yələ pən <u>həssimnita</u> . | [I] did the work many times. |
| 10. Han-Yəng sacən 11 yələ pən
<u>wənhəssimnita</u> . | [I] wanted a K-E dictionary many
times. |
| 11. Mikuk 11 yələ pən <u>tənassimnita</u> . | [I] left America many times. |
| *12. Cha 111 yələ pən <u>phalassimnita</u> . | [I] sold cars many times. |
| *13. Catongcha 111 yələ pən <u>sassimnita</u> . | [I] bought many automobiles. |
| *14. Gungkuk 1msik 11 yələ pən
<u>məkəssimnita</u> . | [I] have eaten Chinese food many
times. |

H. Substitutuon Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. K1 ttæ e (na nin) kuntæ e
issæssimnita. | At that time I was in the military. |
| 2. <u>Han sikan cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>samusil</u>
e issæssimnita. | An hour ago I was in the office. |
| 3. <u>Sip pun cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>cip e</u>
issæssimnita. | Ten minutes ago I was at home. |
| 4. <u>Han cuil cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>Søul e</u>
issæssimnita. | One week ago I was in Seoul. |
| 5. <u>Tu(1) tal cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>Wæsingthon</u>
e issæssimnita. | Two months ago I was in Washington. |
| 6. <u>Onil achim e</u> (na nin) <u>Mikuk</u>
<u>Kongpowæn e</u> issæssimnita. | This morning I was at USIS. |
| *7. <u>æce cænæk e</u> (na nin) <u>yængsakwan</u>
e issæssimnita. | Last evening I was at the Consulate. |
| 8. <u>K1 nal pam e</u> (na nin) <u>kongwæn e</u>
issæssimnita. | That night I was in the park. |
| 9. <u>Illyoil ohu e</u> (na nin) <u>kikcang e</u>
issæssimnita. | Sunday afternoon I was at the
theatre. |
| 10. <u>K1 ttæ e</u> (na nin) <u>siktang e</u>
issæssimnita. | At that time I was at a restaurant. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Han tal hu e ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave one month from
now. |
| 2. <u>Han cuil hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave one week from
now. |
| 3. <u>Il nyæn hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave one year from
now. |
| 4. <u>Han sikan hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in an hour. |
| 5. <u>Il pun hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in a minute. |
| 6. <u>I pun hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in two minutes. |
| * 7. <u>I sam pun hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in two or three
minutes. |
| * 8. <u>I sam il hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in two or three
days. |
| * 9. <u>Sam sa il hu e</u> ttænalyeko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in three or four
days. |

*10. Sa o il hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in four or five days.

*11. I sam cuil hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in two or three weeks.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo kal kka hamnita.
2. Pæ lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 3. Ppəsɪ lo kal kka hamnita.
4. Cha lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 5. Thækssi lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 6. Kicha lo kal kka hamnita.
7. Catongcha lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 8. Cəncha lo kal kka hamnita.
9. Hapsing ilo kal kka hamnita.

I'm thinking of going by airplane.
 I'm thinking of going by ship.
 I'm thinking of going by bus.
 I'm thinking of going by car.
 I'm thinking of going by taxi.
 I'm thinking of going by train.
 I'm thinking of going by automobile.
 I'm thinking of going by streetcar.
 I'm thinking of going by jitney.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo Səul e kakessimnikka?
2. Ppəsɪ lo Inchen e kakessimnikka?
3. Cha lo Pusan e kakessimnikka?
4. Pæ lo Ilpon e kakessimnikka?
5. Pihængki lo Mikuk e kakessimnikka?
6. Kicha lo Nyuyok e kakessimnikka?
7. Catongcha lo sinæ e kakessimnikka?
8. Cəncha lo sicang e kakessimnikka?

Will you go to Seoul by airplane?
 Will you go to Incheon by bus?
 Will you go to Pusan by car?
 Will you go to Japan by ship?
 Will you go to America by airplane?
 Will you go to New York by train?
 Will you go to downtown by automobile?
 Will you go to the market place by streetcar?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk esə Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?
2. Səul esə Inchen kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?
3. Hakkyo esə cip kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?

How long does it take to go to America from Korea?
 How long does it take to go to Incheon from Seoul?
 How long does it take from school to your house?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. <u>Sinæ</u> esə <u>cəngkəcang</u> kkaci əlma na
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from downtown
to the station? |
| 5. <u>Təsakwan</u> esə <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> kkaci
əlma na kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from the
Embassy to USIS? |
| 6. <u>Cip</u> esə <u>sichəng</u> kkaci əlma na
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from your
house to the City Hall? |
| 7. <u>Samusil</u> esə <u>siktang</u> kkaci əlma
na kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from your
office to the restaurant? |
| 8. <u>Yəki</u> esə <u>kikcang</u> kkaci əlma na
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from here to
the theatre? |
| 9. <u>Uphyenkuk</u> esə <u>tapang</u> kkaci əlma
na kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from the post
office to the tearoom? |
| 10. <u>Yəki</u> esə <u>Mikuk</u> kkaci əlma na
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from here to
America. |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci əlma (na)
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take to go from
here to America? |
| 2. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəchil (ina)</u>
kəllimnikka? | How many days does it take to go
from here to America? |
| 3. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch tal</u>
(ina) kəllimnikka? | How many months does it take to go
from here to America. |
| 4. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch cuil</u>
(ina) kəllimnikka? | How many weeks does it take to go
from here to America? |
| 5. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch sikan</u>
(ina) kəllimnikka? | How many hours does it take to go
from here to America? |
| 6. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch pun</u>
(ina) kəllimnikka? | How many minutes does it take to
go from here to America? |
| 7. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>əlma (na)</u>
kəllimnikka? | How long does it take to go from
here to America? |

N. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Tutor: Na nin pihængki lo kakessimnita.

'I'll go by airplane.'

Student: Na to pihængki lo kalyeko

'I'm also planning to go by airplane.'

hæ yo.

1. Na nin næil tola kakessimnita.
2. Na nin pæ lil thakessimnita.
3. Na nin i sam il hu e ttanakessimnita.
4. Na nin Mikuk yangpok il sakessimnita.
5. Na nin han cuil tongan Sæul e
isskessimnita.
6. Na nin taim tal e tto okessimnita.
7. Na nin chinku lil mannakessimnita.
8. Na nin hyuka lil patkessimnita.
9. Na nin cha lil phalkessimnita.
10. Na nin tapang e tillikessimnita.
11. Na nin Ilyoil e swikessimnita.

- Na to næil tola kalyeko hæ yo.
Na to pæ lil thalyeko hæ yo.
Na to i sam il hu e ttanallyeko hæ yo.
Na to Mikuk yangpok il salyeko hæ yo.
Na to han cuil tongan Sæul e
issilyeko hæ yo.
Na to taim tal e tto olyeko hæ yo.
Na to chinku lil mannalyeko hæ yo.
Na to hyuka lil patilyelo hæ yo.
Na to cha lil phallyeko hæ yo.
Na to tapang e tillilyeko hæ yo.
Na to Ilyoil e swilyeko hæ yo.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: Pihængki lo kakesse yo?

'Will you go by airplane?'

Student: Ne, pihængki lo kalyeko

'Yes, I'm planning (to go) by airplane.'

hamnita.

1. Næil tola kakesse yo?
2. Pæ lil thakesse yo?
3. I sam il hu e ttanakesse yo?
4. Han tal tongan Sæul e isskesse yo?
5. Taim tal e tto okesse yo?
6. Hyuka lil patkesse yo?
7. Cha lil phalkesse yo?
8. Tapang e tillikesse yo?
9. Ilyoil e swikesse yo?
10. Cungkuk mal kongpu lil sicak-
hakesse yo?

- Ne, næil tola kalyeko hamnita.
Ne, pæ lil thalyeko hamnita.
Ne, i sam il hu e ttanallyeko hamnita.
Ne, han tal tongan (Sæul e)
issilyeko hamnita.
Ne, taim tal e tto olyeko hamnita.
Ne, hyuka lil patilyeko hamnita.
Ne, phallyeko hamnita.
Ne, tillilyeko hamnita.
Ne, swilyeko hamnita.
Ne, sicak-halyeko hamnita.

P. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

Tutor: Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hase
yo?

'Are you going to leave in a month?'

Student: Ne, han tal hu e ttənəl kka
hamnita.

'Yes, I'm thinking of leaving in a
month.'

1. I pən e nɪn pihəŋki lɪl thalyəko
hase yo?

Ne, (i pən e nɪn) pihəŋki lɪl thal
kka hamnita.

2. Cə kənmul aph esə nəlilyəko hase
yo?

Ne, cə kənmul aph esə nəlɪl kka
hamnita.

3. Nənyən e Wəsingthon e tola olyəko
hase yo?

Ne, nənyən e (Wəsingthon e) tola ol
kka hamnita.

4. Onɪl cənyək e sɪnə e na kalyəko
hase yo?

Ne, (onɪl cənyək e sɪnə e) na kal
kka hamnita.

5. Han tal hu e tola kalyəko hase yo?

Ne, han tal hu e tola kal kka
hamnita.

6. Sɪchəŋ esə alə polyəko hase yo?

Ne, sɪchəŋ esə alə pol kka hamnita.

7. Taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patilyəko
hase yo?

Ne, taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patɪl kka
hamnita.

8. Sənsəŋ ɪn catongcha lɪl phalyəko
hase yo?

Ne, (cə nɪn catongcha lɪl) phal kka
hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs ɪl sakesse yo? /kutu/

'What are you going to buy?' /shoes/

Student: Kutu lɪl salyəko hamnita.

'I'm planning to buy shoes.'

1. ənce sɪcak-hakesse yo? /han cuil
hu e/

Han cuil hu e sɪcak-halyəko hamnita.

2. Nuku lɪl mannakesse yo? /Hankuk
salam chinku/

Hankuk salam chinku lɪl mannalyəko
hamnita.

3. ənce kkaci kɪ ɪl ɪl kkɪth-nəkessə
yo? /taim cuil/

Taim cuil kkaci kkɪth-nəlyəko
hamnita.

4. əlma e sənsəŋ cha lɪl phalkessə
yo? /sam-man Wən/

Sam-man Wən e phallyəko hamnita.

5. Muəs ɪlo Hankuk e kakesse yo?
/pihəŋki/

Pihəŋki lo kalyəko hamnita.

6. ənɪ tal e hyuka lil patkessə yo?
/phal-wəl/

Phal-wəl e patilyəko hamnita.

7. əlma tongan Mikuk esə cinæksesə
yo? /i nyən ccim/

I nyən ccim Mikuk esə cinælyəko
hamnita.

('I'm going to spend about two years
in America.')

8. Taim pən e ənɪ nal il pæukessə
yo? /swiwn mal/

Swiwn mal il pæulyəko hamnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Change -(i)mnikka? to -n/in/nin ka yo? based on Grammar Note 3.)

Tutor: Hankuk e chəim imnikka?

'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'

Student: Hankuk e chəim in ka yo?

'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'

1. Kim Sənsəng il asimnikka?

Kim Sənsəng il asinin ka yo?

2. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il
ilksimnikka?

Ceimsɪ Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il
ilknin ka yo?

3. ənce Mikuk e tola kasimnikka?

ənce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo?

4. Han tal hu e ttənamnikka?

Han tal hu e ttənanin ka yo?

5. Pə lil thasimnikka?

Pə lil thasinin ka yo?

6. Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?

Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllinin ka yo?

7. Hakkyo ka mənnikka?

Hakkyo ka mən ka yo?

8. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam imnikka?

Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam in ka yo?

9. Hankuk mal i philyo-hamnikka?

Hankuk mal i philyo-han ka yo?

10. Sənsəng in mom i aphimnikka?

Sənsəng in mom i aphin ka yo?

11. Cungkuk mal i swipsimnikka?

Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo?

12. Kɪ kilim i alimtapnimnikka?

Kɪ kilim i alimtaun ka yo?

13. Mikuk yəca ka yeppimnikka?

Mikuk yəca ka yeppin ka yo?

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e chæim in ka yo?
/ne/

Student: Ne, chæim iye yo.

'Is [this your] first time in Korea?
/yes/

'Yes, [this] is [my] first time [in Korea].'

1. Kim Sənsəng il asinin ka yo?
/aniyo/
2. Ceimsi Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il
ilknin ka yo? /ne/
3. ənce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo?
/taim hæ/
4. Han tal hu e Səul il ttənanin
ka yo? /aniyo/
5. Pə lil thanin ka yo? /ne/
6. Mikuk kkaci sahil kəllinin ka
yo? /ne/
7. Hakkyo ka kakkaun ka yo? /aniyo/
8. Cə yəca nin Hankuk salam in ka
yo? /ne/
9. Ilpon mal to əlyəun ka yo? /aniyo/
10. Tangsin in mom i aphin ka yo?
/ne/
11. Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo? /aniyo/
12. I kilim i alimtaun ka yo? /ne/

Aniyo, molla yo.

Ne, ilke yo.

Taim hæ e tola ka yo.

Aniyo, (han tal hu e) ttənaci anh
yo.

Ne, pə lil tha yo.

Ne, sahil kəlliyə yo.

Aniyo, kakkapci anhe yo.

Ne, Hankuk salam iye yo.

Aniyo, əlyəpci anhe yo.

Ne, (mom i) aphe yo.

Aniyo, swipci anhe yo.

Ne, (ki kilim i) alimtawə yo.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs ilo hakkyo e wassimnikka?
/catongcha/

Student: Catongcha lo wassimnita.

'How did you come to school?' /car/

'I came by car.'

1. ənce Hankuk e wassimnikka?
/chən-ku-pək-yuk-sip nyən/
2. Sənsəng in əti esə il-hasimnikka?
/Mikuk Kongpowən/
3. Mikuk Təsakwan e muəs ilo issimnikka?
/yəngsa/

Chən-ku-pək-yu-sip nyən e wassimnita.

Mikuk Kongpowən esə il-hamnita.

Yəngsa lo issimnita.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 4. Cip esə samusil kkaci əlma na
kəllimnikka? /i-sip-o pun/ | I-sip-o pun kəllimnita. |
| 5. Han cuil e myəchil tongan il-haci
yo? /tassə/ | Tassə tongan il-hamnita. |
| 6. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci
yo? /yəses sikan/ | Yəsəs sikan kongpu-hamnita. |
| 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il
pəwəssci yo? /tu tal/ | Tu tal tongan pəwəssimnita. |
| 8. Muəs ilo yəki e wassimnikka?
/pihəngki/ | Pihəngki lo wassimnita. |

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions in Informal Polite speech based on the fact.)

1. ənce Hankuk e wassə yo?
2. Muəs ilo wassə yo?
3. Cikim eti esə il-hase yo?
4. Kəki esə muəs ilo issise yo?
5. əlma tongan kəki esə il-həsse yo?
6. Musin il il hase yo?
7. Achim e muəs ilo il-halə ose yo?
8. Catongcha lo sikan i əlma na kəlliyə yo?
9. Myəch-si e cip e kase yo?
10. Hankuk mal myəch tal tongan pəwəsse yo?
11. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci yo?
12. Hakkyo esə səsəng cip kkaci ppəsi lo əlma na kəllici yo?

EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech.

You came to Korea two year ago. This is not your first time but second time in Korea. The first time was in 1951. At that time, you were in the military service. This time you have been here as a foreign service officer. Now, you're going to go back to America in one month. Last time you flew to Korea but you intend to go by boat this time. It usually takes 10 to 18 days (to go) to America by boat, and about 23 hours by plane.

2. Find out the following information from Mr. James (or Mr. Park)
 - a. When he came to Korea (or to America.)
 - b. How ('by what means of transportation') he came.
 - c. Where he is working.
 - d. In what capacity he works there.
 - e. How long he has been there.
 - f. What kind of work he does.
 - g. By what means he goes to work in the morning.
 - h. How long it takes.
 - i. How far it is from his house to the office.
 - j. What time he usually goes home.
 - k. How many hours a day he works.
 - l. How many days it takes to go to America (or Korea) by boat.
 - m. How many years he's going to live in Seoul (or Washington.)
 - n. How many weeks he has studied Korean.
 - o. What time he usually leaves home in the morning.
3. Using maps and/or a geometrical globe, practice asking and answering questions on how long it takes from one given geographical point to another by a given mode of transportation. The geographical points may include two place names within a city or building as well as countries.

4. Tell Mr. Park that:

- a. You have been to Korea several times.
- b. This is your third time in Seoul.
- c. Today is the fourth day of the week.
- d. Korean is your second foreign language.
- e. This week is your fifth week in Korean studies.
- f. Seoul is three times larger than Pusan.
- g. You were in the military service 8 years ago.
- h. Mr. Brown was an ambassador until three months ago.
- i. You are going to leave for America three weeks from now.
- j. You stayed in South Korea for five days.
- k. You came to work by streetcar this morning.

제 8 과 일에 관해서

(대화 A)

1. 이 : 선생은 요새 무엇(을) 하세요?

나

날마다

학교에 다닙니다

2. 제임스 : 날마다 학교에 다닙니다.

무엇(을) 배우러

3. 이 : 무엇을 배우러 (학교에) 다니세요?

배우려고

4. 제임스 : 한국 말을 배우려고 다닙니다.

배우기

쉽습니까

5. 이 : 한국 말을 배우기 쉽습니까?

그리

재미

재미 있습니다

6. 제임스 : 아니요, 그리 쉽지 않습니다. 그러나,
재미 있습니다.

UNIT 8. Talking About One's Work
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

1. Sensæng in yosæ mues (il) hase yo? What are you doing these days?

James

nal	day
nal mata	everyday
hakkyo e tanimnita	[I]'m attending school

2. Nal mata hakkyo e tanimnita. I go to school everyday.

Lee

mues (il) pæule	('to learn what'); ('what to learn?')
-----------------	---------------------------------------

3. Mues (il) pæule (hakkyo) tanise yo? What are you studying? ('What to learn do you go to school?')

James

pæulyeko	in order to learn
----------	-------------------

4. Hankuk mal il pæulyeko tanimnita. I'm studying Korean. ('I'm attending in order to learn Korean.')

Lee

pæuki	learning; to learn
swipsimnikka	is it easy?

5. Hankuk mal (il) pæuki swipsimnikka? Is Korean easy? ('Is it easy to learn Korean?')

James

kili	so; in such a way; not so
cæmi	fun
cæmi issimnita	[it]'s interesting ('there's fun')

6. Aniyo, kili swipci ahhsimnita. No, it's not very easy. But it's interesting.
Kilena, cæmi issimnita.

7. 이 : 선생은 독일 말을 하세요?

조금

(말) 할 수 있습니다

이지 못 합니다

8. 제임스 : 예, 조금 (말) 할 수 있습니다. 그러나,
이지 못 합니다.

더

어렵습니다

9. 이 : 독일 말과 한국 말은 어느 말이 배우기(가)
더 어렵습니까?

독일 말보다

10. 제임스 : 한국 말이 독일 말보다 더 어렵습니다.

(대화 B)

오래간만입니다

이즘

재미가 어떻습니까

11. 김 : 오래간만입니다. 이즘 일에 재미가
어떻습니까?

덕분에

12. 제임스 : 덕분에 재미 있습니다. 선생은 어떠세요?

분주합니다

13. 김 : 저는 요즘 좀 분주합니다.

Lee

7. Sənsəŋ in Tokil mal il hase yo?

Do you speak German?

James

cokim

a little

(mal-)hal su issimnita

[I] can speak

i(1)kcil mot hamnita

[I] cannot read

8. Ne, cokim (mal-)hal su issimnita.

Yes, I can speak [it] a little. I
can't read [it], though.

Kiləna, ilkcil mot hamnita.

Lee

tə

more

əlyəpsimnikka

is [it] difficult?

9. Tokil mal kwa Hankuk mal in əni

Which (language) is more difficult
to learn, German or Korean?

mal i pəuki (ka) tə əlyəpsimnikka?

James

Tokil mal pota

than German

10. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota

Korean is more difficult than
German.

tə əlyəpsimnita.

Dialogue BKim

olə kan man imnita

long time no see

icim

these days

cəmi ka ətəhsimnikka

('how is fun?')

11. Olə kan man imnita. Icim il e

I haven't seen you for some time.

cəmi ka ətəhsimnikka?

How is your job coming along
(these days)? ('How is fun at
work these days?')James

təkpun e

('at your favor')

12. Təkpun e cəmi issimnita. Sənsəŋ
in əttese yo?I'm doing fine, thank you. And how
about you?

그런데

근무

근무 하십니까

14. 제임스 : 그런데, 요새는 어디 근무 하십니까?

전에

말하지 않았습니까

회사

15. 김 : 아, 제가 전에 말하지 않았습니까? 지금
반도 회사에 근무 합니다.

주요

16. 제임스 : 무슨 일을 주요 하세요?

보통

사무

사무를 봅니다

17. 김 : 보통 사무를 봅니다.

오래

오래 동안

18. 제임스 : 아, 그러세요? 그 회사에서 오래 동안
일했습니까?

한 삼 년

되었습니다

19. 김 : 한 삼 년 되었습니다.

Kim

- punchuhamnita
13. Cə nin yocim com puncuhamnita.

[I]'m busy; [I]'m hectic
I'm a little busy these days.

James

- kilən te
kinmu
kinmu-hasimnikka
14. Kilən te, yosə nin ətə kinmu-
hasimnikka?

by the way
('working')
do [you] work?
Where do you work (these days), by
the way?

Kim

- cən e
mal-haci anhəssimnikka
hwesa
15. A, ce kan cən e mal-haci
anhəssimnikka? Cikim Panto
Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita.

previously
didn't [I] say?
company; business firm
Oh, didn't I tell you before? I
work at the Bando Company (now).

James

- culo
16. Musin il il culo hase yo?

mainly; mostly
What kind of work do you do mainly?

Kim

- pothong
samu
samu l1l pomnita
17. Pothong samu l1l pomnita.

ordinary; ordinarily
office work
[I] do office work
I do ordinary office work.

James

- olæ
olæ tongan
18. A, kiləse yo? K1 hwesa esə olæ
tongan il-həssimnikka?

a long time
for a long time
Is that so? Have you worked there
('at that company') for a long
time?

Kim

- han sam nyən
tweəssimnita
19. Han sam nyən tweəssimnita.

about 3 years; approximately
3 years
[it] has been; [it] became
I've been there for about three years.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. The verb tani- denotes the action of 'going and coming regularly'. Examples:

Na nin hakkyo e tanimnita.

{ 'I am attending school.'
'I go to school.'

Ppəsi ka tanimnita.

'Buses are running.'

4. Pæulyeko and pæule mean the same. Their use is determined by environment: pæulyeko occurs before ha- and most other verbs, while pæule occurs before only a few verbs (usually ka-, o-, and tani-). (See Grammar Note 3 of Unit 6 and Grammar Note 4 of Unit 7.)

6. Cæmi iss-ta 'is interesting' is a usage which literally means 'fun exists' or 'there is fun'. Cæmi (ka) issimnita which may precede a subject or a topic occurs as an intransitive expression with or without the particle ka after cæmi. Examples:

Hakkyo ka cæmi (ka) issimnita.

'I enjoy school.' ('School is interesting.')

I chæk i cæmi (ka) issimnikka?

'Is this book interesting?'

8. The negative equivalent of Hal su issimnita. 'is able to do' is Hal su epsimnita. 'is unable to do'. Haci mot hamnita '[I] cannot do' is a substitute for Hal su epsimnita. (See Grammar Note 3.)
11. Olækan man imnita. ('It's only a long time.') is a standard expression used under the same circumstances as its English equivalent, 'I haven't seen you for some time.' or 'Long time no see.'
14. Place name + e + kinmu-ha-ta and place name + esə + il-ha-ta both mean 'works at + place name'. Note that the verb kinmu-ha- takes the particle e when preceded by a place name while the verb il-ha- takes the particle esə when preceded by a place name.
17. Pothong is used either as a sentence adverb or as a noun, or as a determinative. When pothong is a free noun it means 'usual thing'; as determinative it means 'usual', 'average', 'ordinary'; as an adverb, it means 'usually', 'ordinarily', 'generally'. Compare:

Ki kəs i pothong imnita.

'That's common. ('That is the usual thing.')

Ki pun in pothong salam imnita.

{ 'He is an average person.'
'He is an ordinary man.'

Pothong, achim il məkci anhsimnita.

'Generally, [I] don't eat breakfast.'

18. Olæ 'a long time' and olæ tongan 'for a long time' both occur either as a nominal or as an adverbial.
19. Han 'about' occurs before numerals and is a determinative which denotes approximation of the following numeral expressions. Compare han with ccim which occurs always after numeral expressions (Unit 6). The verb stem twe- is an intransitive verb which after a title name means 'to become' and after a period of time denotes elapsing.

Samu is a noun which means 'office work'; pothong samu 'general clerical office work'. Smau (lil) po-ta which literally means 'looks at office work' is an fixed usage, meaning 'does office work'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ki

The verb ending -ki is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes. An inflected form ending in -ki occurs only in the positions where nominals occur (e.g., in the positions of emphasized subject, topic or object). Since this form occupies only in nominal positions, we shall call it Nominalized Verb or simply the ki form, and the -ki ending Nominalizing Verb-Ending. Note that the ki form occurs mostly before description verbs and rarely before action verbs. Examples:

Hankuk mal (il) pæuki (ka) cæmi
issimnita.

'Learning Korean is interesting.'

Yænge (lil) kalichiki (ka)
elyepsimnikka?

'Is teaching English difficult?'

Nal i cohki (lil) palamnita.

'I hope that the weather is nice.'

Hankuk mal (il) kongpu-haki (lil)
wənamnita.

'I want to study Korean.'

2. Particle mata

Mata 'every', 'each' occurs after a period of time or the name of an object, and means either 'each' or 'every'. A nominal + mata is used as an adverbial phrase. Examples:

Uli nin sikan mata suəp i issə yo.	'We have class every hour.'
Wəlyoɪl mata pi ka omnita.	'It rains every Monday.'
Hæ mata Nyuyok e kaci yo?	'You go to New York every year, don't you?'
Salam mata ilim i talimnita.	'Each man has a different name.'
Hakkyo mata Yəngə lil kalichimnita.	'All the schools teach English.' ('Each school teaches English.')

3. -(1)l su iss- 'can' vs. -(1)l su əps- 'cannot'

The construction -(1)l su iss- ('[There] is a way to do.') is the Korean equivalent of English 'can' or 'is able to'. The verb stem to which -(1)l is added is the equivalent of the English verb which occurs after either can or be able to. Tenses, levels and/or styles of speech are generated in the verb iss-. Compare:

Kal su issimnita.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issəssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su issəssəssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su isskessə yo.	'[I] will be able to go.'
Kal su issə yo.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issəssə yo.	'[I] could go.'

The negative equivalent of -(1)l su iss- is either -(1)l su əps- or -ci mot ha-. Compare:

Kal su əpsimnita.	'[I] cannot go.'
Kaci mot hamnita.	

Note that mot 'cannot' is an adverb which occurs in the following two constructions (a) and (b) which are the same in meaning:

(a) mot + an inflected expression:

Mot without pause before an inflected expression is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence for the following expression.

(b) -ci + mot + ha-:

The ci form of an action verb plus mot followed by ha- is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action of the subject or

topic in the sentence for the verb preceding mot. Compare:

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin mot kamnita. | } | 'I cannot go.' |
| Cə nin kacɪ mot hamnita. | | |
| 2. Cə nin Hankɪl ɪl mot ɪlke yo. | } | 'I cannot read Hankɪl.' |
| Cə nin Hankɪl ɪl ɪlkeɪ mot | | |
| hæ yo. | | |
| 3. Kim Sənsəŋ ɪ mot wassimnita. | } | 'Mr. Kim couldn't come.' |
| Kim Sənsəŋ ɪ oci mot | | |
| hæssimnita. | | |

In either of the above two constructions, tenses and levels of speech are generated in the verb which occurs immediately after mot. Compare mot with the adverb an which is used before an inflected expression to denote simple negation of the following expression (See Unit 3). Note that the construction, the -ci form of a description verb + mot ha-, is synonymous with either -ci an- or an + a description verb. We will learn more about this in further units.

4. Particle pota 'than', 'more than'

Pota follows a nominal X with which another nominal, Y, is being compared. Nominal Y may be followed by a description verb which may be preceded by tə 'more'. Examples:

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| Tokilə pota Hankuke ka tə əlyəpsimnita. | } | 'Korean is more difficult than German.' |
| Hankuke ka Tokilə pota tə əlyəpsimnita. | | |
| I chæk pota tə ssan chæk ɪn əpsimnita. | | 'We don't have a cheaper book than this (book).' |
| əce pota onɪl ɪl tə cohamnita. | } | '[I] like today better than yesterday.' |
| Onɪl ɪl əce pota tə cohamnita. | | |

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every day. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Wəlyoil</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every Monday. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>achim</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every morning. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>cənyək</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every evening. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>tal</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every month. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>cuil</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every week. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>hə</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every year. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>sikan</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every hour. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>pam</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every night. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Na nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school everyday. |
| 2. Na nin <u>cuil</u> mata <u>Səul</u> e kamnita. | I go to Seoul every week. |
| 3. Na nin <u>Ilyoil</u> mata <u>tapang</u> e kamnita. | I go to a tearoom every Sunday. |
| 4. Na nin <u>pam</u> mata <u>siktang</u> e kamnita. | I go to a restaurant every night. |
| 5. Na nin <u>cənyək</u> mata <u>kikcang</u> e kamnita. | I go to the theatre every evening. |
| 6. Na nin <u>achim</u> mata <u>samusil</u> e kamnita. | I go to the office every morning. |
| 7. Na nin <u>Thoyoil</u> mata <u>sicang</u> e kamnita. | I go to the market place every Saturday. |
| 8. Na nin <u>sikan</u> mata <u>kyosil</u> e kamnita. | I go to the classroom every hour. |
| 9. Na nin <u>tal</u> mata <u>inhəng</u> e kamnita. | I go to the bank every month. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>pæulyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to learn English. |
| 2. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichilyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to teach English. |
| 3. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>alyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to know English. |
| 4. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-halyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to speak English. |
| 5. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>ilkilyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to read English. |
| *6. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>ssilyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to write English. |
| 7. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kongpu-halyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to study English. |
| 8. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-hal su</u>
<u>issimnita.</u> | Everybody can speak English. |
| 9. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-haci</u>
<u>anhsimnita.</u> | Not everybody speaks English. |
| 10. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichil su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | Not everybody can teach English. |
| 11. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichici mot</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Not everybody can teach English. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>pæumnita.</u> | Everybody learns English. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> mata Yenge 1l <u>kalichimnita.</u> | All the schools teach English. |
| 3. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>amnita.</u> | All the teachers know English. |
| 4. <u>Haksæng</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>kongpu-</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Each student studies English. |
| 5. <u>Tæsa</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>cal hamnita.</u> | Every ambassador speaks good English. |
| 6. <u>Wekyokwan</u> mata Yenge l1l
<u>ilksimnita.</u> | Everyone in the foreign service
reads English. |
| 7. <u>Ai</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>pæulyeko</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Every child intends to learn English. |

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 8. <u>Sənsəŋ</u> mata Yəŋə lɪl <u>(mal-)hal</u>
<u>su issimnita.</u> | All the teachers can speak English. |
| 9. <u>Sənsəŋ</u> mata Yəŋə lɪl <u>mal-haci</u> <u>mot</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | Not every teacher can speak English. |
| 10. <u>Sənsəŋ</u> mata Yəŋə lɪl <u>kalichil</u> <u>su</u>
<u>əpsimnita.</u> | Not every teacher can teach English. |
| 11. <u>Sənsəŋ</u> mata Yəŋə lɪl <u>kongpu-haci</u>
<u>anhsimnita.</u> | Not every teacher studies English. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal pəuki swipsimnikka? | Is learning Korean easy? |
| 2. Hankuk mal <u>kalichiki</u> swipsimnikka? | Is teaching Korean easy? |
| 3. Hankuk mal <u>(mal-)haki</u> swipsimnikka? | Is speaking Korean easy? |
| 4. Hankuk mal <u>i(l)kki</u> swipsimnikka? | Is reading Korean easy? |
| 5. Hankuk mal <u>ssiki</u> swipsimnikka? | Is writing Korean easy? |
| 6. Hankuk mal <u>kongpu-haki</u> swipsimnikka? | Is studying Korean easy? |
| 7. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>əlyəpsimnikka?</u> | Is studying Korean difficult? |
| 8. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>cəmi</u>
<u>issimnikka?</u> | Is studying Korean interesting? |
| 9. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki
<u>kwəəchanhsimnikka?</u> | Is studying Korean all right? |
| 10. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki
<u>cohahamnikka?</u> | Do you like studying Korean? |
| 11. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>consimnikka?</u> | Is learning Korean, O.K.? |
| 12. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>əttəhsimnikka?</u> | How do you like studying Korean? |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə nin Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita. | I work
I am employed } at Bando Company. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the US Embassy. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Səul Sichəng</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at Seoul City Hall. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Bank of Korea. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>Pusan Uphyənku</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Pusan Post Office. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>Panto Hothel</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Bando Hotel. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Cəngpu</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work for the US Government. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>sinə sangcəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at a store downtown. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>Səul pəkhwacəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at Seoul Department Store. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Il i cəmi issimnita. | [My] work is interesting. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {School is interesting.
I enjoy school. |
| 3. <u>Kongpu</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {Studying is interesting.
I enjoy studying. |
| 4. <u>Chək</u> i cəmi issimnita. | This book is interesting. |
| 5. <u>Hankuk mal</u> i cəmi issimnita. | Korean is interesting. |
| 6. <u>Cə salam</u> i cəmi issimnita. | He ('that man') is interesting. |
| 7. <u>Il-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {I enjoy working. ('It's interesting to
to work.') |
| | {Working is interesting. |
| 8. <u>Kongpu-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {I enjoy studying.
Studying is interesting. |
| 9. <u>Chək i(1)kki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {I enjoy reading books.
Reading books is interesting. |
| *10. <u>Munce</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | The problem is interesting. |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Yenge l1l com (mal-)hal su issimnita. | I can speak a little English. |
| *2. <u>Wekuke</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak foreign languages a
little. |
| *3. <u>Cungkuke</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little Chinese. |
| *4. <u>Tokile</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little German. |
| *5. <u>Ilpone</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little Japanese. |
| *6. <u>Pullansae</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little French. |
| *7. <u>Ssolyene</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little Russian. |
| *8. <u>Ithaelie</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little Italian. |
| *9. <u>Sepanae</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su
issimnita. | I can speak a little Spanish. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. Ce nin Yenge l1l ssici mot hamnita. | I can't write in English. |
| 2. Ce nin <u>ilim</u> il ssici mot hamnita. | I can't write [my] name. |
| 3. Ce nin <u>Hankil</u> il ssici mot hamnita. | I can't write Hankul. |
| 4. Ce nin <u>Tokile</u> l1l ssici mot
hamnita. | I can't write in German. |
| 5. Ce nin <u>Pullansae</u> l1l ssici mot
hamnita. | I can't write in French. |
| 6. Ce nin <u>Ssolyene</u> l1l ssici mot
hamnita. | I can't write in Russian. |
| 7. Ce nin <u>Ithaelie</u> l1l ssici mot
hamnita. | I can't write in Italian. |
| 8. Ce nin <u>Hankuke</u> l1l ssici mot
hamnita. | I can't write in Korean. |
| 9. Ce nin Haku ke l1l <u>ilkei mot</u>
<u>hamnita</u> . | I can't read in Korean. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 10. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl <u>mal-haci</u> mot
<u>hamnita</u> . | I can't speak Korean. |
| 11. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl <u>pəuci</u> mot
<u>hamnita</u> . | I can't learn Korean. |
| 12. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl <u>kalichici</u> mot
<u>hamnita</u> . | I can't teach Korean. |
| *13. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl <u>alci</u> mot
<u>hamnita</u> . | I don't know Korean. ('I can't know Korean.') |
| *14. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl <u>ssici</u> mot
<u>hamnita</u> . | { I can't use Korean.
I can't write Korean. |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tɛ
ɛlyɛpsimnita. | Korean is more difficult than German. |
| 2. <u>Cungkuk</u> mal i <u>Yəngə</u> pota tɛ
ɛlyɛpsimnita. | Chinese is more difficult than English. |
| 3. <u>Pullanse</u> mal i <u>Ithæli</u> mal pota
tɛ ɛlyɛpsimnita. | French is more difficult than Italian. |
| 4. <u>Ssolyən</u> mal i <u>Hankuk</u> mal pota
tɛ ɛlyɛpsimnita. | Russian is more difficult than Korean. |
| 5. <u>Ilpon</u> mal i <u>Ssolyən</u> mal pota tɛ
ɛlyɛpsimnita. | Japanese is more difficult than Russian. |
| 6. <u>Yəngə</u> ka <u>Tokil</u> mal pota tɛ
ɛlyɛpsimnita. | English is more difficult than German. |
| 7. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ
<u>swipsimnita</u> . | English is easier than German. |
| 8. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ
<u>cæmi issimnita</u> . | English is more interesting than German. |
| 9. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ
<u>pokcap-hamnita</u> . | English is more complicated than German. |
| *10. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ
<u>cæmi ɛpsimnita</u> . | English is less interesting than German. |
| *11. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ
<u>kantan-hamnita</u> . | English is simpler than German. |

K. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Musin il il culo hase yo? | What (kind of work) do you do mainly? |
| 2. Musin il il <u>nal mata</u> hase yo? | What (kind of work) do you do every-day? |
| 3. Musin il il <u>kiləhke</u> hase yo? | {What are you working at so hard?
What are you doing in such a way? |
| 4. Musin il il <u>pothong</u> hase yo? | What do you usually do? |
| 5. Musin il il <u>kili</u> hase yo? | What are you doing so hard? |
| * 6. Musin il il <u>manhi</u> hase yo? | What do you do mostly? |
| 7. Musin il il <u>cenyek mata</u> hase yo? | What do you do every evening? |
| 8. Musin il il <u>təkæ</u> hase yo? | What do you usually do? |
| * 9. Musin il il <u>cikim puthə</u> hase yo? | What [are] you [going to] do from now on? |
| 10. Musin il il <u>nəil kkaci</u> hase yo? | What [are] you [going to] do until tomorrow? |
| 11. Musin il il <u>ki ttə e</u> hase yo? | What [are] you [going to] do at that time? |

L. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Cən e mal-haci anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [I] tell [you] before? |
| 2. Cən e <u>kaci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] go [there] before? |
| 3. Cən e <u>saci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] buy [it] before? |
| 4. Cən e <u>mannaci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [we] meet before? |
| 5. Cən e <u>pəuci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] learn [it] before? |
| 6. Cən e <u>ilkci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] read [it] before? |
| 7. Cən e <u>cohci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Wasn't [it] nice before? |
| *8. Cən e <u>poci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] see [it] before? |
| *9. Cən e <u>kkith-nəci</u> anhəssimnikka? | Didn't [you] finish [it] before? |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. (Han) <u>sam nyen</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about three years. |
| 2. (Han) <u>sam cuil</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about three weeks. |
| 3. (Han) <u>se sikan</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about three hours. |
| 4. (Han) <u>sək tal</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about three months. |
| 5. (Han) <u>sam pun</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about three minutes. |
| 6. (Han) <u>sa nyen pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about four and a half years. |
| 7. (Han) <u>ne sikan pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about four and a half hours. |
| 8. (Han) <u>nək tal pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about four and a half months. |

N. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in <u>wekyokwan</u> (1)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a diplomat. |
| 2. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kunin</u> (1)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a soldier. |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təsa</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became an ambassador. |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng in <u>yəngsa</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a consul. |
| * 5. Kim Sənsəng in <u>Təthongyeng</u> (1)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became the President. |
| * 6. Kim Sənsəng in <u>hakca</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a scholar. |
| * 7. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kyosu</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a college professor. |
| * 8. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kangsa</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a college instructor. |
| * 9. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kongpokwan</u> (1)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became an information officer. |
| * 10. Kim Sənsəng in <u>thongyəkwan</u> (1)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became an interpreter. |
| * 11. Kim Sənsəng in <u>simmun kica</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a journalist. |
| * 12. Kim Sənsəng in <u>lysa</u> (ka)
tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a doctor. |

*13. Kim Sænsæng in sacang (i)
tweæssimnita.

Mr. Kim became a president (of the company).

*14. Kim Sænsæng in pyenhosa (ka)
tweæssimnita.

Mr. Kim became a lawyer.

*15. Kim Sænsæng in kyengchal(kwan) (i)
tweæssimnita.

Mr. Kim became a policeman.

0. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i ælyepsimnita.
/Tokil mal/

'Korean is difficult.' /German/

Student: Tokil mal in tæ ælyewæ yo.

'German is more difficult.'

1. Tokil mal i swipsimnita.
/Pullanæ mal/

Pullanæ mal in tæ swiwæ yo.

2. Yæng-Han sacæn i pissamnita.
/Han-Yæng sacæn/

Han-Yæng sacæn in tæ pissa yo.

3. Sæul i khimnita. /Nyuyok/

Nyuyok in tæ khæ yo.

4. Sæul e mulkæn kaps i ssamnita.
/Pusan/

Pusan e mulkæn kaps in tæ ssa yo.

5. Kim Sænsæng cip i kakkapsimnita.
/Pak Sænsæng cip/

Pak Sænsæng cip in tæ kakkawæ yo.

*6. Catongcha ka copsimnita.
/pihængki/

Pihængki nin tæ copa yo.

7. Hankuk yæca ka yeppimnita. /Mikuk
yæca/

Mikuk yæca nin tæ yeppe yo.

8. Ilpon i cakin nala imnita.
/Hankuk/

Hankuk in tæ cakin nala iye yo.

P. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Tokil mal i swipsimnita..
/Pullansə mal/

Student: Tokil mal i Pullansə mal
pota tē swipsimnita.

1. Hankuk i caksimnita. /Ilpon/
2. Pusan i məmnita. /Inchen/
3. Kicha ka cal tanimnita. /pihængki/
4. Yəngə ka əlyəpsimnita. /Hankuk mal/
5. Hankuk yəca ka alimtapsimnita.
/Cungkuk yəca/
6. Kim Sənsəng i yəngə lil cal
hamnita. /Ceimsi Sənsəng/
7. Khin sacən il cohahamnita. /cakin
sacən/
8. Səul e salam i manhī issimnita.
/Wəsingthon/

'German is easy.' /French/

'German is easier than French.'

- Hankuk i Ilpon pota tē caksimnita.
Pusan i Inchen pota tē məmnita.
Kicha ka pihængki pota tē cal
tanimnita.
Yəngə ka Hankuk mal pota tē
əlyəpsimnita.
Hankuk yəca ka Cungkuk yəca pota
tē alimtapsimnita.
Kim Sənsəng i Ceimsi Sənsəng pota
Yəngə lil tē cal hamnita.
Khin sacən il cakin sacən pota tē
cohahamnita.
Səul e Wəsingthon pota tē salam i
manhī issimnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Yəngə lil mal-hal su isse yo?

Student: Ne, (Yəngə lil) mal-hal su
issimnita.

1. Hankil il ilkil su isse yo?
2. Hakkyo e kal su isse yo?
3. Yəngə lil kalichil su isse yo?
4. Onil cip e issil su isse yo?
5. Cikim kil il mulə pol su isse yo?
6. Nəil il-hal su isse yo?
7. Samusil e tillil su isse yo?
8. Kī catongcha lil phal su isse yo?

'Can you speak English?'

'Yes, I can (speak).'

- Ne, (Hankil il) ilkil su issimnita.
Ne, (hakkyo e) kal su issimnita.
Ne, (Yəngə lil) kalichil su
issimnita.
Ne, (onil) cip e issil su issimnita.
Ne, (cikim kil il) mulə pol su
issimnita.
Ne, (nəil) il-hal su issimnita.
Ne, (samusil e) tillil su issimnita.
Ne, (kī catongcha lil) phal su
issimnita.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 9. Ohu e ttənal su issə yo? | Ne, (ohu e) ttənal su issimnita. |
| 10. Ppəsi lil thal su issə yo? | Ne, (ppəsi lil) thal su issimnita. |
| 11. Taim tal puthe hakkyo e tanil su
issə yo? | Ne, (taim tal puthe hakkyo e) tanil
su issimnita. |
| 12. Nəil kkaci il il kkith-nəl su i
issə yo? | Ne, nəil kkaci (il il) kkith-nəl su
issimnita. |
| 12. K1 il il cikim sicak-hal su
issə yo? | Ne, (k1 il il) cikim sicak-hal su
issimnita. |

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su issimnikka?

'Can you go to school?'

Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo e) kal su
 əpsimnita.

'No, I cannot (go).'

- Hankil il ilkil su issimnikka?
- Yəngə lil kalichil su issimnikka?
- Onil cip e issil su issimnikka?
- Cikim kil il mulə pol su
 issimnikka?
- Nəil il-hal su issimnikka?
- Samusil e tillil su issimnikka?
- K1 catongcha lil phal su issimnikka?
- Ohu e ttənal su issimnikka?
- Mikuk esə hakkyo e tanil su
 issimnikka?

Aniyo, (Hankil il) ilkil su
 əpsimnita.

Aniyo, (Yəngə lil) kalichil su
 əpsimnita.

Aniyo, (cip e) issil su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, (kil il) mulə pol su
 əpsimnita.

Aniyo, il-hal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, tillil su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, phal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, ttənal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, tanil su əpsimnita.

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su epsimnikka?

'Can't you go to school?'

Student: Ne, kaci mot hamnita.

'No, I can't (go).'

1. Yenge lil mal-hal su epsimnikka?

Ne, mal-haci mot hamnita.

2. Hankil il ilkil su epsimnikka?

Ne, ilkci mot hamnita.

3. Tokil mal il kalichil su
epsimnikka?

Ne, kalichici mot hamnita.

4. Onil nœ samusil e tilla il su
epsimnikka?

Ne, tillici mot hamnita.

5. Nœil il-hal su epsimnikka?

Ne, (nœil) il-haci mot hamnita.

6. Cha lil phal su epsimnikka?

Ne, phalci mot hamnita.

7. Ohu e ttenal su epsimnikka?

Ne, ttenaci mot hamnita.

8. Nœil kkaci il il kkith-nœil su
epsimnikka?Ne, (nœil kkaci) khith-nœci mot
hamnita.9. Mikuk esœ hakkyo e tanil su
epsimnikka?Ne, (Mikuk esœ hakkyo e) tanici mot
hamnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka mœmnikka?

'Is the school far?'

Student: Aniyo, kili mœlci anhsimnita.

'No, it's not so far.'

1. Haksœng i manhsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili manhci anhsimnita.

2. Sicang e mulken i pissamnikka?

Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita.

3. inhœng i kakkapsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili kakkapci anhsimnita.

4. I kilim i alimtap simnikka?

Aniyo, kili alimtapci anhsimnita.

5. Ki pun i Ssolyen mal il cal
hamnikka?

Aniyo, kili cal haci anhsimnita.

6. Tangsin in œ yœca lil cohahamnikka?

Aniyo, kili cohahaci anhsimnita.

7. Hankuk mal kyosil i khimnikka?

Aniyo, kili khici anhsimnita.

8. Sikan i manhi kœllimnikka?

Aniyo, kili manhi kœllici
anhsimnita.

9. Ssolyen mal i pœuki swipsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili swipci anhsimnita.

10. œ tokil yœca ka yeppimnikka?

Aniyo, kili yeppici anhsimnita.

11. Sensœng in cikim puncuhamnikka?

Aniyo, kili puncuhaci anhsimnita.

12. Yenge lil kalichiki œlyœpsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili œlyœpci anhsimnita.

13. Yœng-Han sacœn i philyo-hamnikka?

Aniyo, kili philyo-haci anhsimnita.

U. Response Drill (Answer the question using /pelsse/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sensaeng i ttenasse yo?

'Has Mr. Kim left?'

Student: Ne, (Kim Sensaeng i) pelsse
ttenassimnita.

'Yes, he has laready left.'

1. Ki il il kkith-nasse yo?

Ne, (ki il il) pelsse kkith-nassimnita.

2. Yenge sensaeng il manasse yo?

Ne, (Yenge sensaeng il) pelsse
mannassimnita.

3. Han sam nyen ccim tweesse yo?

Ne, pelsse han sam nyen ccim
tweessimnita.

4. Haksang i kicha e thasse yo?

Ne, (haksang i) pelsse (kicha e)
thassimnita.5. Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-hasse
yo?Ne, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) pelsse
sicak-hassimnita.

6. Onil i Suyoil iye yo?

Ne, (Onil i) pelsse Suyoil imnita.

7. Pak Sensaeng in il-hale kasse yo?

Ne, (Pak Sensaeng in) pelsse il-hale
kassimnita.

8. Sesaeng in hyuka lil patesse yo?

Ne, pelsse (hyuka lil) patessimnita.

9. Com swiesse yo?

Ne, pelsse swiessimnita.

10. Kicha ka cengkancang e tahasse yo?

Ne, pelsse (cengkancang e)
tahassimnita.

V. Response Drill (Answer the question using /acik/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sensaeng i pelsse
ttenassimnikka?

'Has Mr. Kim left already?'

Student: Aniyo, (Kim Sensaeng i) acik
ttenaci anhesse yo?

'No, he's not left yet.'

1. Hakkyo ka pelsse kkith-nassimnikka?

Aniyo, (hakkyo ka) acik kkith-naci
anhesse yo.2. Yenge sensaeng il pelsse
mannassimnikka?Aniyo, (Yenge sensaeng il) acik
mannaci anhesse yo.

3. Pelsse sam nyen i tweessimnikka?

Aniyo, acik (sam nyen i) tweci
anhesse yo.4. Hankuk mal kongpu lil pelsse sicak-
hassimnikka?Aniyo, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) aci
sicak-haci anhesse yo.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Pak Sensæng in pelsse il-hale
kassimnikka? | Aniyo, (Pak Sensæng in) acik (il-hale) kaci anhæsse yo. |
| 6. Sensæng in pelsse hyuka lil
patessimnikka? | Aniyo, (Acik hyuka lil) patci anhæsse yo. |
| 7. Kicha ka pelsse cengkæcang e
tahassimnikka? | Aniyo, (kicha ka) acik (cengkæcang e) tahci anhæsse yo. |
| 8. Pihængki ka pelsse ttænassimnikka? | Aniyo, (pihængki ka) acik ttænaci anhæsse yo. |
| 9. K1 il il pelsse kkith-næssimnikka? | Aniyo, (k1 il il) acik kkith-næci anhæsse yo. |
| 10. Kim Sensæng i pelsse yængsa ka
tweæssimnikka? | Aniyo, (Kim Sensæng i) acik yængsa ka tweci anhæsse yo. |

EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park that:
 - (a) You are attending school these days to study Korean. Learning Korean is not so easy but it is interesting. Foreign languages are necessary for you. You can speak German a little but cannot read it well. Korean is more difficult to study than German.
 - (b) Mr. Lee is a little busy these days. He didn't tell you before, but he is employed at the Bando Company, where he does ordinary office work. And, he has lots of work everyday. He has been with the Company for about three months now. He likes his job very much.
2. James wants to know what Mr. Kim, you friend, is. Tell him that Mr. Kim has become a(n):

a. soldier	1. President of a company
b. ambassador	j. Consul
c. the President	k. clerk
d. professor	l. scholar
e. journalist	m. interpreter
f. (medical) doctor	n. information officer
g. lawyer	o. secretary
h. college professor	p. police(man)
	q. civil servant

3. Ask Mr. James in Korean:

- a. Which (one) is more difficult to study, Korean or German.
- b. Which (one) is more expensive, an English-Korean dictionary or a Korean-English dictionary.
- c. Which is larger, Seoul or Pusan.
- d. Which is nearer (or farther) from America, Japan or Korea.
- e. Which is faster, an airplane or a train.
- f. Which is needed more, a Korean-English dictionary or an English-Korean dictionary.
- g. Which one he likes better, a pencil or a fountain pen.
- h. Who speaks English better, Mr. Kim or Mr. James.
- i. Which language is more complicated, French or German.
- j. Which is more interesting to learn, speaking or reading.
- k. Which is less interesting, teaching or learning.
- l. Which is simpler, to write or to read.

4. Pak sensaeng asks:You answer:

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. if Mr. Lee can write Hankil. | 'No, he can't.' |
| b. if everybody knows English. | 'Yes, everybody does.' |
| c. if you intend to leave tomorrow. | 'No, I'm going to leave the day after tomorrow.' |
| d. if you go to the market place every Saturday. | 'Yes, I do (go every Saturday).' |
| e. if you are employed by the Bank of America. | 'No, I work for the Government.' |
| f. if every ambassador speaks good English. | 'No, not every ambassador does.' |
| g. if teaching Korean is not easy. | 'No, it's not that easy, but it's all right.' |
| h. how long you have worked for the Government. | 'About three and a half years.' |
| i. how is it learning Korean. | 'Oh, it's not so difficult.' |
| j. what kind of work you do mainly. | 'Now I do consular work.' |
| k. if you have had a vacation. | 'Not yet, but I'm going to get one next week.' |
| l. if the school already is over. | 'No, it's not over yet.' |

5. Make short statements in which the following expressions are included:

- a. cuil mata
- b. killi
- c. tæ
- d. culo
- e. pothong
- f. olæ (tongan)
- g. kilønke
- h. cikim puthæ
- i. næil kkaci
- k. pølsse
- k. acik

제 9 과 영화 구경

(대화 A)

영화

1. 미쓰 츠 : 오늘 저녁에 영화 보러 안 가겠어요?

참

좋은 생각

2. 미쓰 부라운 : 아, 그거, 참 좋은 생각입니다. 어디에 좋은 영화가 있어요?

국제

국제 극장

(영화를) 상영합니다

상영하고 있습니다

3. 미쓰 츠 : 국제 극장에서 미국 영화를 상영하고 있습니다.

보고 싶습니다

4. 미쓰 부라운 : 나는 한국 영화를 보고 싶습니다.

5. 미쓰 츠 : 한국 영화를 좋아하세요?

가끔

6. 미쓰 부라운 : 예, 가끔 보러 가지요.

다

들읍니다, 들읍니다

알어 들읍니다

7. 미쓰 츠 : 한국 말을 다 알아 들읍니까?

UNIT 9. Going to the Movies

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(Miss Choi and Miss Brown work in the same office.)

Miss Choi

yenghwa

[the] movies

1. Onil canyek e yenghwa pole
an kakessə yo?

Wouldn't you like to go to see a
movie tonight?

Miss Brown

cham

really; very

cohin saengkak

good idea; good thought

2. A, k1 kəs, cham cohin saengkak
imnita. eti e cohin yenghwa ka
isse yo?

Oh, that's a very good idea. Is
there a good movie on? ('Is there
a good movie somewhere?')

Miss Choi

kukce

international

Kukce Kikcang

International Theatre

(yenghwa l1l) sangyeng-hamnita

[they] show movies

sangyeng-hako issimnita

movies are being shown

3. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yenghwa l1l
sangyeng-hako issimnita.

[They] are showing an American
movie at the Interantional
Theatre.

Miss Brown

poko siphsimnita/sipssimnita/

I want to see; I'd like to see

4. Na n1n Hankuk yenghwa l1l poko
siphsimnita.

I want to see a Korean movie.

Miss Choi

5. Hankuk yenghwa l1l cohahase yo?

Do you like Korean movies?

Miss Brown

kakkim

sometimes

6. Ne, kakkim pole kaci yo.

Yes, I go to see [them] sometimes.

알어 듣지 못 합니다

그렇지만

연습

연습 합니다

8. 미쓰 부라운 : 아니요, 다 알어 듣지 못 합니다. 그렇지만,
좋은 연습입니다.

(대화 B)

틈

9. RA : 틈이 있습니까?

바쁩니다

10. RB : 왜요? 좀 바쁩니다.

무슨 일로

그렇게

느

11. RA : 무슨 일로 그렇게 느 바빠요?

하 이

퍼

많습니다

12. RB : 오늘은 하 일이 퍼 많습니다.

그래서

나하고

구경

구경합니다. 구경합니다

Miss Choi

ta
titsimnita }
tilimnita }
ale titsimnikka

all
[I] hear; [I] listen to
do you comprehend?; do you
understand?

7. Hankuk mal il ta ale titsimnikka? Do you understand Korean (language) thoroughly?

Miss Brown

ale titci mot hamnita

kilæchi man
yensip
yensip-hamnita

I don't understand; I can't
understand
however; nevertheless
practice
[I] practice

8. Aniyô, ta ale titci mot hamnita. No, I don't understand it all. But
Kilæchi man, cohin yensip imnita. it's good practice.

Dialogue BRoommate A

- thim
9. Thim }
Sikan } 1 issimnikka?

free time; spare time
Are you free now? ('Do you have
spare time?')

Roommate B

- pappimnita
10. Wæ yo? Com pappimnita.

[I]'m busy
I'm a little busy, why?

Roommate A

- musin il lo
kilæhke
nil
11. Musin il lo kilæhke nil pappe
yo?

why ('with what kind of business')
so; that way; in such a way
all the time; always
How come you are so busy all the
time? ('With what business you
are always busy?')

13. RA: 그래서, 나하고 구경 안 가겠어요?

미안하지만
나 갑니다
나 갈 수 없습니다
14. RB: 미안하지만, 오늘은 나 갈 수 없습니다.
15. RA: 그럼, 내일은 나와 같이 나 갈 수 있겠어요?
16. RB: 예, 내일은 바쁘지 않습니다. 내일 같이 나 갑시다.
17. RA: 그러면, 내일 까지 기다리게어요.

Roommate B

hal il	work to do; something to do
phək	very; quite
manhsimnita	[there]'re many; [there]'re plenty

12. Onil in hal il i phək manhsimnita. I have a lot of things to do today.

Roommate A

kilə sə	therefore; so
na hako	with me
kukyəng	show; sightseeing
kukyəng kamnita }	[I] go to a show; [I] go sight-
kukyəng-hamnita }	seeing; [I] look around

13. Kilə sə, na hako kukyəng an kakesse yo? Then, you won't go to a show with me?

Roommate B

mianhaci man	I'm sorry but...
na kamnita	[I] go out
na kal su əpsimnita	[I] cannot go out

14. Mianhaci man, onil in na kal su əpsimnita. I'm sorry but I can't go out today.

Roommate A

15. Kiləm, nəil in na wa kathi na kal su isskessə yo? Will you be able to go out with me tomorrow, then?

Roommate B

16. Ne, nəil il pappici anhkessimnita. Yes, I will not be busy tomorrow.
Nəil kathi na kapsita. Let's go out together tomorrow.

Roommate A

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| kitalikessə yo | [I]'ll wait |
|----------------|-------------|
17. Kiləmyən, nəil kkaci kitalikessə yo. Well, then, I'll wait until tomorrow.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

2. Cham 'really', 'very' is an adverb which occurs without pause before description verbs or other adverbs. It denotes intensification of the qualities of the following expression. Cham followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb which means 'by the way'.
7. Ta 'all', 'in all', 'thoroughly' is an adverb which occurs before inflected expressions (mostly verbals or sentences) to denote either completion or entirety. Alə til- ~ alə til- 'to understand', 'to comprehend' is a verb phrase which implies that someone 'listens and understands through ears'. The second verb in the verb phrase occurs in an alternative form tit- or til- which means 'listen to-' as an independent verb. In standard Korean, tit- occurs only in the following inflected forms: titsimnita/titsimnikka and titkessimnita/titkessimnikka; til- occurs elsewhere. Note that there are a few verb stems which are called the t-l alternative stems to which tit- ~ til- belongs. The inflections of this class of verbs are the same as tit- ~ til-.
8. Yənsip 'practice' is a noun. Its verb form yənsip-ha- 'to practice' occurs as a transitive verb.
9. Thim 'spare time', 'free time' is a free noun.
11. Nil 'always' is synonymous with hangsang 'all the time', ənce na 'all the time', ənce tinci 'all the time' and hangsi 'always'.
12. Phək 'quite', 'considerably', 'comparatively' is an adverb which occurs only before description verbs or other adverbs. It is used to imply that the degree of the following expression is more than the speaker's expectation.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ko

The verb ending -ko may be added to a verb stem, or to a stem plus other suffixes. However, if either the verb iss- or siph- succeeds without pause immediately after it, tense suffixes do not occur before the -ko ending. Since the inflected form ending in -ko (or simply the ko form) occurs always before other inflected expressions it is often called the Korean Gerund. The ko form occurs in the following three constructions:

(a) -ko + iss- 'be ---ing'

An action verb ending in -ko + iss-, denotes that the action of the verb in the ko form is in the process of occurring, or in the state of being. Tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in iss- but not in the ko form. Examples:

Ce nin ki yeca lil salang-hako issæ yo.	'I am in love with her.' ('As for me, I'm in the process of loving that woman.')
Hankuk mal il pæuko issimnita.	'[I] am studying Korean (now).'
ki ttæ e Sæul esæ salko issæssæ yo.	'[I] was living in Seoul at that time.'

(b) -ko + siph- and -ko siphe ha- 'want to-' and 'wants to-'

The verb siph- occurs only after the ko form. The construction -ko + siph- denotes the desire or hope of the sentence subject or topic for the action of the verb in the ko form. If the subject or topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee -ko + siphe ha- is used. The tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb siph- or siphe ha-.

Examples:

Ce nin yenghwa lil poko siphsimnita.	'I want to see a movie.'
Chinku lil mannako siphe yo?	'Do you want to meet a friend?'
Ceimsi ka Yenge lil kalichiko siphe hamnita.	'James wants to teach English.'

(c) -ko + verbs other than iss- or siph-

The ko form which may be followed by a pause also occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and tense suffixes may be added to the ko form, but if the subject or topic is the same for both verbs, tense suffixes occur only in the final verb. This construction (i.e. -ko followed by another verb) denotes that two actions and/or descriptions are expressed one after another with the one in the ko form occurring or being stated first. Examples:

Hankuk mal i elyepko, Yenge nin swipsimnita.	'Korean is difficult and English is easy.'
Kim Sənsəŋ in tæsa ka tweəssko, na nin kyosu ka tweəssə yo.	'Mr. Kim became an ambassador, and I became a professor.'
Cə nin mal il pæuko, wekuk e kako siphsimnita.	'I want to study the language and then go to a foreign country.'

2. -ci man '...but'

Man is a particle which, preceded by a nominal or an adverbial, means simply 'only', i.e. N + man 'only N'. The ci form + man which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression to denote that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Kakkyo ka mæci man, sikan i kili manhi kəllici anhsimnita.	'The school is far, but it doesn't take much time.'
Cə nin Hankuk mal il pæuci man, cə chinku nin Ilpon mal il kalichie yo.	'I am studying Korean, but my friend is teaching Japanese.'

3. -l/1l

We called the inflected form ending in -n/1n/n1n before a nominal the Present Noun-Modifier Word. (See Unit 5, Grammar Note 1.) The inflected form ending in -(1)l also occurs as a modifier of the following nominal, to denote the future action or description of, or for, the nominal. We shall call such an inflected form the Prospective Noun-Modifier Word, and the ending -(1)l the Prospective Modifier Ending. -1l is added to a consonant stem and -l to a vowel stem. The future tense suffix -kess- does not occur before -(1)l. Examples:

Ttenal kicha ka issimnita.	{ 'There is a <u>train which will leave</u> .'
	{ 'There is a <u>train to leave</u> .'

Næ ka ilkil chæk i əpsə yo.

'There is no book which I will read.'

Onil mannaŋ salam i nuku iei yo?

'Who is the man that [you] will meet
today?'

Hal il i manhsimnita.

'[I] have a lot work to do.'

4. Particle hako 'with', 'as', 'and'

Hako is an one-shape particle which can be substituted for the particle wa/kwa. (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 4.) Like wa/kwa, hako occurs in two constructions:

(a) Nominal + hako 'with Nominal', 'as Nominal', 'with Nominal'

Nominal + hako, which may occur before an inflected expression, is an adverbial expression.

Kim Sənsəŋ hako (kathi)

'I'll go with Kim.'

kakesse yo.

Chinku hako mal-həsse yo.

'I talked with a friend.'

i kəs hako kathin chæk

'a book the same as this' ('the
same book as this')

(b) Nominal 1 + hako + Nominal 2 = 'N1 and N2'

chæk hako yənphil

'a book and a pencil'

onil hako næil

'today and tomorrow'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Onil cənyək e yəŋghwa pole an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to see movies
this evening? |
| *2. Onil cənyək e <u>mulken sale</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go for shopping
('to buy goods') this evening? |
| 3. Onil cənyək e <u>kukyəng-hale</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to see a
show this evening? |
| 4. Onil cənyək e <u>chinku mannale</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to meet
friends this evening? |
| 5. Onil cənyək e <u>Hankuk mal pəule</u>
an kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to study
Korean this evening? |
| 6. Onil cənyək e <u>Hankuk mal yənsip-</u>
<u>hale</u> an kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to practice
Korean this evening? |
| *7. Onil cənyək e <u>untong-hale</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go for exercise
this evening? |
| *8. Onil cənyək e <u>sanpo-hale</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to take a walk
this evening? |
| 9. Onil cənyək e <u>sinə kukyəng-hale</u>
an kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go sightseeing
downtown this evening? |
| *10. Onil cənyək e <u>chum chule</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go for dancing
this evening? |
| *11. Onil cənyək e <u>sicang pole</u> an
kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go for food
shopping this evening? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yəŋghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita. | American movies are being shown at
the International Theatre. |
| 2. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Hankuk yəŋghwa</u>
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita. | Korean movies are being shown at
the International Theatre. |
| 3. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Ilpon yəŋghwa</u>
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita. | Japanese movies are being shown at
the International Theatre. |
| 4. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Tokil yəŋghwa</u>
lil sangəng-hako issimnita. | German movies are being shown at
the International Theatre. |

5. Kukce Kikcang esə Ithæli yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.
6. Kukce Kikcang esə Pullansə yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.
7. Kukce Kikcang esə wekuk yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.
8. Kukce Kikcang esə Yəngkuk yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.
9. Səul Kikcang esə Yəngkuk yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.
10. Sinæ Kikcang esə Yəngkuk yəngghwa
lil sangyəng-hako issimnita.

Italian movies are being shown at
the International Theatre.

French movies are being shown at the
International Theatre.

Foreign movies are being shown at
the International Theatre.

British movies are being shown at
the International Theatre.

British movies are being shown at
the Seoul Theatre.

British movies are being shown at
a theatre downtown.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin Hankuk yəngghwa lil poko
siphsimnita.
2. Na nin Səul sinæ lil poko
siphsimnita.
3. Na nin wekuk yangpok il poko
siphsimnita.
4. Na nin Han-Yəng sacən il poko
siphsimnita.
5. Na nin Kukce Kikcang il poko
siphsimnita.
6. Na nin yelə kaci lil poko
siphsimnita.
7. Na nin Mikuk Təsa lil poko
siphsimnita.
8. Na nin Tokil kunin il poko
siphsimnita.
9. Na nin hwesa sacang il poko
siphsimnita.
10. Na nin yəngsa pise lil poko
siphsimnita.

I want to see Korean movies.

I want to see downtown Seoul.

I want to see foreign (made) suits.

I want to see a Korean-English
dictionary.

I want to see the International
Theatre.

I want to see many kinds.

I want to see the American Ambassador.

I want to see German soldiers.

I want to see the president of the
company.

I want to see the secretary to the
consul.

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. Na nin yenghwa l1l poko siphe yo. | I want to see a movie. |
| 2. Na nin <u>Hankuk e kako</u> siphe yo. | I want to go to Korea. |
| 3. Na nin <u>i chæk il sako</u> siphe yo. | I want to buy this book. |
| 4. Na nin <u>Yengë l1l kalichiko</u> siphe yo | I want to teach English. |
| *5. Na nin <u>Hankuk yeksa l1l ilkko</u>
siphe yo. | I want to read Korean history. |
| 6. Na nin <u>catongcha l1l phalko</u> siphe
yo. | I want to sell [my] car. |
| 7. Na nin <u>yëca chinku l1l mannako</u>
siphe yo. | I want to meet my girl friend. |
| 8. Na nin <u>tapang e tilliko</u> siphe
yo. | I want to stop by a tearoom. |
| 9. Na nin sinæ l1l <u>kukyeng-hako</u> siphe
yo. | I want to look around downtown. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kakkim yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci
yo. | Sometimes I go to see the movies. |
| 2. <u>N1l</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci yo. | I always go to (see) the movies. |
| *3. <u>Hangsang</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci
yo. | I go to (see) the movies all the
time. |
| *4. <u>Ttæ ttæ lo</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci
yo. | I go to (see) the movies
occasionally. |
| 5. <u>Pam mata</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci
yo. | I go to (see) the movies every night. |
| 6. <u>Cuil mata</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci
yo. | I go to (see) the movies every week. |
| 7. <u>Han cuil e han pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)
pole kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies once a
week. |
| 8. <u>Han tal e tu pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)
pole kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies twice a
month. |
| 9. <u>Il nyen e se pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)
pole kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies three
times a year. |
| *10. <u>Cacu</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies frequently. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| *11. <u>Cumal mata</u> yenghwa (111) polə
kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies every week-
end. |
| *12. <u>Mæil</u> yenghwa (111) polə kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies everyday. |
| *13. <u>Mæcu(11)</u> yenghwa (111) polə kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies every week. |
| *14. <u>Mæwel</u> yenghwa (111) polə kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies every month. |
| *15. <u>Mænyen</u> yenghwa (111) polə kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies every year. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Onil in hal il 1 manhsimnita. | I have a lot of things to do today. |
| 2. Onil in <u>ilkil chæk</u> (1) manhsimnita. | I have a lot of books to read today. |
| 3. Onil in <u>manna1 salam</u> (1) manhsimnita. | I have a lot of people to meet today. |
| 4. Onil in <u>ol salam</u> (1) manhsimnita. | There are a lot of people to come
today. |
| 5. Onil in <u>kitail1 salam</u> (1)
manhsimnita. | There are a lot of people to wait
for today. |
| 6. Onil in <u>ttenal pæ</u> (ka) manhsimnita. | There are a lot of ships which will
leave today. |
| 7. Onil il <u>sal mulkən</u> (1) manhsimnita. | There are a lot of things to buy
today. |
| 8. Onil in <u>kalichil haksəng</u> (1)
manhsimnita. | There are a lot of students to
teach today. |
| 9. Onil in <u>mule pol mal</u> (1)
manhsimnita. | I have a lot of things to ask about
today. |
| 10. Onil in <u>tillil sangcəm</u> (1)
manhsimnita. | There are many stores to stop by
today. |
| 11. Onil in <u>sicak-hal il</u> (1)
manhsimnita. | I have a lot of work to begin today. |
| *12. Onil in <u>ssil phyenci</u> (ka)
manhsimnita. | I have a lot of letters to write
today. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>nal kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go out now. |
| 2. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>hal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot do [it] now. |
| 3. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kitalil su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot wait for
[you] now. |
| 4. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>ttenal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot leave now. |
| 5. Mianhaci man, cikim (<u>Hankuk mal</u>
<u>il</u>) <u>kalichil su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot teach (Korean)
now. |
| 6. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kathi kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go with [you]
now. |
| 7. Mianhaci man, cikim (<u>tangsin cip</u>
<u>e</u>) <u>tillil su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot stop by
(your house) now. |
| 8. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>il il sicak-hal</u>
<u>su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot start work
now. |
| 9. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kukyeng kal</u>
<u>su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go sight-
seeing now. |
| 10. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>cip e issil</u>
<u>su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot be at home
now. |
| 11. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tola kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go back
now. |
| *12. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tola ol su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot come back
now. |
| *13. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tile ol su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot come in
now. |
| *14. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tile kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go in now. |
| *15. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>na ol su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot come out
now. |
| *16. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>na kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go out
now. |
| *17. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>olla ol su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot come up now. |
| *18. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>olla kal su</u>
<u>epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot go up now. |

H. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i cæmi issimnita.
2. Yenge (ka) cæmi issimnita.
3. Chæk (il) i(l)kki (ka) issimnita.
4. Sæul e salki (ka) cæmi issimnita.
5. Mal pæuki (ka) cæmi issimnita.
6. Il-haki (ka) cæmi issimnita.
7. Kalichiki (ka) cæmi issimnita.
8. Hakkyo e taniki (ka) cæmi issimnita.
9. inæng e kinmu-haki (ka) cæmi
issimnita.
10. Thipi poki (ka) cæmi issimnita.

Korean is interesting.
 English is interesting.
 Reading books is interesting.
 Living in Seoul is interesting.
 Learning a language is interesting.
 Working is interesting.
 Teaching is interesting.
 Attending school is interesting.
 Working in a bank is interesting.
 Watching TV is interesting.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Na wa kathi kakesse yo?
2. Chinku (wa) kathi okesse yo?
3. Sænsæng (kwa) kathi mækkesse yo?
4. Cæ yæca (wa) kathi na kakesse yo?
5. Puin (kwa) kathi tillikesse yo?
6. Pise (wa) kathi mal-hakesse yo?
- *7. Mikuk Tæsa (wa) kathi insa-hakesse
yo?
8. Kunin (kwa) kathi nolkesse yo?
9. Yængsa (wa) kathi ttenakesse yo?
10. Yæca chinku (wa) kathi kukyæng
kakesse yo?
11. Uli (wa) kathi okesse yo?
12. Yehaksæng (kwa) kathi na kakesse
yo?
13. æmeni (wa) kathi tola kakesse
yo?
14. Tæthongyæng (kwa) kathi tola okesse
yo?

Will you go with me?
 Will you come with a friend?
 Will you eat with [your] teacher?
 Will you go out with that girl?
 Will you stop by with your wife?
 Will you talk with your secretary?
 Will you greet with the American
Ambassador?
 Will you play with a soldier?
 Will you leave with the consul?
 Will you go sightseeing with your
girl friend?
 Will you come with us?
 Will you go out with a girl student?
 Will you go back with your mother?
 will you come back with the President?

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>mal-</u>
<u>hasipsiyo.</u> | Please talk with Mr. Kim. |
| 2. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>kongpu-</u>
<u>hasipsiyo.</u> | Please study with Mr. Kim. |
| 3. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>yəki esə</u>
<u>kitalisipsiyo.</u> | Please wait here with Mr. Kim. |
| 4. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>kɪ kəs ɪl</u>
<u>ɪlkisipsiyo.</u> | Please read it with Mr. Kim. |
| 5. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>ɪl-hasipsiyo.</u> | Please work with Mr. Kim. |
| 6. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>sɪcak-</u>
<u>hasipsiyo.</u> | Please start with Mr. Kim. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəŋ kwa kathi <u>pəusipsiyo.</u> | Please study with Mr. Kim. |

K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Uli nin Hankuk mal ɪl kongpu-
hamnita.

'We study Korean.'

Student: Uli nin Hankuk mal ɪl kongpu-
hako issimnita.

'We're studying Korean now.'

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Cikim hakkyo e kamnita. | Cikim hakkyo e kako issimnita.
('[I]'m on [my] way to school now.') |
| 2. Kikcang esə Mikuk Yəŋghwa ɪɪl
sangyəŋg-hamnita. | Kikcang esə Mikuk Yəŋghwa ɪɪl
sangyəŋg-hako issimnita. |
| 3. Aɪ ka thɪpɪ ɪɪl pomnita. | Aɪ ka thɪpɪ ɪɪl poko issimnita. |
| 4. Sənsəŋ ɪ kalichimnita. | Sənsəŋ ɪ kalichiko issimnita. |
| 5. Nal mata Hankuk mal ɪl pəumnita. | Nal mata Hankuk mal ɪl pəuko
issimnita. |
| 6. Cohɪn sacən ɪl wənhamnita. | Cohɪn sacən ɪl wənhako issimnita. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəŋ ɪn wekuk salam ɪl
mannamnita. | Kim Sənsəŋ ɪn wekuk salam ɪl
mannako issimnita. |
| 8. Na nin Kim Sənsəŋ cip ɪl
chacsimnita. | Na nin Kim Sənsəŋ cip ɪl chacko
issimnita. |
| 9. Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ ɪn Mikuk təsakwan
esə ɪl-hamnita. | Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ ɪn Mikuk təsakwan
esə ɪl-hako issimnita. |

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəŋ in Hankuk mal il
kalichyə yo?

Student: Ne, cikim kalichiko issimnita.

1. Ceimsi Sənsəŋ i təsakwan esə il-hə
yo?
2. Kicha ka ttena yo?
3. Salam til i pihəŋki lil tha yo?
4. Mikuk təsə ka pihəŋki esə nəlyə
yo?
5. Tangsin in hakkyo e tanyə yo?
6. Chinku lil kitalyə yo?
7. Səul yək e kanin kil il alə yo?
8. Hankuk mal il manhi pəwə yo?
9. Kim Sənsəŋ il chace yo?
10. Kikcang esə Mikuk yəŋghwa lil
sangyəŋg-hə yo?
11. Hankuk mal il yənsip-hə yo?

'Does Mr. Park teach Korean?'

'Yes, he's teaching [it] now.'

- Ne, cikim təsakwan esə il-hako
issimnita.
- Ne, cikim ttenako issimnita.
- Ne, cikim thako issimnita.
- Ne, cikim nəliko issimnita.
- Ne, cikim taniko issimnita.
- Ne, cikim kitaliko issimnita.
- Ne, cikim alko issimnita.
('Yes, I'm aware of it now.')
- Ne, cikim manhi pəuko issimnita.
- Ne, cikim chacko issimnita.
- Ne, cikim sangyəŋg-hako issimnita.
- Ne, cikim yənsip-hako issimnita.

M. Response Drill

Tutor: K1 ttə e Hankuk mal il kongpu-
hako issəssimnikka?

Student: Ne, n1 ttə e Hankuk mal il
kongpu-hako issəssə yo.

'Were you studying Korean at that
time?'

'Yes, I was studying Korean at that
time.'

1. K1 ttə e hakkyo e kako issəssimnikka? Ne, k1 ttə e hakkyo e kako issəssə
yo.
2. K1 ttə e Mikuk yəŋghwa lil
sangyəŋg-hako issəssimnikka? Ne, k1 ttə e Mikuk yəŋghwa lil
sangyəŋg-hako issəssə yo.
3. K1 ttə e Yəŋgə lil kalichiko
issəssimnikka? Ne, k1 ttə e Yəŋgə lil kalichiko
issəssə yo.
4. K1 ttə e wekuk salam il mannako
issəssimnikka? Ne, k1 ttə e wekuk salam il mannako
issəssə yo.
5. K1 ttə e Kim Sənsəŋ cip il chacko
issəssimnikka? Ne, k1 ttə e Kim Sənsəŋ cip il
chacko issəssə yo.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. K1 ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan esə
il-hako issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan esə
il-hako issəssə yo. |
| 7. K1 ttæ e yəngħwa l1l pokə
issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e yəngħwa l1l pokə issəssə
yo. |
| 8. K1 ttæ e Mikuk esə hakkyo e taniko
issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e Mikuk esə hakkyo e
taniko issəssə yo. |
| 9. K1 ttæ e chinku l1l kitaliko
issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e chinku l1l kitaliko
issəssə yo. |
| 10. K1 ttæ e kicha esə næliko
issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e kicha esə næliko
issəssə yo. |

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs il salyəko hamnikka?
/moca/

'What are you going to buy?' /hat/

Student: Moca l1l sako siphsimnita.

'I want } to buy a hat.'
'I'd like }

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nuku l1l mannalyəko hamnikka?
/Ceims1 Sənsəng/ | Ceims1 Sənsəng il mannako siphsimnita. |
| 2. əti esə il-halyəko hamnikka?
/Mikuk Təsakwan/ | Mikuk Təsakwan esə il-hako
siphsimnita. |
| 3. ənce Wəsingthon il ttənalyəko
hamnikka? /təim tal/ | Təim tal e ttənako siphsimnita. |
| 4. Musin yəoil e sicang e kalyəko
hamnikka? /Thoyəoil/ | Thoyəoil e kako siphsimnita. |
| 5. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəulyəko
hamnikka? /yəl tal/ | Yəl tal tongan pəuko siphsimnita. |
| 6. Musin yəngħwa l1l polyəko hamnikka?
/Hankuk yəngħwa/ | Hankuk yəngħwa l1l pokə siphsimnita. |
| 7. On1l əte issilyəko hamnikka? /cip/ | Cip e issko siphsimnita. |
| 8. əti e t1ll1lyəko hamnikka? /chinku
samusil/ | Chinku samusil e t1ll1ko siphsimnita. |
| 9. ən1 tal e hyuka l1l patilyəko
hamnikka? /Phal-wəl/ | Phal-wəl e (hyuka l1l) patko
siphsimnita. |
| 10. əti esə nælilyəko hamnikka?
/sichəng aph/ | Sichəng aph esə næliko siphsimnita. |

11. Mues ilo Hankuk e kalyeko hamnikka? Pihængki lo kako siphsimnita.
/pihængki/
12. ence ccim Mikuk e tola kalyeko I nyen hu e tola kako siphsimnita.
hamnikka? /i nyen hu/

0. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Ceimsi nin Səul ese sal(1)yeko
hamnita.

'James intends to live in Seoul.'

Student: Cemisi nin Səul ese salko
siphe hæ yo.

'James wants to live in Seoul.'

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sensəng in onil yənghwa lil
polyeko hamnita. | Kim Sensəng in onil yənghwa lil
poko siphe hæ yo. |
| 2. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e
tanilyeko hamnita. | Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e
taniko siphe hæ yo. |
| 3. Chwe Sensəng in Səul e halu tongan
issilyeko hamnita. | Chwe Sensəng in Səul e halu tongan
issko siphe hæ yo. |
| 4. Haksəng in næil sinə e na kalyeko
hamnita. | Haksəng in næil sinə e na kako
siphe hæ yo. |
| 5. Salam til in wekuk il kukyəng-
halyeko hamnita. | Salam til in wekuk il kukyəng-hako
siphe hæ yo. |
| 6. Pak Sensəng in Yəngə lil kalichilyeko
hamnita. | Pak Sensəng in Yəngə lil kalichiko
siphe hæ yo. |
| 7. Ki salam in Hankuk inhəng ese
il-halyeko hamnita. | Ki salam in Hankuk inhəng ese
il-hako siphe hæ yo. |
| 8. Cə e chinku nin hyuka lil patilyeko
hamnita. | Cə e chinku nin hyuka lil patko
siphe hæ yo. |

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lɪl
pəuko siphe hæ yo?

Student: Ne, phək pəuko siphe hamnita.

'Does Mr. Kim want to study English?'

'Yes, [he] wants to study [it] very much.'

1. Kɪ chinku nɪn hyuka lɪl patko
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək patko siphe hamnita.

2. Kɪ salam in Hankuk inhəng e kinmu-
hako siphe hæ yo?

Ne, (Hankuk inhəng e) phək kinmu-
hako siphe hamnita.

3. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal ɪl
kalichiko siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək kalichiko siphe hamnita.

4. Chwə Sənsəng in khəphi lɪl masiko
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək masiko siphe hamnita.

5. Kim Sənsəng in təmpə lɪl phiuko
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək phiuko siphe hamnita.

6. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e
taniko siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək taniko siphe hamnita.

7. Haksəng i Hankuk mal ɪl yənsip-
hako siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək yənsip-hako siphe hamnita.

8. Cə ai ka lətiyo lɪl titko siphe
hæ yo?

Ne, phək titko siphe hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lɪl
kalichiko siphe hamnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kalichiko siphe haci
anhə yo.

'Does Mr. Kim want to teach English?'

'No, he doesn't (want to teach).'

1. Kɪ yəca ka kɪkcang e kako siphe
hamnikka?

Aniyo, kako siphe haci anhə yo.

2. Kɪ chinku ka hyuka lɪl patko
siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, patko siphe haci anhə yo.

3. Chwə Sənsəng in khəphi lɪl masiko
siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, masiko siphe haci anhə yo.

4. Hankuk haksəng tɪl i Mikuk hakkyo
e taniko siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, (Mikuk hakkyo e) taniko
siphe haci anhə yo.

5. Ceimsi Sənsəng i Mikuk tæsa ka
tweko siphe hamnikka?
6. Ki salam i mal il mule poko siphe
hamnikka?
7. Mikuk yəngsa ka Mikuk e tola kako
siphe hamnikka?
8. Cə ai ka Yəngə chæk il ilkko siphe
hamnikka?

- Aniyo, (Mikuk tæsa ka) tweko siphe
haci anhe yo.
- Aniyo, mule poko siphe haci anhe
yo.
- Aniyo, tola kako siphe haci anhe
yo.
- Aniyo, ilkko siphe haci anhe yo.

R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnita.
Kiləhci man, cəmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult. However, it's
interesting.'

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəpci man,
cəmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it is
interesting.'

1. Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Kiləhci
man, swipci anhsimnita.
2. Na nin pə lo kamnita. Kiləhci
man, Kim Sənsəng in kicha lo
kamnita.
3. Pihəngki ka ttenamnita. Kiləhci
man, ppəsi nin tahsimnita.
4. Cə nin pappimnita. Kiləhci man,
talin salam in pappici anhsimnita.
5. Hankuk mal il alə titsimnita.
Kiləhci man, ilkei mot hamnita.
6. I kilim il cohahamnita. Kiləhci
man, phək pissamnita.
7. Haksəng i manhsimnita. Kiləhci
man, sənsəng in əpsimnita.
8. Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalimnita.
Kiləhci man, ki yəca nin oci
anhsimnita.
9. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhəng e
kinmu-hamnita. Kiləhci man,
puncuhaci anhsimnita.

Hankuk mal il pəuci man, swipci
anhsimnita.

Na nin pə lo kaci man, Kim Sənsəng
in kicha lo kamnita.

Pihəngki ka ttenaci man, ppəsi nin
tahsimnita.

Cə nin pappici man, talin salam in
pappici anhsimnita.

Hankuk mal il alə titci man, ilkei
mot hamnita.

I kilim il cohahaci man, phək
pissamnita.

Haksəng i manhci man, sənsəng in
əpsimnita.

Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalici man,
ki yəca nin oci anhsimnita.

Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhəng e kinmu-
haci man, puncuhaci anhsimnita.

10. Il e cæmi ka issimnita. Kilehci
man, hal il i phæk manhsimnita.

Il e cæmi ka issci man, hal il i
phæk manhsimnita.

S. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kicha ka ohu e ttënamnita.

'A train is leaving in the afternoon.'

Student: Ohu e ttënal kicha ka
issimnita.

'There's a train which will leave
in the afternoon.'

1. Onil haksæng i omnita.
2. Ohu e chinku lil mannamnita.
3. Chæk il samnita.
4. Il il sicak-hamnita.
5. Ppesi lil thamnita.
6. Hakkyo e tanimnita.
7. Hankuk mal chæk il ilksimnita.
8. Cip esë yëca lil kitalimnita.
9. Han-si e kicha ka tahsimnita.

- Onil ol haksæng i issimnita.
Ohu e mannal chinku ka issimnita.
Sal chæk i issimnita.
Sicak-hal il i issimnita.
Thal ppesi ka issimnita.
Tanil hakkyo ka issimnita.
Ilkil Hankuk mal chæk i issimnita.
Cip esë kitalil yëca ka issimnita.
Han-si e tahil kicha ka issimnita.

T. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk mal il ëlyëpci man,

'Korean is difficult but...'

Student: Hankuk mal il ëlyëpci man,
cæmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's
interesting.'

1. Yënghwa lil cohahaci man,
2. Sikan i ëpsci man,
3. Hankuk mal il pëuci man,
4. Kicha ka ttënaci man,
5. Pihængki nin tahci man,
6. Ki yëca lil mannaci man,
7. Hakkyo e tanici man,
8. Yocim com puncuhaci man,
9. Hankuk mal il alë titci man,
10. Onil hal il i issci man,
11. Cikim chinku lil kitalici man,
12. Mikuk esë salko siphci man,
13. Hankil il ilkeci mot haci man,

14. Na nin Mikuk salam ici man,
 15. Onil mom i com aphici man,

U. Combination Drill

Tutor: Kicha nin ttenasse yo. Ppesi
 nin tahasse yo.

Student: Kicha nin ttenassko, ppesi
 nin tahasse yo.

1. Ce nin Yenge lil pæwæ yo. Ceimsi
 nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo.
2. æce Hankuk imsik il mækessæ yo.
 Onil in Cungkuk imsik il mækkessæ
 yo.
3. Na nin Hankuk yenghwa lil cohahæ
 yo. Miss Chwe nin Ilpon
 yenghwa lil poko siphe hæ yo.
4. Na nin puncuhæ yo. Ce chinku nin
 sikan i manhi issæ yo.
5. Tæhak pyengwæn in kakkawæ yo.
 (The University hospital is near.)
 Cungang Tosækwan in com mælæ
 yo.
 (The Central Library is a
 little far.)

'The train has left. The bus has
 arrived.'

'The train has left and the bus has
 arrived.'

Ce nin Yenge lil pæuko, Ceimsi nin
 Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo.
 æce Hankuk imsik il mækæssko, onil
 in Cungkuk imsik il mækkæssæ yo.

Na nin Hankuk yenghwa lil cohahako,
 Miss Chwe nin Ilpon yenghwa lil
 poko siphe hæ yo.

Na nin puncuhako, ce chinku nin
 sikan i manhi issæ yo.

Tæhak pyengwæn in kakkapko, Cungang
 Tosækwan in com mælæ yo.

EXERCISES

1. Tell Miss Choe: (Once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech)
 - a. that you want to see Korean movies.
 - b. that you are practicing Korean now.
 - c. that you are not free now.
 - d. that you don't understand Korean well.
 - e. that you have lots of things to do.
 - f. that you are busy all the time.
 - g. that you have a friend to meet this afternoon.
 - h. that you can't go out tonight.
 - i. that you were waiting for Miss Brown at that time.
 - j. that learning a language is not interesting.
 - k. that you have many letters to write.
 - l. that you cannot finish the work by 4 o'clock.
 - m. that you go to see the Korean movies occasionally.
 - n. that American movies are shown at the International Theatre twice a month.
 - o. that you don't want to go out frequently.
 - p. that your girl friend doesn't want to take a walk.
 - q. that the students were eating in the dining hall.
 - r. that you cannot come out now.
 - s. that the children cannot come in the room now.
 - t. that you cannot go into the military (service).
 - u. that your wife cannot go up the building on foot.
 - v. that you are coming up the street.
 - w. that there are many students but not many teachers.
 - x. that German is easy and Korean is hard.
 - y. that you want to go out to see movies but you don't have time.
 - z. that the housing is expensive and is not good.
- z1. You cannot go back to School now.
- z2. Your Korean friend came back from the U.S.

2. You ask Miss Brown:

- a. what she wants to see.
- b. what she would like to do today.
- c. where the American movies are being shown.
- d. how she likes (or how it is) living in Seoul.
- e. how long she is going to stay in Korea (or in Washington).
- f. if she can go out with you tonight.
- g. if she wouldn't go dancing on the coming Saturday.
- h. if she goes for food shopping everyday.
- i. if she likes sports.
- j. if she doesn't want to sightsee downtown.
- k. if she can't wait for you.

Miss Brown answers:

- 'I'd like to see your new car.'
- 'I want to stay home.'
- 'They are being shown at the Central Theatre.'
- 'Not too bad.'
- 'About three or four years.'
- 'I'd like to but I cannot go out tonight.'
- 'I'm sorry but I'll be busy that day.'
- 'No, twice a week.'
- 'Yes, I do very much.'
- 'I have already done some sightseeing downtown.'
- 'Why not. I'll wait for you.'

제 10 과 시내 구경

먼저

가고 싶습니까

1. 김 : 어디에 먼저 가고 싶습니까?

2. 스미스 : 다방에 먼저 들립시다.

누구

(누구) 만날 사람

3. 김 : 누구 만날 사람이 있습니까?

커피 한 잔

마시면

마셨으면 좋겠습니다

4. 스미스 : 커피 한 잔 마셨으면 좋겠습니다.

가면

5. 김 : 먼저 시내로 갑시다. 시내에 가면 좋은
다방이 많이 있습니다.

이 부근

6. 스미스 : 이 부근에는 다방이 없어요?

있어도

그리 좋지 않습니다

7. 김 : 이 부근에 다방이 있어도 그리 좋지 않습니다.

UNIT 10. Going Around the Town

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Kim

- mence
 kako siphsimnikka
 1. eti e mence kako sipsimnikka?

first; above all
 do you want to go
 Where do you want to go first?

Smith

2. Tapang e mence tillipsita.

Let's stop by a tearoom first.

Kim

- nuku
 (nuku) mannal salam
 3. Nuku mannal salam i issimnikka?

anybody; somebody; who?
 somebody to meet
 Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you
 have anyone to meet?')

Smith

- khephi han can
 masimyen
 masyessimyen cohkessimnita
 4. Khephi han can masyessimyen
 cohkessimnita.

a cup of coffee
 if [I] drink
 (if [I] drank, [it]'ll be nice)
 I'd like to have a cup of coffee.
 ('If I drank a cup of coffee, it
 would be nice.')

Kim

- kamyen
 5. Mence sinæ lo kapsita. Sinæ e
 kamyen, cohin tapang i manhi
 issimnita.

if [we] go
 Let's go downtown first. There are
 good tearooms downtown. ('If
 [we] go downtown there are a lot
 of tearooms.')

Smith

- i pukin
 6. I pukin e nin tapang i epse yo?

this area; this vicinity
 Aren't there any tearooms in this
 area?

얼마나
얼마나 먼지
시내까지

8. 스미스 : 여기에서 시내까지 얼마나 먼지?

아주
걸어서

9. 김 : 아주 가깝습니다. 걸어서 십 오 분 쯤 걸립니다.

버스나 전차
타입니다

10. 스미스 : 버스나 전차는 다니지 않습니까?

합승

11. 김 : 왜요? 버스, 전차, 택시, 그리고 합승도 있습니다.

그 것들
그(것들) 중 에서
어느 편
제일
편리
편리합니다
제일 편리합니다

12. 스미스 : 그(것들) 중 에서 어느 편이 제일 편리한지?

Kim

isse to

even though there are; there
are but...

kili cohci anhsimnita

[it] is not so good

7. I pukin e tapang i isse to, kili
cohci anhsimnita.

[Yes], there are [some], but they
are not very good.

Smith

elma na

how; how much

elma na memnikka

how far is [it]?

sinæ kkaci

as far as downtown

8. Yeki ese sinæ kkaci elma na
memnikka?

How far is downtown from here?

Kim

acu

really; very; extremely

kelæ sæ

on foot

9. Acu kakkapsimnita. Kelæ sæ
sip-o pun ccim kellimnita.

It is very close. It only takes
about fifteen minutes to walk.

Smith

ppesi na cëncha

bus or streetcar

tanimnita

('[I] go and come regularly.')

10. Ppesi na cëncha nin tanici
anhsimnikka?

Aren't there any buses or streetcars
running?

Kim

hapsing

jitney

11. Wæ yo? Ppesi, cëncha, thækssi,
kiliko hapsing to issimnita.

Yes, there are. ('Why?') There
are buses, streetcars, taxis and
even jitneys.

바릅니다

가장 바릅니다

바르고 편리합니다

13. 김 : 합승이 가장 바르고 (가장) 편리합니다.

자주

얼마나 자주

다니는가요

14. 스미스 : 예, 그렇습니까? 합승은 얼마나 자주 다니는가요?

십오분에 한 번

버잡합니다

15. 김 : 대개 십오분에 한 번 있지만, 아침과 저녁에는 좀 버잡합니다.

Smith

k1 kəs tɪl

they; those (things)

k1 (kəs tɪl) cʊŋ esə

among them; among those

ənɪ phyən

which side; which way

ceɪl

number one

phyɛlli

convenience

phyɛlli-hamnita

[it]'s convenient

ceɪl phyɛlli-hamnita

[it]'s most convenient

12. K1 (kəs tɪl) cʊŋ esə ənɪ phyən
 ɪ ceɪl phyɛlli-hamnɪkka?

Which is the most convenient (among them)? ('Among those things which one is the most convenient?')

Kim

ppalɪmnita

[it]'s fast ; [it]'s quick

kacang ppalɪmnita

[it]'s fastest

ppalɪko phyɛlli-hamnita

[it]'s fast and convenient

13. Hapsɪŋ ɪ kacang ppalɪko, (kacang)
 phyɛlli-hamnita.

A jitney is the fastest and the most convenient.

Smith

cacu

frequently; often

əlma na cacu

how often?

tanɪnɪn ka yo

does [it] run?

14. Ne, kɪləhsɪmnɪkka? Hapsɪŋ ɪn
 əlma na cacu tanɪnɪn ka yo?

Is that right? How often do the jitneys run?

Kim

sɪp-o pun e han pən

every fifteen minutes ('once at 15 minutes')

pəncap-hamnita

[it]'s crowded

15. Təkə sɪp-o pun e han pən ɪssɪ
 man, aɪm kwa cənyək e nɪn
 com pəncap-hamnita.

They usually run every fifteen minutes but they are rather crowded in the morning and in the evening.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogue.)

1. Mence 'first', 'ahead', is an adverb which occurs before verbs and denotes priority for the following inflected expressions. Mence followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb, meaning 'in the first place', 'above all'.
3. Nuku mannal salam i issimnikka? 'Are you meeting somebody?' ('Is there anybody to meet?') ends in a rising intonation with a stress on the first syllable of mannal.
4. Khēphi han can masyessimyen cohkessimnita. ('If [I] drank a cup of coffee, [it] will be good.') occurs with or without a pause after the -(1)myen form. The pattern -(a, ə)ssimyen cohkessimnita, which is the -(1)myen form with the past tense suffix plus the verb coh- in the future tense, is used to express the desire of the speaker or the addressee (See Grammar Note 1).
6. Pukin 'vicinity' is a post-noun which, together with the preceding noun, makes a noun phrase:

i pukin	'this area', 'this vicinity'
hakkyo pukin	'the vicinity of the school'
9. Acu 'very', 'extremely' is an adverb which occurs before description verbs or other adverbs, and denotes the extreme degree of the following inflected expressions. Kelə sə 'on foot' is an adverbial phrase. Kelə is the infinitive of the verb kəl- 'to walk'; sə is a particle. (We will learn more about the particle sə later.) Kelə sə here should be memorized as it is as the Korean equivalent of the English phrase 'on foot'.
12. Til is a post-noun which occurs after a countable nominal and denotes plurality. Til does not occur after a numeral expression and/or a numeral + counter. In other words, if the nominal is specified by number, til is not used. Cung is a post-noun which occurs in the following types of adverbial phrases.

- (a) Name of time + cung + e {^{'during'}_{'in'}} + the name of time'
- Il-wel cung e {^{'in January'}_{'during January'}
- onil cung e 'within today'
- kimnyen cung e {^{'in this year'}_{'within this year'}
- (b) Countable Noun + cung + esə 'among + Countable Noun'
- hakkyo til cung esə 'among the schools'
- nala cung esə 'among the countries'

15. Pencap-ha-ta 'is crowded' is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by a place name or a mode of transportation as the subject or topic of the sentence.

- Kil i pencap-hamnita. 'The street is crowded.'
- Kikcang i pencap-hæ yo? 'Is the theatre crowded?'
- Kyothong i pencap-hamnita. 'There is a traffic jam.'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -myen/Imyen 'if (when) X does something', 'if (when) X is such and such'

The inflected form ending in -(1)myen (or simply the -(1)myen form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)myen form; -myen is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -Imyen to a stem ending in a consonant. The -(1)myen form indicates that the condition or time of the action or description takes place for the following inflected expression. Examples:

- Pi ka omyen, cip e isskessə yo. 'If it rains, I will be home.'
- Hankuk e kamyen, Səul esə kinmu- 'If I go to Korea } I'd like to
hako siphsimnita. 'When I go to Korea }
work in Seoul.'
- Wesington e omyen, ce cip e to 'If you come to Washington, come to
ose yo. my house, too.'

Remember that the pattern -(a,ə)ssImyen cohkessimnita. ('If [I] did..., [it] will be good.') is used to express the speaker's wish or desire.

2. Infinitive + to 'even though____,' 'although____,'

In Unit 5 we learned that the particle to after a nominal means 'also', 'too', 'even'. To occurs not only after nominals but also after a small number of inflected forms. Most Korean particles occur after nominals, but note that there also is a small class of particles which occur after other classes of words (e.g. inflected words). The construction Infinitive + to, followed by a pause occurring before another inflected expression, denotes concession to the following inflection expression. The tense suffixes may occur in the Infinitive which precedes to. Compare Infinitive + to with the construction -ci man 'but' for its meaning. Note that the pattern Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka? / Inf. + to + kwanchanhsimnikka? ('Even if [I] do.., is it o.k.?') is used to get permission or consent from the addressee. In English the pattern 'May I...?' is usually used as the equivalent of the above Korean pattern. The usual 'yes' response to Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka? is Ne, Infinitive + to + cohsimnita. 'Yes, you man...'. 'No' response is either -ci masipsiyo or -ci anhın kes i cohkessimnita. (See Grammar Notes, Unit 11.) Examples:

Sinæ e tapang i issæ to, kilł cohci anhsimnita.	'Even though there are tearooms, [they] are not very good.'
Pi ka wa to, hakkyo e kakesse yo.	'Even if it rains, I will go to school.'
Cæ yæca lıl han pæn mannasæ to, ilım ıl molimnita.	'Although I met her once I don't know [her] name.'
Hwesa ka com mæle to, kæle sæ ıl-hale tanimnita.	'My office is a little far, but I go to work on foot.'
Kyosil esæ khæphi lıl masiæ to cohsimnikka?	'May I drink coffee in the class- room?'

3. Ceil } 'the most____'
Kacang }

The adverb ceil (or its equivalent kacang) occurs before a verbal, noun-modifier word or another adverb, and denotes the superlative degree of the following expression. Compare:

(a) Hapsing i phyelli-hamnita.	'Jitney is convenient.'
Hapsing i tæ phyelli-hamnita.	'Jitney is more convenient.'
Hapsing i {kacang} {ceil} phyelli- hamnita.	'Jitney is most convenient.'

- | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (b) | yeppin yeca | '(a) pretty woman' |
| | te yeppin yeca | 'prettier woman' |
| | ceil } yeppin yeca | 'the prettiest woman' |
| | kacang } | |
| (c) | Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il cal | 'James speaks Korean well.' |
| | hamnita. | |
| | Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il te | 'James speaks Korean better.' |
| | cal hamnita. | |
| | Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il | 'James speaks Korean best.' |
| | ceil } | |
| | kacang } cal hamnita. | |

4. Particle na/ina

Na occurs after a nominal ending in a vowel; ina after a nominal ending in a consonant. Na/ina occurs in the following constructions:

- (a) Nominal 1 + na/ina + Nominal 2 'N 1 or N 2', 'either N 1 or N 2'
 Between two nominals na/ina denotes selection of one of the two, N 1 or N 2.

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Yenphil ina mannyenphil il | 'Give me a pencil or pen.' |
| cusipsiyo. | |
| Onil ina naeil i cohsimnita. | 'Either today or tomorrow is O.K.' |
| Welyoil ina Hwayoil e tola | 'Please come back either Monday or |
| osipsiyo. | Tuesday.' |

- (b) Question Nominal + na/ina = adverbial phrases

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| mues ina | { 'anything' |
| | { 'whatever [it] may be' |
| nuku na | { 'anybody' |
| | { 'whoever [he] may be' |
| ence na | { 'anytime' |
| | { 'whenever [it] may be' |
| eti na | { 'anywhere' |
| | { 'no matter where [it] may be' |
| elma na | { 'how much' |
| | { 'how long' |
| elma na cacu | 'how often' |

(c) Nominal + na/ina, followed by an inflected expression, denotes choice of the nominal among others for the following inflected expression.

Onil in yenghwa na pole
kapsita.

'Let's go to see, say, movies.'

Khaphi ka epsimyen, hongcha
na hal kka yo?

'If they don't have coffee, shall
we have, say, black tea?'

Ca, onil in kukyeng ina kaci
yo.

'Say, how about going to a show
today.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Məncə tapang e tillipsita. | Let's stop by a tearoom first. |
| 2. Məncə <u>nə samusil</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by my office first. |
| 3. Məncə <u>Kukuce Uphyənkuk</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the International Post Office first. |
| 4. Məncə <u>hakkyo chəkpang</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the campus bookstore first. |
| *5. Məncə <u>Cungkuk imsikcəm</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by a Chinese restaurant first. |
| *6. Məncə <u>Səul Təhakkyo</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by Seoul University first. |
| *7. Məncə <u>pakmulkwən</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the museum first. |
| *8. Məncə <u>kyəngchalse</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the police station first. |
| *9. Məncə <u>Səul Koting Hakkyo</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the Seoul High School first. |
| *10. Məncə <u>pyəngwən</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the hospital first. |
| *11. Məncə <u>tosəkwan</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the library first. |
| *12. Məncə <u>yakpang</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the drugstore first. |
| *13. Məncə <u>tongmul-wən</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the zoo first. |
| *14. Məncə <u>kyohwe</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the church first. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mannal salam i issimnikka? | Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?') |
| 2. <u>Hal il</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have any work to do? |
| 3. <u>Pol yəngghwa</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Are there any movies to see? |
| 4. <u>Tillil tapang</u> (i) issimnikka? | Is there a tearoom to stop by? |
| 5. <u>Sal kəs</u> (i) issimnikka? | Is there anything to buy? |
| 6. <u>Ilkil chək</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a book to read? |
| 7. <u>Masil khəphi</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Is there any coffee to drink? |
| 8. <u>Tanil hakkyo</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Is there a school for you to attend? |
| 9. <u>Kitalil salam</u> (i) issimnikka? | Are you waiting for anyone? ('Do you have anyone to wait for?') |
| *10. <u>Kukyəng-hal te</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Is there any place for sightseeing? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kyøphi han can masyæssimyen
cohkessimnita. | I'd like to have a cup of coffee.
('[It]'ll be nice if [I] drank
coffee.') |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo e kassimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I'd like to go to school. |
| 3. <u>Ceimsi lil mannassimyen</u>
cohkessimnita. | I'd like to meet James. |
| 4. <u>Tapang e tillessimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I'd like to stop by a tearoom. |
| 5. <u>Yenghwa lil pwassimyen</u> chokessimnita. | I'd like to see a movie. |
| 6. <u>Tapang i issessimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I wish there were tearooms. |
| 7. <u>Kim Sənsəng i wassimyen</u>
cohkessimnita. | I wish Mr. Kim came. |
| 8. <u>Onil ttənassimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I'd like to leave today. |
| 9. <u>Səul Təhakkyo e taniessimyen</u>
cohkessimnita. | I'd like to attend Seoul University. |
| 10. <u>Pullansə mal il pəwəssimyen</u>
cohkessimnita. | I'd like to study French. |
| 11. <u>Hankuk il kukyəng-həssimyen</u>
cohkessimnita. | I'd like to see Korea. |
| 12. <u>Cip i kakkawəssimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I wish my house were near. |
| 13. <u>Cip kaps i ssassimyen</u> cohkessimnita. | I wish the rent were cheap. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Sinə e cohin tapang i manhi isse
yo. | There are many nice tearooms down-
town. |
| 2. <u>Səul</u> e cohin <u>hakkyo</u> ka manhi isse
yo. | There are many good schools in Seoul. |
| 3. <u>Hankuk</u> e cohin <u>pəkhwacəm</u> i manhi
isse yo. | There are many good department stores
in Korea. |
| 4. <u>Nyuyok</u> e cohin <u>kikcang</u> i manhi
isse yo. | There are many good theatres in New
York. |
| 5. <u>Wəsingthon</u> e cohin <u>tosəkwan</u> i
manhi isse yo. | There are many good libraries in
Washington. |
| 6. <u>Yəki</u> e cohin <u>pakmulkwān</u> i manhi
isse yo. | There are many good museums here. |
| 7. <u>Kəki</u> e cohin <u>imsikcəm</u> i manhi
isse yo. | There are many good restaurants
there. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. <u>I</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>yakpang</u> i <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good drug stores in this vicinity. |
| 9. <u>S ul</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>koting</u> <u>hakkyo</u> ka <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good high schools in Seoul area. |
| 10. <u>Nyuyok</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>py ngw n</u> i <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good hospitals in New York area. |
| 11. <u>Pusan</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>t hakkyo</u> ka <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good universities in Pusan area. |
| *12. <u>T ku</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>cunghakkyo</u> ka <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good junior high Schools in Taeku area. |
| *13. <u>S ul</u> <u>T hak</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cohin</u> <u>sohakkyo</u> ka <u>manhi</u> isse yo. | There are many good elementary schools in the vicinity of Seoul College. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I <u>pukin</u> e <u>tapang</u> i <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any tearooms in this area? |
| 2. <u>T sakwan</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>imsikc m</u> i <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any restaurants around the Embassy? |
| 3. <u>C ngk cang</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>kyohwe</u> ka <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any churches around the station? |
| 4. <u>Yakpang</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>py ngw n</u> i <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any clinics around the drug store? |
| *5. <u>Ky ngchals </u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>c phanso</u> ka <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any courts around the police station? |
| 6. <u>S ul</u> <u>T hakkyo</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>pakmulkwan</u> i <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any museums around Seoul University? |
| 7. <u>Tos kwan</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>cunghakkyo</u> ka <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any middle schools around the library? |
| 8. <u>Pakmulkwan</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>koting</u> <u>hakkyo</u> ka <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any high schools around the museum? |
| 9. <u>Py ngw n</u> <u>pukin</u> e <u>sohakkyo</u> ka <u> ps </u> yo? | Aren't there any elementary schools around the hospital? |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Hakkyo pukin e nin tapang i
epsimnita. | There are no tearooms around the
school. |
| 2. <u>Pyəngwən</u> pukin e nin <u>yakpang</u> i
epsimnita. | There are no drug stores around the
hospital. |
| 3. <u>Səul Təhakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>chækpang</u>
i epsimnita. | There are no bookstores around Seoul
University. |
| 4. <u>Hwesa</u> pukin e nin <u>imsikcəm</u> i
epsimnita. | There are no restaurants around the
company. |
| 5. <u>Koting hakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>sohakkyo</u>
ka epsimnita. | There are no elementary schools
around the high school. |
| 6. <u>Sohakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>cunghakkyo</u> ka
epsimnita. | There are no middle schools around
the elementary schools. |
| 7. <u>Pakmulkwən</u> pukin e nin <u>kongwən</u>
i epsimnita. | There are no parks around the museum. |
| 8. <u>Mikuk Təsakwən</u> pukin e nin <u>sangcəm</u>
i epsimnita. | There are no stores around the U.S.
Embassy. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Yəngsakwən</u> pukin e nin <u>inhəng</u>
i epsimnita. | There are no banks around the U.S.
Consulate. |
| 10. <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> pukin e nin <u>uphyenkuk</u>
i epsimnita. | There is no post office around USIS. |
| *11. <u>Upkyenkuk</u> pukin e nin <u>cəphanso</u>
ka epsimnita. | There are no courts around the post
office. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sinə kkaci əlma na məmnikka? | How far is downtown [from here]? |
| 2. <u>Səul yək</u> kkaci əlma na
məmnikka? | How far is it to Seoul Station? |
| 3. <u>Cungkuk imsikcəm</u> kkaci əlma na
məmnikka? | How far is it to a Chinese restaurant? |
| 4. <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> kkaci əlma na
məmnikka? | How far is it to the Bank of Korea? |
| 5. <u>Panto Kwesa</u> kkaci əlma na məmnikka? | How far is it to the Bando Company? |
| 6. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> kkaci əlma na
məmnikka? | How far is it to the International
Theatre? |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. <u>Səul Təhakkyo tosekwan</u> kkaci əlma
na mənnikka? | How far is it to the Seoul University
library? |
| 8. <u>Təhak Pyəngwən kənmul</u> kkaci əlma
na mənnikka? | How far is it to the University
Hospital building? |
| 9. <u>Ceıl kakkaun kongwən</u> kkaci əlma na
mənnikka? | How far is it to the nearest park? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka əlma na mənnikka? | How far is the school? |
| 2. <u>Cip</u> i əlma na <u>kakkapsimnikka</u> ? | How near is the house? |
| 3. <u>Pihəngki</u> ka əlma na <u>ppalimnikka</u> ? | How fast is the airplane? |
| 4. <u>Cəncha</u> ka əlma na <u>nilimnikka</u> ? | How slow is the streetcar? |
| 5. <u>Hapsing</u> i əlma na <u>phyelli-hamnikka</u> ? | How convenient is the jitney? |
| 6. <u>Kil</u> i əlma na <u>pəncap-hamnikka</u> ? | How crowded is the street? |
| *7. <u>Munce</u> ka əlma na <u>kantan-hamnikka</u> ? | How simple is the problem? |
| *8. <u>Munpəp</u> i əlma na <u>pokcap-hamnikka</u> ? | How complicated is the grammar? |
| *9. <u>ıyca</u> ka əlma na <u>phyənhamnikka</u> ? | How comfortable is the chair? |
| *10. <u>Kyothong</u> i əlma na <u>pulphyən-</u>
<u>hamnikka</u> ? | How inconvenient is the trans-
portation (or traffic)? |
| *11. <u>San</u> i əlma na <u>nophsimnikka</u> ? | How high is the mountain? |
| *12. <u>Kənmul</u> i əlma na <u>nacimnikka</u> ? | How low is the building? |
| *13. <u>Talı</u> ka əlma na <u>ki(1)mnikka</u> ? | How long (length) is the bridge? |
| *14. <u>Mul</u> i əlma na <u>kiphsimnikka</u> ? | How deep is the water? |
| *15. <u>Hakki</u> ka əlma na <u>cca(1)psimnikka</u> ? | How short is the semester? |
| *16. <u>Muke</u> ka əlma na <u>mukəpsimnikka</u> ? | How heavy is the weight? |
| *17. <u>Chəksang</u> i əlma na <u>kapyəpsimnikka</u> ? | How light (weight) is the table? |
| *18. <u>Pang</u> i əlma na <u>pa(1)ksimnikka</u> ? | How light is the room? |
| *19. <u>Kyosil</u> i əlma na <u>ətupsimnikka</u> ? | How dark is the classroom? |
| *20. <u>Tosi</u> ka əlma na <u>nəlpsimnikka</u> ? | How large is the city? |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Sinæ kkaci kələ sə sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 15 minutes to walk downtown. |
| 2. Sinæ kkaci <u>catongcha lo</u> sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 15 minutes to go downtown by car. |
| *3. <u>Siwe</u> kkaci catongcha lo sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 15 minutes to go to the suburb by car. |
| 4. Siwe kkaci catongcha lo <u>i-sip-o</u> pun ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 25 minutes to go to the suburb by car. |
| 5. Siwe kkaci <u>cəncha lo</u> i-sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 25 minutes by street-car to go to the suburb. |
| 6. <u>Sinmunsa</u> kkaci cəncha lo i-sip-o ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about 25 minutes by street-car to go to the newspaper publishing company. |
| 7. Sinmunsa kkaci cəncha lo <u>pan sikan</u> ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about half an hour by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company. |
| 8. Sinmunsa kkaci <u>kələ sə</u> pan sikan ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the newspaper publisher. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan</u> kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the USIS library. |
| 10. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim <u>twemnita</u> . | It's about half an hour (walk) to the USIS library. |
| 11. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim <u>kamnita</u> . | You [have to] go about half an hour on foot to get to the USIS library. |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ppəsı na cəncha nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any buses or streetcars running? |
| 2. <u>Hapsing</u> ina <u>thækssi</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any jitneys or taxis running? |
| 3. <u>Pæ</u> na <u>pihængki</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any ships or airplanes running? |
| 4. <u>Kicha</u> na <u>catongcha</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any trains or automobiles running? |
| *5. <u>Catongcha</u> na <u>hwamulcha</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any cars or cargo trains running? |

- *6. Hwamulcha na hwamulsen in tanici
anhsimnikka?
- *7. Hwamulsen ina kisen in tanici
anhsimnikka?
- *8. Kisen ina kæksen in tanici
anhsimnikka?
- *9. Hwamulcha na hwamul catongoha
nin tanici anhsimnikka?
- *10. Kæksen ina kækcha nin tanici
anhsimnikka?
- *11. Kiphæng (cha) na Wanhæng (cha)
nin tanici anhsimnikka?

- Aren't there any cargo trains or
cargo ships running?
- Aren't there any cargo ships or
steamships running?
- Aren't there any steamships or
passenger ships running?
- Aren't there any cargo trains or
trucks running?
- Aren't there any passenger ships or
passenger trains running?
- Aren't there any express (trains)
or local (trains) running?

K. Substitution Drill

1. Hapsing i cacu tanimnita.
2. Hapsing i kakkim tanimnita.
3. Hapsing i nll tanimnita.
4. Hapsing i hangsang tanimnita.
5. Hapsing i ence na tanimnita.
6. Hapsing i manhi tanimnita.
- *7. Hapsing i ttæ ttæ lo tanimnita.
- *8. Hapsing i ittakim tanimnita.
9. Hapsing i han sikan e han pen
tanimnita.
10. Hapsing i halu e tu pen tanimnita.

- Jitneys run frequently.
- Jitneys run sometimes.
- Jitneys run all the time.
- Jitneys run all the time.
- Jitneys run {any time.
all the time.
- Jitneys run a lot.
- Jitneys run {occasionally.
from time to time.
- Jitneys run {off and on.
once in a while.
- Jitneys run every hour.
- Jitneys run twice a day.

L. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. əlma na cacu hapsing 1 tanimnikka? | How often do the jitneys run? |
| 2. əlma na cacu <u>tapang e kamnikka?</u> | How often do you go to a tearoom? |
| 3. əlma na cacu <u>pækhwacəm e tillingnikka?</u> | How often do you stop by the department store? |
| 4. əlma na cacu <u>yəca chinku lill</u>
<u>mannamnikka?</u> | How often do you meet your girl friend? |
| 5. əlma na cacu <u>pəsi lill thamnikka?</u> | How often do you take the bus? |
| 6. əlma na cacu <u>mom 1 aphimnikka?</u> | How often are you sick? |
| 7. əlma na cacu <u>hyuka lill patsimnikka?</u> | How often do you take leave? |
| 8. əlma na cacu <u>cip esə swimnikka?</u> | How often do you stay home ('rest home')? |
| 9. əlma na cacu <u>yənghwa lill pomnikka?</u> | How often do you see movies? |
| 10. əlma na cacu <u>yənghwa polə</u>
<u>kamnikka?</u> | How often do you go to see movies? |
| 11. əlma na cacu <u>Mikuk yənghwa lill</u>
<u>sangyeng-hamnikka?</u> | How often do [they] show American movies? |
| *12. əlma na cacu <u>sə waisyassi ka</u>
<u>philyo-hamnikka?</u> | How often do you need new (dress) shirt? |
| 13. əlma na cacu <u>yangpok 1l samnikka?</u> | How often do you buy suits? |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Pəsi (ka) Pəncap-hamnita. | Buses are crowded. |
| 2. <u>Cəncha</u> (ka) pəncap-hamnita. | Streetcars are crowded. |
| 3. <u>Kikcang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | Theatres are crowded. |
| 4. <u>Kicha</u> (ka) pəncap-hamnita. | Trains are crowded. |
| 5. <u>Tapang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | Tearooms are crowded. |
| 6. <u>Siktang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | Restaurants are crowded. |
| 7. <u>Cəngkəcang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | The station is crowded. |
| 8. <u>Kil</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | The streets are crowded. |
| *9. <u>Kyothong</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | {Traffic is heavy.
{There is a traffic jam. |
| *10. Kyothong (1) <u>pokcap-hamnita.</u> | {Transportation is complicated.
{There is a traffic jam. |
| *11. <u>Munce</u> (ka) pokcap-hamnita. | The problem is complicated. |
| *12. <u>Munpəp</u> 1 pokcap-hamnita. | The grammar is complicated. |

N. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hankuk e kamnita. Səul esə
il-hakessimnita.

Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə
il-hakessimnita.

'I go to Korea.' 'I'll work in
Seoul.'

'When } I go to Korea I'll work in
'If } Seoul.'

1. Kim Sənsəng il mannamnita. Kiləhke
mal-hakessimnita.

2. Sikan i issimnita. Kikcang e
kakessimnita.

3. Sinə e kamnita. Khəphi lil
masikessimnita.

4. Tapang i əpsimnita. Təsakwan esə
mannakessimnita.

5. I pukin e tapang i issimnita.
Tillikessimnita.

6. Kicha ka phyənamnita. Kicha lo
Səul e kakessimnita.

7. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnita. Kələ sə
kakessimnita.

8. Sinə ka məmnita. Hapsing il
thakessimnita.

9. Səul e tto omnita. Səul Təhakkyo
e tanikessimnita.

10. Ppesi ka phyəlli-hamnita. Ppesi
lo ttenakessimnita.

11. Cəncha e salam i manhsimnita.
Tnəksi lo okessimnita.

Kim Sənsəng il mannamyən, kiləhke
mal-hakessimnita.

Sikan i issimyən, kikcang e
kakessimnita.

Sinə e kamyən, khəphi lil
masikessimnita.

Tapang i əpsimyən, təsakwan esə
mannakessimnita.

I pukin e tapang i issimyən,
tillikessimnita.

Kicha ka phyənamyən, kicha lo
Səul e kakessimnita.

Hakkyo ka kakkaumyən, kələ sə
kakessimnita.

Sinə ka məlmyən, hapsing il
thakessimnita.

Səul e tto omyən, Səul Təhakkyo e
tanikessimnita.

Ppesi ka phyəlli-hamyən, ppesi lo
ttenakessimnita.

Cəncha e salam i manhımyən, tnəksi
lo okessimnita.

0. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kamyən,

'When I go to Korea }
'If I go to Korea } ,...

Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə
il-hakessimnita.

'When } I go to Korea I'll work in
'If } Seoul.'

1. Sikan i issimyən,
2. Sinə e kamyən,
3. Tapang e tillingyən,
4. Tapang i issimyən,
5. Chinku lil mannamyən,
6. Hakkyo ka əpsimyən,
7. Kicha lil thamyən,
8. Onil yəki esə ttenamyən,
9. Nal i cohimyən,
10. Səul e cip kaps i pissamyən,
11. Sinə ka məlmyən,
12. Kī yəca ka yeppimyən,
13. Cohin Hankuk mal səsəng il chachimyən,
14. Yəng-Han sacən il samyən,
15. Hankuk mal il pəumyən,
16. Ilpon mal i swiumyən,
17. Yəngə ka əlyəumyən,
18. Hankuk mal i cəmi issimyən,
19. Tokil mal il hal su issimyən,
20. Hankuk e kaci anhimyən,
21. Khəphi lil masiko siphimyən,
22. Nəil an pappimyən,
23. Hankuk mal il alə tilingyən,
24. Hankuk mal il alə titci mot hamyən,

P. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpci man, cæmi
issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's
interesting.'

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə to, cæmi
isse yo.

'Even though Korean is difficult,
it's interesting.'

1. Sinæ e tapang i issci man, cohci
anhsimnita.

Sinæ e tapang i isse to, cohci anhe
yo.

2. Nal mata hakkyo e kaci man, kongpu-
haci anhsimnita.

Nal mata hakkyo e ka to, kongpu-
haci anhe yo.

3. Com pappici man, sinæ e kakessimnita.

Com pappe to, sinæ e kakesse yo.

4. Hankuk mal il alə titci man, mal-
haci mot hamnita.

Hankuk mal il alə tile to, mal-
haci mot hæ yo.

5. Kɪ salam il kitəlici man, oci
anhsimnita.

Kɪ salam il kitəlyə to, oci anhe
yo.

6. Cə yəca lɪl mannassci man, ilim
il molimnita.

Cə yəca lɪl mannasse to, ilim il
molla yo.

7. Sensəng in əpsəssci man, haksəng
in manhəssimnita.

Sensəng in əpsəsse to, haksəng in
manhesse yo.

8. Hwesa ka mələssci man, kələ sə
taniəssimnita.

Hwesa ka mələsse to, kələ sə
taniəsse yo.

9. Pihəngki ka phyəlli-həssci man,
com pissassimnita.

Pihəngki ka phyəlli-həsse to, com
pissasse yo.

10. Kim Sensəng in Yəngə lɪl mal-
həssci man, ssici mot həssimnita.

Kim Sensəng in Yəngə lɪl mal-həsse
to, ssici mot həsse yo.

11. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphci man,
sikan i əpsimnita.

Hankuk mal il pəuko siphe to, sikan
i əpse yo.

12. Səul e kalyəko haci man, Hankuk
mal il molimnita.

Səul e kalyəko hæ to, Hankuk mal il
molla yo.

Q. Completion Exercise (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: I pukin e tapang i isse to,

'Even though there are tearooms in this area,...'

Student: I pukin e tapang isse to,
cohci anhsimnita.

'Even though there are tearooms in this area, they're not good.'

1. Hankuk mal i ɔlyəwə to,
2. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəwə to,
3. Yəngə lɪl alə tɪlə to,
4. Pihəŋki ka phyəlli-hə to,
5. Sənsəŋ in əpsə to,
6. Cə yəca lɪl mannəsə to,
7. Hakkyo ka mələ to,
8. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphe to,
9. Səul e kalyəko hə to,

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go home? ('Is it all right even if I go home?')

Student: Ne, ka to cohsimnita.

'Yes, you may (go).'

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I chæk il ilkə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, ilkə to cohsimnita. |
| 2. Sənsəŋ cip e tɪlə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, tɪlə to cohsimnita. |
| 3. Sənsəŋ e cha lɪl tha to cohsimnikka? | Ne, tha to cohsimnita. |
| 4. Cə kilim il pwa to cohsimnikka? | Ne, pwa to cohsimnita. |
| 5. Yəki esə tangsin il kitaliə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, yəki esə kitaliə to cohsimnita. |
| 6. Onil ttəna to cohsimnikka? | Ne, onil ttəna to cohsimnita. |
| 7. Kyosil esə khəphi lɪl masyə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, masyə to cohsimnita. |
| 8. Onil cip esə swiə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, swiə to cohsimnita. |
| 9. Mikuk yəŋghwa lɪl pwa to cohsimnikka? | Ne, pwa to cohsimnita. |
| 10. Hankuk mal lo mal-hə to cohsimnikka? | Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hə to cohsimnita. |

S. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnikka?

'Is this book expensive?'

Student: Ne, i chæk ceil pissamnita.

'Yes, this (book) is the most expensive.'

1. Hankuk mal i ɔlyəpsimnikka?

Ne, Hankuk mal i ceil ɔlyəpsimnita.

2. Hapsing i phyelli-hamnikka?

Ne, hapsing i ceil phyelli-hamnita.

3. Kim Sənsəŋ i (Hankuk mal il) cal kalichimnikka?

Ne, Kim Sənsəŋ i (Hankuk mal il) ceil cal kalichimnita.

4. Pihəŋki ka ppalimnikka?

Ne, pihəŋki ka ceil ppalimnita.

5. Cəncha ka nilimnikka?

Ne, cəncha ka ceil nilimnita.

6. Hapsing i cacu tanimnikka?

Ne, hapsing i ceil cacu tanimnita.

7. Səul i khin tosi imnikka?

Ne, Səul i ceil khin tosi imnita.

8. Cə yəca lil cohamnikka?

Ne, cə yəca lil ceil cohamnita.

9. Yəŋg-Han sacən i philyo-hamnikka?

Ne, Yəŋg-Han sacən-i ceil philyo-hamnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs i ceil phyelli-hamnikka?

'What is most convenient?' /jitney/

/hapsing/

Student: Hapsing i kacang phyelli-hamnita.

'A jitney is the most convenient.'

1. Nuka ceil Yəŋgə lil cal hamnikka? /Kim Sənsəŋ/

Kim Sənsəŋ i Yəŋgə lil kacang cal hamnita.

2. ɛni mal i ceil ɔlyəpsimnikka? /Ssolyən mal/

Ssolyən mal i kacang ɔlyəpsimnita.

3. Mikuk esə ɛni tosi ka ceil khimnikka? /Nyuyok/

Nyuyok i kacang khimnita.

4. Musin catongcha ka ceil pissamnikka? /khyatalæk/

Khyatalæk i kacang pissamnita.

5. Hankuk esə ɛti e Mikuk salam i ceil manhi samnikka? /Səul pukin/

Səul pukin e kacang manhi samnita.

6. Muəs i ceil ppalimnikka? /kicha/

Kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.

7. ɛni phyən i ceil nilimnikka? /cəncha/

Cəncha phən i kacang nilimnita.

8. eti lil ceil mence kukyeng-hako
siphsimnikka? /sinæ kongwën/
9. eni phyen i ceil cacu tanimnikka?
/hapsing/

Sinæ kongwën il kacang mence
kukyeng-hako siphsimnita.
Hapsing (phyen) i kacang cacu
tanimnita.

U. Expansion Drill

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnita. /Yeng-Han
sacæn/

Student: Yeng-Han sacæn cung esë i
chæk i kacang pissamnita.

'This book is expensive.' /English-
Korean dicationary/

'Of the English-Korean dictionaries
this book is the most expensive.'

1. Mikuk i cohsimnita. /nala til/
2. Mikuk catongcha ka phyenhamnita.
/yælə nala cha/
3. Sëul i khin tosi imnita. /Hankuk
e yælə tosi/
4. Kicha ka ppalimnita. /catongcha
wa ppesi wa kicha/
5. Cungkuk imsik il cohahamnita.
/yælə kaci imsik/
6. Hankuk mal i elyepsimnita. /mal
til/
7. Cho Sënsæng i cal kalichimnita.
/sënsæng til/

Nala til cung esë Mikuk i kacang
cohsimnita.
Yælə nala cha cung esë Mikuk catongcha
ka kacang phyenhamnita.
Hankuk e yælə tosi cung esë Sëul i
kacang khin tosi imnita.
Catongcha wa ppesi wa kicha cung
esë kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.
Yælə kaci imsik cung esë Cungkuk
imsik il kacang cohahamnita.
Mal til cung esë Hankuk mal i kacang
elyepsimnita.
Sënsæng til cung esë Cho Sënsæng i
kacang cal kalichimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Kim Sënsæng asks you what you want to see first. Propose that you go together to see the following places:

a. Seoul University	H. a museum
b. Seoul High School	i. a drug store
c. a girls' middle school	j. the central police station
d. the nearest elementary school	k. the British consulate
e. a library	l. a church
f. a hospital	m. the International Post Office
g. the zoo	n. the dormitory

2. Mr. James asks:You respond:

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. how far the school is from your house. | 'It's about three miles.' |
| b. how long your car is. | 'It's 5 and a half meters (long).' |
| c. how long it takes to come to work. | 'It usually takes 25 minutes by car.' |
| d. how high the mountain is. | 'It is low but is about 850 feet high.' |
| e. which is slower, the bus or the train. | 'The bus is a little slower than the train.' |
| f. which way is the most convenient of them all. | 'The airplane is the most convenient of them all.' |
| g. if Korean is complicated. | 'No, it's not so complicated and the writing is simple.' |
| h. if you came to school <u>early</u> /ilcciki/. | 'No, I came a little <u>late</u> /nicke/.' |
| i. if the chair is very heavy. | 'It's quite heavy but it is lighter than a table.' |
| j. if the chair is comfortable. | 'It's not bad.' |
| k. if the room is dark. | 'No, it's quite light.' |
| l. if the Han bridge is longer than the other one. | 'No, it's shorter.' |
| m. if the street is always crowded. | 'No, not always. Only in the morning and afternoon.' |
| n. if the Korean grammar is simple. | 'No, it's very complicated.' |
| o. if you want to study Korean. | 'I have no time even though I would like to.' |
| p. if he may get off in front of the building. | 'Yes, you may.' |
| q. if he may use your car. | 'I'm sorry but you can't.' |
| r. if he may ask you a question. | 'Yes, please do.' |
| s. if he may drink coffee in the classroom. | 'Yes, please if you want to.' |

3. Find out the following information at the travel bureau:

- if there are any passenger ships running between Inchon and Pusan.
- if so, whether they are steamships.
- if any cargo ships go to Tokyo.
- if it is more expensive to ship /puchi-ta/ things by airplane.
- how often express trains are running between Seoul and Pusan, and how much is a round-trip ticket /wangpok phyo/.
- how much longer it takes to go to Suwon by a local train.

제 11 과 시내 구경 (계속)

(대화 A)

타고 갑시다

1. 스미스 : 시내까지 합승을 타고 갑시다.

타지 맙시다

2. 김 : 버버스나 합승은 타지 맙시다. 지금은 합승에도 사람이 많습니다.

걸어 갑시다

3. 스미스 : 그럼, 걸어 갑니까요?

택시를 탑시다.

4. 김 : 여보세요! 택시!

가 드립니까요

5. 운전수 : 어서 탑шы시오. 어디로 가 드립니까요?

중앙

중앙 우편국

가 주십시오

6. 김 : 서울 중앙 우편국으로 가 주십시오.

거의

다

거의 다

내립니다

UNIT 11. Going Around the Town (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Smith

- thako kapsita (let's ride and go!)
1. Sinæ kkaci hapsing il thako Let's take a jitney downtown.
kapsita.

Kim

- thaci mapsita let's not ride
2. Ppəsi na hapsing in thaci mapsita. Let's not take the bus or a jitney.
Cikim in hapsing e to salam i Jitneys are (also) crowded at
manhsimnita. this time (of day).

Smith

- kələ kamnita [I] walk; [I] go on foot
3. Kilem, kələ kal kka yo? Shall we walk, then?

Kim

4. Thækssi lil thapsita. Let's take a taxi.

(... to a taxi)

Yəpose yo! Thækssi! Hey! Taxi!

Driver

- ka tilil kka yo (shall I go (for you)?)
5. əsə thasipsiyo. əti lo ka Please get in. Where shall I take
tilil kka yo? you? ('Where shall I go for you?')

Kim

- cungang center; central
- Cungang Uphyenkuk Central Post Office
- ka cusipsiyo please for (for me)
6. Səul Cungang Uphyenkuk ilo ka Please go to the Seoul Central Post
cusipsiyo. Office.

7. 운전수 : 중앙 우편국에 거의 다 왔습니다.
어디에서 내리시겠습니까?

와 문
가까이에서
내려 주십시오

8. 김 : 와 문 가까이에서 내려 주십시오.

(대화 B)

잠간
들뜬 일

9. 김 : 저는 잠간 우편국에 들뜬 일이 있습니다.
선생은 먼저 다방으로 가시겠습니까?

10. 스미스 : 무슨 일이 있습니까?

편지
부칩니다
부쳐야
부쳐야 합니다

11. 김 : 예, 편지 한 장 부쳐야 하겠습니까.

12. 스미스 : 저도 같이 갈까요?

기타리는 것
기타리는 것이 좋겠습니다

13. 김 : 선생은 다방에서 기타리는 것이 좋겠습니다.

(... a little later)

Driver

kəi

almost; nearly

kəi ta

most; almost; almost all;
almost everyone

nəlimnita

[I] get off; [it] falls down

7. Cungang Uphyengkuk e kəi ta
wassimnita. ətɪ esə
nəlisikessimnikka?

We've almost come to the Central Post
Office. Where would you like to
get off?

Kim

aph mun/ammun/

the front door

kakkai esə

near; at the near place

nəlyə cusipsiyo

drop [me] off

8. Aph mun kakkai esə nəlyə
cusipsiyo.

Please drop [us] off at the front
door.

(...They got off the taxi.)

Kim

camkan

a little while

tillil il/tilyilyil/

something to stop by for

9. Cə nin camkan uphyengkuk e tillil
il i issimnita. Sənsəŋ in mənə
tapang ilo kasikesə yo?

I have some business at the post
office for a moment. Would you
[like to] go to the tearoom first?

Smith

10. Musin il i issimnikka?

What do you have [to do]?

Kim

phyənci

letter

puchimnita

[I] mail

puchie ya

('only if [I] mail'); ('only
when [I] mail')

puchie ya hamnita

[I] have to mail; [I] must mail

11. Ne, phyənci han cang puchie ya
hakessimnita.

Well, I have to mail a letter.

아마

시간이 걸릴 거입니다

14.

아마, 시간이 좀 걸릴 거입니다.

너무

늦습 니다, 늦읍 니다

늦지 마십시오

15.

스미스 :

그럼, 너무 늦지 마십시오.

五

돌아옵니다

16.

리 :

아니요, 곧 돌아 오겠어요.

이따

17.

스미스 :

그럼, 이따 만납시다.

Smith

12. Cə to kathi kal kka yo?

Shall I also go with you?

Kim

kitalinin kəs

('the waiting thing')

kitalinin kəs i cohkessimnita

you'd better wait ('that you
wait will be good')

13. Sənsəng in tapang esə kitalinin
kəs i cohkessimnita.

You'd better wait in the tearoom.

ama

perhaps; probably

sikan i kəllil kəs imnita

it will take time

14. Ama, sikan i com kəllil kəs
imnita.

It may take a little time. ('Pro-
bably time will take a little.')

Smith

nəmu

too

nicsimnita }
nicimnita }

[it]'s late; [it] delays

nicci masipsiyo

don't be late; don't be long

15. Kələm, nəmu nicci masipsiyo.

Don't be too long, then.

Kim

kot

soon; immediately

tola omnita

[I] come back

16. Aniyo, kot tola okessə yo.

No, I'll be soon back.

Smith

ittha

later; after a while

17. Kələm, ittha mannapsita.

See you in a few minutes, then.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers)

1. 3. Thako kapsita. ('Let's ride and go.') is a fixed expression used in contrast to Kelē (sə) kapsita 'Let's go on foot.' Thako ka- with or without specifying a mode of transportation before it (as an object) is used to denote going by some means of transportation (e.g. car, taxi, bus, street-car, etc.)

5. eti lo ka tilil kka yo? ('Where shall I go for you?') is the politer equivalent of eti lo ka cul kka yo?. The verb cu- or its politer equivalent tili- is used as an auxiliary verb. (See Grammar Note 2.)

6. Cungang 'central', 'center' occurs either as a determinative or a free-noun. As a determinative it forms a noun phrase with the following noun; as a free-noun it denotes geographical location. Compare (a) and (b):

(a) <u>Cungang Kikcang</u>	'Central Theatre'
<u>Cungang Cengkəcang</u>	'Central Station'

(b) <u>Sinə cungang e samnita.</u>	[I] live in the center of the city.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

7. Kel 'almost', 'most of them' and kel ta 'almost (all)', 'most of all' both occur either nominals or adverbials. Kel ta is a two-word phrase. As a nominal, either one of them occurs in the subject, topic or object position in a sentence.

8. Nəli- 'to get off', 'to descend' is an intransitive verb which may precede a place or transportation name + esə. Tha- 'to ride', 'to get on' is antonymous with nəli- (See Notes on Dialogues 14, Unit 7.) The verb phrase nəliə cu- 'to drop somebody off' occurs as a transitive verb phrase which may precede a direct object with or without a place or transportation name + esə. The antonymous verb for məliə cu- is either thəu- or thəwə cu-, both of which mean 'to give someone a ride' or 'to load'. Kakkai 'near', 'at the near place', 'the near place' occurs either as an adverb or a noun. The antonym for the adverb kakkai is melli 'far away'.

14. Ama 'perhaps', 'probably' occurs as a sentence adverb which is usually followed by either an inflected form with the suffix -kess- in it or the construction -(1)l kəs i-. It denotes the speaker's presumption for the probable action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence.
15. Nemu 'too' is an adverb which, without being followed by a pause immediately before verbals, noun-modifier words, or other adverbs, denotes excessive degree of the following descriptive expressions.
16. Kot 'soon', 'right away', 'immediately' which may be followed by a pause occurs as a sentence adverb. It denotes immediate time for the following inflected expression.
17. Itta 'later', 'after a while' which may be followed by a pause, occurs as a sentence adverb, and denotes later point of time on the same day for the following inflected expression. The antonym of itta is akka 'a little while ago' which is also a sentence adverb.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ci + ma(1)-

We learned in Unit 4 that the ci form plus the verb anh- was used to negate the verb in the ci form in a statement or question sentence. Remember that anh- does not occur alone but is always preceded by the ci form without a pause. Like anh-, the verb ma(1)- does not occur without being preceded by the ci form. -ci + ma(1)- is used to indicate negation of the verb in the ci form in either propositive or imperative sentences. Note that in the construction -ci + anh- tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb anh-, but in the construction -ci + ma(1)-, tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form of the stem ma(1)-: the verb ma(1) takes only -(1)psita and -(1)sipsiyo endings in Formal Polite Speech, and the infinitive form of ma(1)- is malə, making the informal polite speech present form malə yo. Compare:

GROUP 1

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Hankukə lo (mal-)hapsita. | 'Let's speak in Korean.' |
| Hankukə lo (mal-)haci mapsita. | 'Let's not speak in Korean.' |
| b. Kələ kapsita. | 'Let's go on foot.' |
| Kələ kaci mapsita. | 'Let's not go on foot.' |

- c. Kyosil esə tampæ (lil) phiupsita. 'Let's smoke in the classroom.'
 Kyosil esə tampæ (lil) phiuci 'Let's not smoke in the classroom.'
 mapsita.

GROUP 2

- a. I chæk il ilkisipsiyo. 'Read this book.'
 I chæk il ilkei masipsiyo. 'Don't read this book.'
- b. Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo. 'Speak in Korean.'
 Hankuk mal lo mal-haci masipsiyo. 'Don't speak in Korean.'
- c. Kimchi lil məkisipsiyo. 'Eat Kimchi.'
 Kimchi lil məkci masipsiyo. 'Don't eat Kimchi.'

2. Infinitive + cu-

In Unit 7, we were introduced to a verb phrases (i.e. infinitive + auxiliary verb). The verb cu- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. As an independent verb cu- means 'to give', and the construction Infinitive + cu- which may be preceded by a Personal Nominal + { eke / hanthe } 'to + Personal Nominal' means literary something like 'do and give to someone'. But the auxiliary verb cu- is generally used either to denote 'rendering service to someone' by the subject or topic, or simply to mean nothing but to make the speech politer in an imperative sentence. The politer or honorific equivalent of cu- is an irregular form tili- which occurs also either as an independent verb or as an auxiliary verb. Observe the following examples:

1. a. Chæk il ilkisipsiyo. 'Read the book.'
 b. Chæk il ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read the book.'
 'Please read me the book.'
 c. Chæk il na eke ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read me the book.'
 'Please read the book {for} me.'
 to }
2. a. Kim Sənsəng 1 khəphi lil sassimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought coffee.'
 b. Kim Sənsəng 1 khəphi lil sa 'Mr. Kim bought [me] coffee.'
 cuəssimnita.
 c. Kim Sənsəng 1 cə eke khəphi lil 'Mr. Kim bought me coffee.'
 sa cuəssimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought coffee for me.'

3. a. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl 'That woman taught English.'
kalichɪəssɪmnita.
- b. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl kalichɪə 'That woman taught [me] English.'
cuəssɪmnita.
- c. Cə yəca ka na hanthe Yəngə lɪl 'That woman taught me English.'
kalichɪə cuəssɪmnita.
4. a. Sənsəŋ kwa kathi kal kka yo? 'Shall I go with you?'
- b. Sənsəŋ kwa kathi ka tilɪl kka 'Shall I go with you (for you)?'
yo? 'Shall I accompany you?'
- c. Ne, na wa kathi ka cusɪnsiyo. 'Would you like me to go with you?'
- 'Yes, please go with me.'

3. Particle ya

Ya belongs to a small class of particles which occur without a pause immediately after inflected forms (e.g. Infinitives). Infinitive + ya occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Infinitive + ya + ha- 'must..', 'have (or has) to__'

Infinitive + ya followed by the verb ha- without a pause is used to denote obligation of the action or description of the verb in the infinitive for the subject or topic in the sentence. In this construction the tenses and/or levels of speech is generated only in ha-. Examples:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Wekyokwan in wekuk mal ɪl alə ya
hamnita. | 'Diplomats must know foreign
languages.' |
| Cə to Hankuk mal ɪl pəwə ya hæ yo. | 'I have to study Korean, too.' |
| Chinku lɪl manna ya hakesse yo? | 'Do [you] have to meet a friend?' |
| Hakkyo e ka ya hæssɪmnita. | 'I had to go to school.' |

Note that the pattern -ci ahhimyeŋ an twemnita. ('If [one] doesn't do... [it] doesn't become.') is often interchangeably used with Infinitive + ya ha-. Thus, the Yes response to either Infinitive + ya hamnikka? or -ci anhimyeŋ an twemnikka? is either Ne, Infinitive + ya hamnita. or Ne, -ci anhimyeŋ an twemnita. The most usual No response to either of the above questions is Aniyo, -ci anhe to { cohssɪmnita.
kwəŋchansɪmnita. } 'No, [you] don't have to...' ('Even if [one] does not do... [it]'s O.K.')

- b. Infinitive + ya + verbs other than ha- 'only when,..', 'only if..', 'must...to...'

Infinitive + ya, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, occurs to denote obligatory condition of action or description of the subject or topic for the following inflected expression. In this construction, the tense suffixes may also occur in the infinitive form which precedes ya, while tenses and/or levels of speech are generated in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Hankuk mal il alə ya, il-haki swipsimnita.	'It is easy to work only when [you] know Korean.'
	'You have to know Korean to make it easy to work.'
Ton i issə ya, cha lil sal su issimnita.	'Only if [I] have money, I can buy a car.'
	'[I] have to have money to buy a car.'
Chæk kaps i ssa ya, sakesse yo.	'Only if the book is cheap, I will buy it.'
Pam e cal ca ya, kongpu cal hal su issimnita.	'[You] have to have a goodnight sleep to study well.'
	'Only when [you] sleep well, you can study well.'
Ki ttə e Səul e issəsə ya, ki kəs il pol su issəsil kəs imnita.	'Only if [you] had been in Seoul at that time [you] could have seen it.'
	'[You] should have been in Seoul at that time to have seen it.'

4. -n/in/nin + kəs

Remember that the Nominalized verb (i.e. the ki form) occurs in a nominal position in a sentence, e.g. subject, topic, object (See Unit 8). Just like the ki form, the phrase -n/in/nin + kəs (which is the present noun-modifier word plus the post-noun kəs) often occurs in the nominal positions. Any English verbal expression which occurs in nominal positions can be compared with the above Korean construction. Observe the following examples:

<u>Wekuk mal il pəunin kəs</u> in swipci anhsimnita.	' <u>Learning foreign languages</u> is not easy.'
<u>Ceimsi ka Yəngə lil kalichinin kəs</u> il amnita.	'[I] know <u>that James is teaching English</u> .'
<u>Kim Sənsəng i hakkyo e kanin kəs</u> il pwassə yo.	'I saw <u>that Mr. Kim was going to school</u> .'

Thækssi lil thanin kəs i

'How would you like to take a taxi?'

ettəhsimnikka?

Səul esə sanin kəs il cohahamnikka?

'Do you like to live in Seoul?'

Note, however, that the expression -n/in/nin kəs i coh(kess)simnita '[You] had better do..' ('It (will) be good to do such-and-such' or 'That [you] do.. will be good.') occurs as a fixed expression to indicate the speaker's recommendation, suggestion or wishes.

5. -(1)l kəs i-

We learned about the inflected forms which include the suffix -kess- (Grammar Note 2, Unit 3). Like the inflected forms including -kess-, the construction -(1)l kəs i- is also used to indicate either the future action or description, or the speaker's presumption, about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Study the following formula:

<u>Subject/Topic</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>Denotation</u>
a. Speaker	-kess-	Speaker's positive intention for the future
b. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's positive intention for the future
c. Other than speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's opinion or presumption for the future
d. Other than speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-kess-	Speaker's presumption
e. Speaker	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's passive future
f. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Addressee's passive future
g. Addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's presumption for the future
h. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's belief or knowledge for the future
i. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Addressee's opinion, presumption or knowledge for the future

Note that if the subject/topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee, and if the speaker simply states his knowledge about the action or description of the subject/topic for the future, the construction -(1)l kəs i-

is usually used instead of the -kess- form. However, -(1)l kəs i- is also used occasionally to denote the speaker's presumption about the subject/topic. Compare the following pairs:

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. Onil pi ka okessimnita. | 'It is going to rain today (I suppose).' |
| Onil pi ka ol kəs imnita. | 'It will rain today.' |
| b. Ki cha ka pissakessimnita. | 'That car must be expensive.' |
| Ki cha ka pissal kəs imnita. | 'That car will be expensive.' |
| c. Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksəng
til i hakkyo e əpskessimnita. | 'Because today is Saturday, I presume there are not students at school.' |
| Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksəng
til i hakkyo e əpsil kəs imnita. | { 'Because today is Saturday, there (will) be no students at school.'
'Probably there (will) be no students at school because today is Saturday.' |
| d. Pak Sənsəng i onil ttənəkessimnita. | 'I believe Mr. Park will leave today.' |
| Pak Sənsəng i onil ttənəl kəs
imnita. | 'Mr. Park will leave today.' |

6. Further Notes on Honorifics

In Unit 3, we noticed that when the subject, topic or the person acted upon in a sentence is honored, the honorific suffix -(1)si- is added to the verb stem. While most Korean verb stems take -(1)si- to form honorifics there is a small class of verb stems of which honorifics have irregular shapes. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Honorific or Humble form</u>	
ca-	cumusi-	'to sleep'
iss-	kyesi-	'to exist'
mək-	capsusi-	'to eat'
cu-	tili(si)-	'to give'
cuk-	tola kasi-	'to die', 'to pass away (H)'

Remember that the speaker does not honor himself regardless of age, status or other factors. That is, the honorific suffix -(1)si- should not occur in the verb in a sentence where the speaker himself is the subject, topic or the person acted upon.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Sinæ</u> kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita. | Let's take a jitney as far as the downtown area. |
| 2. <u>Səul Yək</u> kkaci <u>cəncha</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a streetcar as far as Seoul Station. |
| 3. <u>Cungang Uphyənkuk</u> kkaci <u>ppəsɪ</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a bus as far as the Central Post Office. |
| 4. <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> kkaci <u>catongcha</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a car as far as the Bank of Korea. |
| 5. <u>Təsakwan aph</u> kkaci <u>thəkssi</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a taxi as far as the front of U.S. Embassy. |
| 6. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> kkaci <u>hapsing</u> il thako kapsita. | Let's take a jitney as far as the International Theatre. |
| 7. <u>Cungkuk imsikcəm</u> kkaci <u>cha</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a car as far as the Chinese restaurant. |
| 8. <u>Yəngsakwan pukin</u> kkaci <u>hapsing</u> il thako kapsita. | Let's take a jitney as far as the vicinity of the consulate. |
| *9. <u>Pihəngcang</u> kkaci <u>kələ</u> kapsita. | Let's walk as far as the airport. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Cungang Uphyənkuk</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Post Office. |
| 2. <u>Cungang Sicang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Market. |
| 3. <u>Cungang Kikcang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Theatre. |
| 4. <u>Cungang Tosekwan</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Library. |
| 5. <u>Cungang Kyəngchalsə</u> lo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Police Station. |
| 6. <u>Cungang Kongwən</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Park. |
| 7. <u>Cungang Pakmulkwan</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Museum. |
| 8. <u>Səul Sinmunsa</u> lo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Seoul Newspaper Co. |
| 9. <u>Pihəngcang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the airport. |
| 10. <u>Pyəngwən</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the hospital. |
| *11. <u>Mun</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the door. |
| *12. <u>Cali</u> lo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the seat. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mun kakkai esə næliə cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] off near the door. |
| 2. <u>Mun yəph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] off beside the door. |
| 3. <u>inhəng aph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] in front of the bank. |
| 4. <u>Tosəkwān twi esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] behind the library. |
| 5. <u>Cə kənmul kakkai esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] near that building. |
| 6. <u>Pəkhwacəm olin cəok esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] on the right side of the department store. |
| *7. <u>Sopangse wen cəok esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] on the left side of the fire station. |
| 8. <u>Kyəngchalse yəph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] next to the police station. |
| 9. <u>Munpangkucəm aph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] in front of the stationery shop. |
| 10. <u>Cungkuk siktang twi esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please drop [me] behind the Chinese restaurant. |
| *11. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>məməchue</u> cusipsiyo. | Please stop behind the Chinese restaurant. |
| *12. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>sə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please stop (<u>or</u> stand) behind the Chinese restaurant. |
| *13. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>sewə</u> cusipsiyo. | Please park behind the Chinese restaurant. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Uphyənkuk ilo ka cusimyən, kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you'd go to the post office for me. |
| 2. <u>Hankuk mal il kalichie</u> cusimyən, kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would teach [me] Korean. |
| 3. <u>Cə lil kitalyə</u> cusimyən, kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would wait for me. |
| 4. <u>Yeki esə næliə</u> cusimyən, kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would drop me off here. |
| 5. <u>Ki sacən il poyə</u> cusimyən, kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would show me the dictionary. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| *6. <u>Mun il tate cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would close the door. |
| *7. <u>Mun il yeŏe cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would open the door. |
| *8. <u>Ki chæk il pillye cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would lend me that book. |
| *9. <u>Cali e ance cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would take a seat. |
| *10. <u>Catongcha lil ponæ cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would send [me] a car. |
| *11. <u>Mun aph esæ sæ cusimyeon,</u>
kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would stop in front of the door. |

E. Substitutuion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Camkan uphyenkuk e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the post office for a few minutes. ('I have something to stop by the post office for.') |
| 2. Camkan <u>chækpang</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by a bookstore for a few minutes. |
| 3. Camkan <u>yakpang</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the drugstore for a few minutes. |
| 4. Camkan <u>pyeongwŏn</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the hospital for a few minutes. |
| 5.. Camkan <u>kyeŋgchalse</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the police station for a few minutes. |
| *6. Camkan <u>pangsongkuk</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the radio station for a few minutes. |
| 7. Camkan <u>kyohwe</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the church for a few minutes. |
| 8. Camkan <u>hwesa</u> e tilla il i
issimnita. | I have to stop by the office for a few minutes. |
| 9. Camkan hwesa e <u>kal il</u> i issimnita. | I have to go ('something to go for') to the office for a few minutes. |
| 10. Camkan hwesa e <u>hal il</u> i issimnita. | I have something to do at the office for a few minutes. |
| *11. Camkan hwesa e <u>pol il</u> i issimnita. | I have some business at the office for a few minutes. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in tapang esə kitalin
kəs i cohkessimnita. | You'd better wait at the tearoom. |
| 2. Sənsəŋ in <u>hakkyo e kanin kəs i</u>
cohkessimnita. | You'd better go to school. |
| 3. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəŋgə lil kalichinin</u>
<u>kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better teach English. |
| 4. Sənsəŋ in <u>cip e issnin kəs i</u>
cohkessimnita. | You'd better stay home. |
| 5. Sənsəŋ in <u>hyuka lil patnin kəs</u>
<u>i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better take a vacation. |
| 6. Sənsəŋ in <u>com swinin kəs i</u>
cohkessimnita. | You'd better take a little rest. |
| 7. Sənsəŋ in <u>ki yəca lil mannanin</u>
<u>kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better meet her. |
| 8. Sənsəŋ in <u>Ceimsi eke mulə ponin</u>
<u>kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better ask James. |
| *9. Sənsəŋ in <u>kimantunin kəs i</u>
cohkessimnita. | You'd better stop doing [it]. |
| 10. Sənsəŋ in <u>təhak il kith-nənin</u>
<u>kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better finish college. |
| 11. Sənsəŋ in <u>mənce ttenanin kəs i</u>
cohkessimnita. | You'd better leave first (before
me). |
| 12. Sənsəŋ in <u>yəki esə nəlinin kəs</u>
<u>i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better get off here. |
| 13. Sənsəŋ in <u>yəki e cha lil seunin</u>
<u>kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | You'd better park [your] car here. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. (Sənsəŋ in) hakkyo e kaci anhnin
kəs i cohkessimnita. | [You]'d better not go to school. |
| 2. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>Yəŋgə lo mal-haci</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | [You]'d better not speak in English. |
| 3. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>ki salam il kitalici</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i</u> cohkessimnita. | [You]'d better not wait for him. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>kɪ yəŋghwa lɪl poci</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not see the movie. |
| 5. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>i catongcha lɪl saci</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not buy this auto-mobile. |
| 6. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>onɪl tola oci anhnin</u>
<u>kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not go back today. |
| 7. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>yəki esə nəlici anhnin</u>
<u>kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not get off here. |
| 8. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>yəki e cha lɪl seuci</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not park the car here. |
| *9. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>i phyənci lɪl ponæci</u>
<u>anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not send this letter. |

H. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

Student: Aniyo, thaci mapsita.

'No, let's not (take).'

1. Kələ kal kka yo?
'Shall we walk?'Aniyo, kələ kaci mapsita.
'No, let's not (walk).'

2. Mun aph esə nəlɪl kka yo?

Aniyo, mun aph esə nəlici mapsita.

3. Hankuk yəŋghwa lɪl pol kka yo?

Aniyo, (Hankuk yəŋghwa lɪl) poci
mapsita.

4. Onɪl cip e issɪl kka yo?

Aniyo, cip e issci mapsita.

5. Cəŋghkəcang esə kɪ pun ɪl kitalɪl
kka yo?Aniyo, (cəŋghkəcang esə) kitalici
mapsita.

6. I phyənci lɪl puchɪl kka yo?

Aniyo, puchici mapsita.

7. Kathi tapang e tɪllɪl kka yo?

Aniyo, (tapang e) tɪllici mapsita.

8. Uli kot tola ol kka yo?

Aniyo, kot tola oci mapsita.

9. Itta mannal kka yo?

Aniyo, (itta) mannaci mapsita.

10. Kɪ yəca eke i kɪlɪm ɪl poyə cul
kka yo?

Aniyo, poyə cuci mapsita.

11. Cɪkɪm ɪl ɪl sɪcak-hal kka yo?

Aniyo, cɪkɪm sɪcak-haci mapsita.

12. Cokɪm swɪl kka yo?

Aniyo, swɪci mapsita.

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

Student: Aniyo, hapsing il thaci anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

'No, we'd better not take a jitney.'

1. Tapang e tilla il kka yo?

Aniyo, (tapang e) tilla il anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

2. Ki yeca il kital il kka yo?

Aniyo, (ki yeca il) kital il anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

3. Seul e tola kal kka yo?

Aniyo, (Seul e) tola kaci anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

4. Ppesi il thako kal kka yo?

Aniyo, (ppesi il) thako kaci anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.5. Taim cuil e hyuka il pat il kka
yo?Aniyo, taim cuil e (hyuka il) pat il
anhnin kes i cohkessimnita.

6. Lætiyo il tilla il kka yo?

Aniyo, (lætiyo il) tilla il anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

7. Hankuk mal il pæul kka yo?

Aniyo, (Hankuk mal il) pæul anhnin
kes i cohkessimnita.

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Cikim hakkyo e ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go to school now?'

Student: Aniyo, kaci masipsiyo.

'No, please don't go.'

1. Phyenci il puchye to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, puchil masipsiyo.

2. Hapsing il thako ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, thako kaci masipsiyo.

3. Sensæng e samusil e tilla to
cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, tilla il masipsiyo.

4. Sichæng aph esæ nælie to
cohsimnikka?Aniyo, (sichæng aph esæ) nælie
masipsiyo.5. Sensæng il tapang esæ kitalie to
cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, (na il) kital il masipsiyo.

6. Cip e tola ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, tola kaci masipsiyo.

7. Cokim swie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, swil masipsiyo.

8. Cikim ttæna to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim ttæna il masipsiyo.

9. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ
masipsiyo.

10. Kyosil ese khēphi lil masie to
cohsimnikka?
11. Malssim com mule pwa to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, (kyosil ese khēphi lil)
masici masipsiyo.

Aniyo, mule poci masipsiyo.

K. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Na nin phyenci lil
puchikessimnita.

'I'll mail a letter.'

Student: Na to phyenci lil puchie
ya hæ yo.

'I have to mail a letter, too.'

1. Na nin kicha lil thakessimnita.
2. Na nin Mikuk Tæsakwan e
tillikessimnita.
3. Na nin cohin tæhakkyo e
tanikessimnita.
4. Na nin Ceimsi lil kitalikessimnita.
5. Na nin næil Sëul il ttenakessimnita.
6. Na nin nal mata Hankuk mal il
yënsip-hakessimnita.
7. Na nin cënyëk e cip e isskessimnita.
8. Na nin khēphi lil masikessimnita.
9. Na nin wekyokwan i tweekessimnita.
10. Na nin taim cuil e Sëul e tola
okessimnita.

Na to kicha lil tha ya hæ yo.

Na to Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillë ya
hæ yo.

Na to cohin tæhakkyo e tannie ya
hæ yo.

Na to Ceimsi lil kitalie ya hæ yo.

Na to næil Sëul il ttena ya hæ yo.

Na to nal mata Hankuk mal il
yënsip-hæ ya hæ yo.

Na to cënyëk e cip e isse ya hæ yo.

Na to khēphi lil masie ya hæ yo.

Na to wekyokwan i twee ya hæ yo.

Na to taim cuil e Sëul e tola wa
ya hæ yo.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pæwësse yo?

'Have you studied Korean?'

Student: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pæwë
ya hæsse yo.

'Yes, I had to (study Korean).'

1. Phyenci lil puchiësse yo?
2. Kicha lil thako kasse yo?
3. Cohin tæhakkyo e taniësse yo?
4. Mun aph ese næliësse yo?

Ne, phyenci lil puchie ya hæsse yo.

Ne, kicha lil thako ka ya hæsse yo.

Ne, cohin tæhakkyo e tanie ya hæsse
yo.

Ne, mun aph ese nælie ya hæsse yo.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Kim Sənsəŋ in Səul il ttənasse
yo? | Ne, (Kim Sənsəŋ in Səul il) ttəna
ya həssə yo. |
| 6. Tosəkwan esə Ceimsi lil kitaliəsə
yo? | Ne, (tosəkwan esə Ceimsi lil) kitaliə
ya həssə yo. |
| 7. əce Pusan esə tola wassə yo? | Ne, (əce Pusan esə) tola wa ya
həssə yo. |
| 8. Kɪ pun in hakkyo sənsəŋ i tweəsə
yo? | Ne, (kɪ pun in) hakkyo sənsəŋ i
tweə ya həssə yo. |
| 9. Kɪ il il əce kkaci kkith-nəssə yo? | Ne, (kɪ il il) əce kkaci kkith-nə
həssə yo. |
| 10. Pəlsə hyuka lil patəsə yo? | Ne, pəlsə hyuka lil patə ya həssə
yo. |

M. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Sɪnə lo kal kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown?'
'Do you want me to go downtown?'

Student: Sɪnə lo ka tilil kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'
'Would you like me to go downtown
(for you)?'

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Chæk il ilkɪl kka yo? | Chæk il ilkə tilil kka yo? |
| 2. Tapang esə kitalil kka yo? | Tapang esə kitaliə tilil kka yo? |
| 3. Khəphi lil sal kka yo? | Khəphi lil sa tilil kka yo? |
| 4. I cha lil phal kka yo? | I cha lil phala tilil kka yo? |
| 5. Hankuk mal il kalichil kka yo? | Hankuk mal il kalichie tilil kka yo? |
| 6. Kathi cip e issil kka yo? | Kathi cip e isse tilil kka yo? |
| 7. Kil il mulə pol kka yo? | Kil il mulə pwa tilil kka yo? |
| 8. Kɪ chæk il chacil kka yo? | Kɪ chæk il chace tilil kka yo? |
| 9. Yəki esə nəlil kka yo? | Yəki esə nəlie tilil kka yo? |
| 10. Kim Sənsəŋ il mannal kka yo? | Kim Sənsəŋ il manna tilil kka yo? |

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Chæk il ilkæ tilikesse yo.

Student: Ne, (chæk il) ilkæ cusipsiyo.

1. Tapang esæ kitaliæ tilikesse yo.

2. Khæphi lil sa tilikesse yo.

3. Kil il mulæ pwa tilikesse yo.

4. K1 chæk il chacæ tilikesse yo.

5. Cip e { isskesse yo.
 { isse tilikesse yo.6. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilikesse
yo.

7. Wen ccok ilo ka tilikesse yo.

8. Mikuk Yængsakwan esæ nælie
tilikesse yo.9. Onil ohu e samusil e tille
tilikesse yo.

'I will read the book for you.'

'Yes, please read it for me.'

Ne, tapang esæ kitaliæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, khæphi lil sa cusipsiyo.

Ne, kil il mulæ pwa cusipsiyo.

Ne, k1 chæk il chacæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, cip e isse cusipsiyo.

Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kalichie
cusipsiyo.

Ne, wen ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo.

Ne, Mikuk Yængsakwan esæ nælie
cusipsiyo.Ne, onil ohu e samusil e tille
cusipsiyo.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: æti lo ka tilil kka yo?
 /sichæng ccok/

Student: Sichæng ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo.

1. æti esæ nælie tilil kka yo?
 /pækhwacem mun/

2. Muæs il sa tilil kka yo? /khæphi/

3. ænce sæsæng e cip e tilil kka
yo? /Suyoil/4. æti esæ sæsæng il kitalil kka
yo? /tosækwan aph/5. æni sinmun il ilkæ tilil kka yo?
 /Sëul Sinmun/6. ænce kkaci 1 il il kkith-næ tilil
kka yo? /mole kkaci/7. æni mal il kalichie tilil kka
yo? /Cungkuk Mal/8. Myæch-si e tasi wa tilil kka yo?
 /tasæs-si/'Where shall I go?' /the direction
of the City Hall/'Please go to (the direction of)
the City Hall.'

Pækhwacem mun esæ nælie cusipsiyo.

Khæphi lil sa cusipsiyo.

Suyoil e tille cusipsiyo.

Tosækwan aph esæ (na lil) kitaliæ
cusipsiyo.

Sëul Sinmun il ilkæ cusipsiyo.

Mole kkaci 1 il il kkith-næ cusipsiyo.

Cungkuk Mal il kalichie cusipsiyo.

Tasæs-si e tasi wa cusipsiyo.

P. Expansion Drill (Use /kai ta/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Uphyenkuk e wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office.'

Student: Uphyenkuk e kai ta wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office almost.'

1. Haksang til i Seul ese ttenassimnita.

Haksang til i Seul ese kai ta
ttenassimnita.

2. Onil il i kkith-nassimnita.

Onil il i kai ta kkith-nassimnita.

3. Hakkyo kal sikan i tweessimnita.

Hakkyo kal sikan i kai ta
tweessimnita.4. Hankuk mal sensang til il
mannassimnita.Hankuk mal Sensang til il kai ta
mannassimnita.

5. Salam til i kicha e thassimnita.

Salam til i kicha e kai ta
thassimnita.6. Ceimsi Sensang in Hankuk mal il
ale titsimnita.Ceimsi Sensang in Hankuk mal il kai
ta ale titsimnita.

7. Uli nin Seul il kukyong-hessimnita.

Uli nin Seul il kai ta kukyong-
hessimnita.

8. Ai til i cip e tola wassimnita.

Ai til i cip e kai ta tola
wassimnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Sinæ lo ka tilil kka yo?

'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'

Student: Ne, sinæ lo ka cuse yo.

'Yes, please (go downtown for me).'

1. I chæk il ilkæ tilil kka yo?

Ne, ilkæ cuse yo.

2. Khæphi lil sa tilil kka yo?

Ne, sa cuse yo.

3. Hankuk mal il kalichyæ tilil kka
yo?

Ne, kalichyæ cuse yo.

4. Kil il mulæ pwa tilil kka yo?

Ne, mulæ pwa cuse yo.

5. Yæki esæ nælyæ tilil kka yo?

Ne, yæki esæ nælyæ cuse yo.

6. Sensang e cip e tilla tilil kka
yo?

Ne, tilla cuse yo.

7. Sensang il kitalyæ tilil kka yo?

Ne, kitalyæ cuse yo.

8. Ki chæk il chacæ tilil kka yo?

Ne, chacæ cuse yo.

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Khəphi lɪl sa tɪlɪl kka yo?

'Shall I buy you coffee?'

Student: (Ne), sa cusimyeŋ
komapkessimnita.'I would appreciate [it] if you buy
me [coffee].'

1. I chæk ɪl ilkə tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, ilkə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

2. Hankuk mal ɪl kalichie tɪlɪl kka
yo?

Ne, kalichie cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

3. Sənsəŋ e cip e tɪllə tɪlɪl kka
yo?

Ne, tɪllə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

4. Tangsin ɪl kitalie tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, kitalie cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

5. Yənpʰil ɪl chace tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, chace cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

6. Kil ɪl mulə pwa tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, mulə pwa cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

7. Cəŋkəcəŋ e kathi ka tɪlɪl kka
yo?

Ne, kathi ka cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

8. Mun ɪl tate tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, tate cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

9. Mun ɪl yələ tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, yələ cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

S. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hankuk mal ɪl alə ya hamnita.

'I have to know Korean.'

Student: Hankuk mal ɪl alci anhimyeŋ
an twemnita.'I have to know Korean. ('If I don't
know Korean, it does not become.')

1. Kicha lɪl thako ka ya hamnita.

Kicha lɪl thako kaci anhimyeŋ an
twemnita.

2. Yəki esə nəlie ya hamnita.

Yəki esə nəlici anhimyeŋ an
twemnita.

3. Mikuk tæsa lɪl kitalie ya hamnita.

Mikuk tæsa lɪl kitalici anhimyeŋ
an twemnita.

4. Mun aph esə məmchue ya hamnita.

Mun aph esə məmchuci anhimyeŋ an
twemnita.

5. Mun ɪl tate ya hamnita.

Mun ɪl tatci anhimyeŋ an twemnita.

6. Catongcha mun ɪl yələ ya hamnita.

Catongcha mun ɪl yəlcı anhimyeŋ an
twemnita.

7. Cali e ance ya hamnita.

Cali e ancci anhimyeŋ an twemnita.

8. Phyənci lɪl pənə ya hamnita.

Phyənci lɪl pənəci anhimyeŋ an
twemnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: (Sənsəŋ in) Ceimsɪ lɪl kitaliə
ya hæ yo?

Student: Ne, Ceimsɪ lɪl kitalici
anhimyen an twe yo.

1. (Sənsəŋ in) wekuk mal ɪl cal hæ
ya hæ yo?
2. (Sənsəŋ in) kot tola wa ya hæ yo?
3. Catongcha mun ɪl tate ya hæ yo?
4. Kɪ sacən ɪ coha ya hæ yo?
5. Yəki esə Sənsəŋ ɪl kitaliə ya hæ
yo?
6. Nəɪl achim e ttena ya hæ yo?
7. Cha lɪl kil yəph e sewə ya hæ yo?

'Do you have to wait for James?'

'Yes, I have to wait for James.'

- Ne, wekuk mal ɪl cal haci anhimyen
an twe yo.
- Ne, kot tola oci anhimyen an twe yo.
- Ne, (catongcha mun ɪl) tatci anhimyen
an twe yo.
- Ne, kɪ sacən ɪ cohci anhimyen an
twe yo.
- Ne, yəki esə (na lɪl) kitalici
anhimyen an twe yo.
- Ne, nəɪl achim e ttenaci anhimyen
an twe yo.
- Ne, (cha lɪl kil yəph e) seuci
anhimyen an twe yo.

U. Response Drill

Tutor: Onɪl hakkyo e kaci anhimyen
an twemnikka?

Student: Aniyo, (onɪl hakkyo e) kaci
anhə to kwəŋchanhə yo.

1. Yəki esə thaci anhimyen an twemnikka?
2. Pyəŋgwən e tillici anhimyen an
twemnikka?
3. Kiləhke mal-haci anhimyen an
twemnikka?
4. ɪyca e ancci anhimyen an twemnikka?
5. Inchən kkaci kələ kaci anhimyen an
twemnikka?
6. Təhak kyosu ka tweci anhimyen an
twemnikka?

'Do you have to go to school today?'

'No, I don't have to go (to school
today).' ('Even though I don't go
to school, it is O.K.')

- Aniyo, yəki esə thaci anhə to
kwəŋchanhə yo.
- Aniyo, tillici anhə to kwəŋchanhə
yo.
- Aniyo, kiləhke mal-haci anhə to
kwəŋchanhə yo.
- Aniyo, ɪyca e ancci anhə to
kwəŋchanhə yo.
- Aniyo, kələ kaci anhə to kwəŋchanhə
yo.
- Aniyo, təhak kyosu ka tweci anhə to
kwəŋchanhə yo.

V. Combination Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il alə ya hamnita.

Chinku lil mantil su issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal il alə ya, chinku
lil mantil su issimnita.

'[You] have to know Korean.' '[You]
can make friends in Korea.'

'[You] have to know Korean to make
friends.' ('Only when you know
Korean you can make friends in
Korea.')

1. Səul e sale ya hamnita. Yələ kaci
lil kukyəng-hal su isse yo.
2. Sikan i isse ya hamnita. Sinə e na
kakesse yo.
3. Cal swie ya hamnita. Taim nal il-
hal su isse yo.
4. Ppesi ka əpsə ya hamnita. Kələ sə
il-halə ka yo.
5. Ton i isse ya hamnita. Cha lil
saci yo.
6. Yəngə lil alə tile ya hamnita. Mal
i cəmi isse yo.

- Səul e sale ya, yələ kaci lil kukyəng-
hal su isse yo.
- Sikan i isse ya, sinə e na kakesse
yo.
- Cal swie ya, taim nal il-hal su
isse yo.
- Ppesi ka əpsə ya, kələ sə il-halə
ka yo.
- Ton i isse ya, cha lil saci yo.
- Yəngə lil alə tile ya, mal i cəmi
isse yo.

W. Response Drill (the use of nəmu)

Tutor: Səul e kil i pencap-haci yo?

Student: Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu pencap-hə
yo.

'The streets in Seoul are crowded,
aren't they?'

'That's right. [They] are too
crowded.'

1. Sənsəng in yosə puncuhaci yo?
2. I kyosil i com copci yo?
3. Hankuk mal i əlyəun mal ici yo?
4. Kim Sənsəng i Səul pukin il^{cal}
alci yo?
5. Onil achim cəncha ka nilici yo?
6. Səul esə Inchən kkaci kicha ka cacu
tanici yo?
7. Sənsəng in achim e nicessci yo?
8. Yosə nin sikan i ppalli kaci yo?

- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu puncuhə yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Com nəmu copa yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu əlyəun mal iye
yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cal alə yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu nilie yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cacu tanie yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu nicesse yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu ppalli ka yo.

X. Response Drill (the use of itta)

Tutor: Cikim ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go now?'

Student: Aniyo, cikim kaci masipsiyo.
Com itta kase yo.'No, don't go now. [You'd better]
go a little later.'

1. Cikim puchie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim puchici masipsiyo.

Com itta puchise yo.

2. Cikim sicak-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci masipsiyo.

Com itta sicak-hase yo.

3. Cikim tola wa to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim tola oci masipsiyo.

com itta tola ose yo.

4. Cikim nælie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim nælicci masipsiyo. Com
itta nælise yo.5. Cikim yeki ese Sænsæng il kitalie
to cohsimnikka?Aniyo, cikim (na lil) kitalicci
masipsiyo. Com itta kitalise yo.

6. Cikim cha e tha to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim thaci masipsiyo. Com
itta thase yo.

7. Cikim mun il yæle to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim yælcii masipsiyo. Com
itta yæ(11)se yo.

8. Cikim mun il tatæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim tatcii masipsiyo. Com
itta tatise yo.9. Cikim yeki ese nælie tilie to
cohsimnikka?Aniyo, cikim nælicci cuci masipsiyo.
Com itta nælicci cuse yo.Y. Grammar Drill (the use of kot)

Tutor: Tola osipsiyo.

'Come back.'

Student: Kot tola osipsiyo.

'Come back soon.'

1. Cæ nin ttænalyeko hamnita.

Cæ nin kot ttænalyeko hamnita.

2. Sicak-hanin kæs i cohkessimnita.

Kot sicak-hanin kæs i cohkessimnita.

3. Il il kımantusipsiyo.

Il il kot kımantusipsiyo.

4. Hal su issimyen, cæ cip e
tillisipsiyo.Hal su issimyen, kot cæ cip e
tillisipsiyo.

5. I catongcha nin phalcii anhkesse yo.

I catongcha nin kot phalcii anhkesse
yo.6. Hankuk mal kongpu lil
kımantuessimnita.Hankuk mal kongpu lil kot
kımantuessimnita.

7. K1 il 1l 1l kkith-nəl su əpsimnita.
 8. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yenghwa
 11l sangyeng-hal kəs imnita.

K1 il 1l kot kkith-nəl su əpsimnita.
 Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yenghwa 11l
 kot sangyeng-hal kəs imnita.

Z. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i onil ttənal kka
 yo?

'Will Mr. Kim leave today (do you
 think)?'

Student: Ne, ama onil ttənal kəs
 imnita.

'Yes, probably [he]'ll leave today.'

Aniyo, ama onil ttənaci anhil
 kəs imnita.

'No, probably [he]'ll not leave
 today.'

1. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issil kka yo?

Ne, ama (cip e) {issil } kəs imnita.
 {kyesil }

Aniyo, ama (cip e) {əpsil
 {an kyesil
 kyesici anhil }

kəs imnita.

2. Hakkyo ka məl kka yo?

Ne, ama məl kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama məlci anhil kəs imnita.

3. Nəil nal i cohil kka yo?

Ne, ama cohil kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama cohci anhil kəs imnita.

4. Ceimsi ka kot təsa ka twel kka
 yo?

Ne, ama kot (təsa ka) twel kəs
 imnita.

Aniyo, ama kot (təsa ka) tweci anhil
 kəs imnita.

5. Onil k1 il i kəi ta kkith-nal
 kka yo?

Ne, ama kəi ta kkith-nal kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama kəi ta kkith-naci anhil
 kəs imnita.

6. K1 salam i kil e cha 11l seul
 kka yo?

Ne, ama seul kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama seuci anhil kəs imnita.

7. Miss Brown i Hankuk mal 1l ta
 alə t1l1l kka yo?

Ne, ama ta alə t1l1l kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama ta alə titci anhil kəs
 imnita.

8. Sikan i manhi kəllil kka yo?

Ne, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllil kəs
 imnita.

Aniyo, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllici
 anhil kəs imnita.

EXERCISES

1. You are in the taxi. Ask the taxi driver to:
 - a. go to the airport.
 - b. hurry to the International Broadcasting Station.
 - c. go a little faster.
 - d. go a little slowly /chəŋchənhi/.
 - e. close the window /chang-mun/ on his left.
 - f. turn /tol-ta/ left at the next corner /kolmok/.
 - g. turn right at the second crossroad /ne-kəli/.
 - h. tell you when you come to the downtown area.
 - i. let you know /allyə cu-ta/ if he sees the fire station.
 - j. park the car across the street /kil kənnə/.
 - k. stop the car at the gate /təmun/ of the playground /utongcang/.
 - l. wait for you for a little while.
 - m. not go too fast.
 - n. not take on other passengers.
 - o. not stop on the street.
 - p. not park on the street.
2. Make short dialogues so that the second party uses the following expressions in his speech:

a. kələ sə	b. thako kamyən
c. com tə ppalli	d. kakkai esə
e. camkan man	f. pol il
g. tiliil il	h. itta
i. kot	j. nəmu
k. ama	l. kəi ta
m. palsə	n. acik
3. Tell Mr. Smith that you would appreciate it if he would:

a. show you the dictionary.	b. teach you Korean.
c. give you a ride.	d. drop you off at the door.
e. buy you a cup of coffee.	f. stop the car.
g. park his car straight.	h. wait for you.
i. mail this letter for you.	j. <u>correct</u> /kochi-ta/ your Korean.
k. loan you some money.	l. send you a book.
m. let you know the time.	n. come a little <u>early</u> /ilcciki/.
o. go a little slowly.	

4. Tell the following stories to Pak Sænsæng that:

(a) Messrs. Smith and Kim are going downtown. Mr. Smith wants to stop by a tearoom first. He is not going to meet anyone there, but he'd like to have a cup of coffee. Mr. Kim wants to go downtown first and stop by a tearoom. There are lots of nice tearooms downtown. Even though there are tearooms in this area, they are not so good.

(b) Messrs. Kim and Smith took a taxi and went to the Central Post Office first. They got off near the front door. Mr. Kim had some business to take care of for a while. He had to mail a letter. And it took him a little time. So, Mr. Smith went to the tearoom first and waited there. Mr. Kim came to the tearoom a little later but was not too late.

제 12 과 음식

(대화 A)

배

배가 곱습니다

1. 부락운 : 나는 좀 배가 곱습니다.

점심

먹으러

점심 먹으러 안 가겠습니까?

점심 시간

되었습니다

시간이 되었습니다

2. 이 : 벌써 점심 시간이 다 되었습니다

3. 부락운 : 예, 점심 먹을 시간입니다. 점심 먹으러
(나) 갑시다.

잡수합니다

4. 이 : 오늘 점심은 무엇을 잡수시겠습니까?

한식, 한국 음식

먹어 볼까요

5. 부락운 : 오늘은 한식을 먹어 볼까요?

아무 것이나

음식점

UNIT 12. Eating and Drinking

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ABrown

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| pæ | stomach |
| pæ ka kophimnita | I'm hungry |
| 1. Na nin com pæ ka kophimnita. | I'm a little hungry. |
| cæmsim | lunch |
| mækilæ | to eat |
| Cæmsim mækilæ an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to eat (lunch)? |

Lee

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| cæmsim sikan | lunch hour |
| sikan i tweæssimnita | time is up ('time became') |
| 2. Pælsæ cæmsim sikan i ta | Is it already lunch time? ('Has the |
| tweæssimnikka? | lunch hour already become?') |

Brown

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 3. Ne, cæmsim mækil sikan imnita. | Yes, it is (lunch time). ('It's time |
| Cæmsim mækilæ (na) kapsita. | to eat lunch.) Let's go (out) for |
| | lunch. |

Lee

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| capsusimnikka | do [you] eat (honored)? |
| 4. Onil cæmsim in muæs il capsusikessæ | What will you have for lunch today? |
| yo? | |

Brown

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Hankuk imsik } | Korean food |
| Hansik } | |
| mæke pol kka yo | shall we try eating? |
| 5. Onil in Hansik il mæke pol kka | Shall we try Korean food today? |
| yo? | |

6. 이 : 저는 아무 것이나 좋습니다. 어디에 좋은
음식점이 있어요?

가까운 곳, 가까운 데
한식점

7. 부락운 : 예, 여기에서 가까운 곳에 한식점이 하나
있습니다.

음식

8. 김 : 거기 음식은 어떻습니까?

잘 합니다, 잘 만듭니다

9. 부락운 : 예, 거기 음식을 잘 합니다.

싸니까

언제든지

10. 그리고, 음식 값도 싸니까, 언제든지
사람이 많습니다.

(대화 B)

주문

들겠습니다, 드시겠습니다

11. 웨이트레스 : 아직 주문 안 하셨습니까?
무엇을 드시겠습니까?

메뉴

12. 이 : 메뉴를 좀 보여 주세요. 한식은 무엇이 있어요?

Lee

amu kəs (ina)

imsikcəm

anything; whatever it may be

restaurant

6. Cə nin amu kəs ina cohsimnita.
eti e cohın imsikcəm i isse yo?

Anything is O.K. Do you know of a
good restaurant? ('Is there a good
restaurant somewhere?')

Brown

kakkaun te }
kakkaun kos }

Hansikcəm

some place near

Korean restaurant

7. Ne, yeki esə kakkaun kos e
Hansikcəm i hana issimnita.

Yes, there is a Korean restaurant
near here. ('At the nearby place
from here, there's one Korean
restaurant.')

Lee

imsik

food (cooked)

8. Kəki imsik in ətəhsimnikka?

How is the food there?

Brown

cal hamnita
cal mantı(11)mnita

([they] do well)
([they] make well)

9. Ne, kəki imsik ıl cal hamnita.

Oh, the food is good.

ssani kka

because [it]'s cheap

ənce tinci

anytime; all the time

10. Kiliko, imsik kaps to ssani kka,
ənce tinci salam i manhsimnita.

And because it ('food price') is
cheap, it is always crowded.

Dialogue B

(..in the restaurant..)

Waitress

cumun

order

tilkessimnikka

[I] lift; [I] have ('eat;
drink')

tilkessimnikka }
ti(11)sikessimnikka }

will you have ('eat; drink')?

11. Acik cumun an hasyessimnikka?
Mues ıl tılsikesse yo?

Haven't you ordered, yet? What
would you like to have, sir?

잡수 시려면

불고기

곰탕

냉면 등

13. 웨이트레스: 여터 가지가 있습니다. 한식을 잡수 시려면
불고기와 곰탕, 그리고 냉면 등이 있습니다.

14. 이: 선생은 무엇을 하시겠어요?

불고기하고 밥

15. 부락운: 나는 불고기하고 밥을 먹겠습니다.

해 보겠습니다

16. 이: 저는 곰탕을 해 보겠습니다.

또

가져 옵니다

17. 웨이트레스: 다른 것은 또 무엇을 가져 올까요?

목

마릅니다

목이 마릅니다

마실 거

18. 이: 아, 나는 목이 마릅니다. 마실 것은 무엇이
있지요?

맥주

사이다

Lee

menyu

menu

12. Menyu (111) com poye cuse yo.
Hansik in mues i isse yo?

Please let me see the menu. What
kinds of Korean food do you have?

Waitress

capsusilyemyen

if you are going to eat

Pul-koki

(a kind of barbecue beef)
('fire-meat')

Komthan

(soup with rice and meat)

Nengmyen ting

(cold noodle) and so on

13. Yele kaci ka issimnita. Hansik
il capsusilyemyen, Pul-koki wa
Komthang, kiliko, Nengmyen ting
i issimnita.

We have several kinds. If you're
going to have Korean food, there
are Pul-koki, Komthang, Nengmyen
and other things.

Lee

14. Sensang in mues il hasikesse
yo?

What will you have?

Brown

pap

(cooked) rice; meal

Pul-koki hako pap

Pul-koki and rice

15. Na nin Pul-koki hako pap il
mekkessimnita.

I'll have Pul-koki and rice.

Lee

16. Ce nin Komthang il hæ pokessimnita.

I'll try Komthang.

Waitress

tto

also; besides; again

kace omnita

[I] bring (thing)

17. Talin kes (in) tto mues (il)
kace ol kka yo?

Would you like anything else?
('What other things shall I also
bring?')

19. 웨이트레스: 맥주와 사이다가 있습니다.

안주

병

병만

콩

20. 이 : 그럼, 맥주 두 병과 안주토 콩을 좀 가져
오세요.

Lee

mok

neck; throat

malimnita

[it] dries

mok i malimnita

[I]'m thirsty ('throat dries')

masil kes

something to drink

18. A, na nin mok i malimnita. Masil
kes in mues i issci yo?

Oh, I'm thirsty. What do you have
to drink?

Waitress

mækcu

beer

Saita

(a kind of soft drink)

19. Mækcu wa Saita ka issimnita.

We have beer and Saita.

Lee

ancu

relish [taken with wine];
snacks

pyəng

bottle

pyəng man

bottle only; just bottle

khong

beans

20. Kiləm, mækcu tu pyəng kwa ancū
lo khong il com kacə ose yo.

Well, bring us just two bottles of
beer and some beans for snacks.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Pæ ka kophimnita. ('Stomach is empty.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm hungry'. The intransitive verb kophi- may be preceded by pæ 'stomach' as its subject or topic, but never by other nominals.
2. Sikan i (ta) tweæssimnita. ('Time (all) became.') is a fixed expression which is used as the equivalent of 'time is up'. The intransitive verb twe-, occurring usually in the past tense form /tweæssimnita/ after a point in time, denotes arriving at a certain point in time, and after a period of time denotes elapsing of a certain period of time. Compare:

Han-si ka tweæssimnita.	'It is one o'clock now.'
Han sikan i tweæssimnita.	'It has been an hour.'
4. Capsusi- is the honorific or polite equivalent of mæk- 'to eat'.
6. Amu 'any-' is a determinative which occurs before (a nominal +) na/ina, making an adverbial phrase: amu kəs ina 'anything', amu salam ina 'anybody', amu imsik ina 'any food', amu ttæ na 'any time', amu nal ina 'any day', amu cip ina 'any house', amu na 'anyone'. The construction amu + Nominal + na/ina = Question Nominal + na/ina (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 10). -cəm is a bound form which occurs as a part of certain place nouns, meaning 'store' or 'shop': sangcəm 'store', pækhwacəm 'department store', imsikcəm 'restaurant', Hansikcəm 'Korean restaurant', etc.
7. Both te 'place' and kos 'place' are synonyms and both are post-nouns. However, te occurs only after noun-modifier words, whereas kos occurs after either determinatives or noun-modifier words. Compare Group 1 with Group 2:

GROUP 1

cohin te	'a good place'
pissan te	'an expensive place'
kongpu-hanin te	'the place of studying'
sanin te	'a living place'

GROUP 2

ənɪ kos	'which place'
i kos	'this place'
cə kos	'that place'
kakkaun kos	'the place which is near'
mən kos	'the faraway place'

9. In Kəki ɪmsik ɪl cal hamnita. ('There [they] do food well.'), cal hamnita is the substitute for cal mant(ɪl)ɪmnita. ('[They] make well.').
11. Tɪ(ɪ)- 'to lift', 'to hold' is either a transitive or an intransitive verb. When the situation is clear, with or without being preceded by the name of food and/or beverage, tɪ(ɪ)- is used as a substitute for mək- 'to eat', or masi- 'to drink'.
13. Tɪŋ 'and so forth', 'etc.' is a post-noun which occurs after two or more nominals. It singles out the preceding nominals to be the subject, the topic or the object for the following inflected expression.
14. (Sənsəŋ ɪn) mues ɪl hasikessə yo? ('What will you do?') in an eating and/or drinking situation is used as a substitute for Mues ɪl məkessə yo? 'What will you eat?' or Mues ɪl masikessə yo? 'What will you drink?'. This is like the English expression, What will you have? Ha- and tɪ(ɪ)- are interchangeably used in such a situation.
17. The principal verb stem kaci- in the phrase kacə o- 'to bring' means 'to possess', 'to have', 'to hold', or 'to take'. Observe the following verb phrases:

kacə o-	=	kaciko o-	'to bring [something]' ('to have and come')
kacə ka-	=	kaciko ka-	'to take away [something]'
talɪə o-	=	taliko o-	'to bring [someone]'
talɪə ka-	=	taliko ka-	'to take [someone]'

18. Mok i malimnita. ('Throat is dry.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm thirsty'. The noun mok means either 'throat' or 'neck'. The verb mal- is either an action verb or a description verb, meaning 'to dry' and 'to be dry' respectively.
19. Saita is a kind of soft drink which is commonly used in Korea during warm seasons. The taste of it is similar to that of Seven-ups.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(1)ni kka 'because...', 'since...'

The inflected form ending in -(1)ni plus kka which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The ending -(1)ni is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -ni to a stem ending in a vowel and -ini to a stem ending in a consonant. The construction -(1)ni kka denotes the cause or basis of the action or description of the verb in the (1)ni form for the succeeding inflected expressions. Examples:

Cip i kakkauni kka, kæle se il-hale omnita.	'I come to work on foot because my home is near.'
Ton i epsini kka, na kaci anhkesse yo.	'Because I don't have money, I won't go out.'
Hankuk mal il mal-hani kka, Hankuk ese il-haki phyelli-hamnita.	'Because I speak Korean, it is very convenient to work in Korea.'

Note: In the above construction kka may be dropped with the same meaning.

2. -(1)lyemyen 'if [you] are going to...', 'if [you] intend to...'

The inflected form ending in -(1)lyemyen which may be followed by a pause denotes the conditional desire or intention of the subject for the future for the following inflected expression. The ending -(1)lyemyen may be added to a verb stem with or without the honorific suffix, but with no tense suffixes.

Examples:

Wekyokwan i twelyemyen, wekuk mal il cal hæya hamnita.	'If [you] intend to be a diplomat, [you] have to speak foreign languages.'
Hankuk mal il cal halyemyen, Yenge lil ssici anhnin kes i cohkessimnita.	'If [you]'re going to speak Korean well, [you]'d better not use English.'

Mikuk yŏnghwa lil polyŏmyŏn,
Kukce Kikcang ilo kapsita.

'If you {want } to see American
 {intend}
movies, let's go to the International
Theatre.'

Note: -lyemen is added to a vowel stem and -ilyemen to a consonant stem.

3. Infinitive + po-

The verb po- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. The construction Infinitive + po- literally means something like 'does something and see', but the denotation of the auxiliary po- is 'try doing something to see the result'. Some verb phrases of this construction have unique meanings and the two verbs (i.e. principal and auxiliary verbs) are inseparable from each other. Thus, each verb phrase of this kind should be memorized as a unit. Examples:

mule po-ta	'inquires'
tola po-ta	'looks back'
hilkŏ po-ta	'steers'
pala po-ta	'looks over' (from the distance)
hŏ po-ta	'tries (doing)'
manŏ po-ta	'tries meeting'
alŏ po-ta	'finds out'
chiŏta po-ta	'looks up to', 'beholds'
ipe po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
meke po-ta	'tries (eating) food'
tile ka po-ta	'goes in to see'

4. Particle tinci/itinci

Tinci occurs after a nominal ending in a consonant; itinci after a nominal ending in a vowel. The particle tinci/itinci which is synonymous with na/ina can be interchangeable only in the following two constructions (See (a) and (b) of Grammar Note 4, Unit 10).

- (a) Nominal 1 + tinci/itinci + Nominal 2 = 'N1 or N2', 'either N1 or N2'
- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| hakkyo tinci cip | 'either school or house' |
| Yengŏ tinci Tokilŏ | 'either English or German' |
| onil itinci nŏil | 'either today or tomorrow' |
- (b) Question Nominal + tinci/itinci = adverbial phrase
- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| muŏs itinci | 'anything' |
| etŏ tinci | 'anywhere' |
| ŏnce tinci | 'any time' |

nuku tinci

'anybody'

myechil itinci

'any date'

5. Particle man 'only'

In Unit 9, we noticed the construction -ci man (i.e. the ci form + the Particle man) means '-but'.

A nominal X + man occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expressions, meaning 'only X' or 'just X'. Examples:

Mækcū tu pyəng man kacə ose yo.

'Bring [us] just two bottles of beer.'

Na nin kī yəca man salang-hamniṭa.

'I love only her.'

Kim Sensəng in nal mata Yəngə man
mal-hæ yo.

'Mr. Kim speaks only English every-day.'

Kī nal, Kim in əpsəssko, na man
Təthongyəng il mannasse yo.

'Kim was not [there] that day, and only I met Mr. President.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Cəmsim məkilə an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to eat lunch? |
| 2. <u>Sinə küküəng-halə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to see around downtown? |
| 3. <u>Capci ilkilə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to read magazines? |
| *4. <u>Sanpo-halə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to take a walk? |
| 5. <u>Məkcü masilə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for beer? |
| *6. <u>Sicang polə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping? |
| 7. <u>Yənghwa polə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to see a movie? |
| *8. <u>Chum chulə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for dancing? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. *Cəmsim məkil sikan i ta
tweəssimnita. | It's time for lunch now. ('Lunch time is all up.') |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo kal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to go to school now. |
| 3. <u>Kongpu-hal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time for studying now. |
| 4. <u>Kicha thal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to get on the train now. |
| 5. <u>Tənəl sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to leave now. |
| 6. <u>Sicak-hal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to begin now. |
| 7. <u>Ppəsi ka tahl sikan</u> i ta
tweəssimnita. | It's time for bus to arrive now. |
| 8. <u>Swil sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to take a break ('rest') now. |
| 9. <u>(Cam) cal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to go to bed now. |
| 10. <u>Kimantul sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to quit [it] now. |
| *11. <u>Ilənəl sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to get up now. |
| *12. <u>Il i kkith-nal sikan</u> i ta
tweəssimnita. | It's time to end the work. |
| *13. <u>Sicang polə kal sikan</u> i ta
tweəssimnita. | It's time to go for food shopping. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Cəmsim in muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for lunch? |
| *2. <u>Achim</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for breakfast? |
| *3. <u>Cənyək</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for supper? |
| *4. <u>Achim siksa</u> nin muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for breakfast ('morning meal')? |
| *5. <u>Cəyək siksa</u> nin muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for dinner ('evening meal')? |
| 6. <u>Onil cəmsim</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo? | What will you have for lunch today? |
| 7. Onil cəmsim in <u>musin imsik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | What kind of food will you have for lunch today? |
| 8. Onil cəmsin in <u>Cungkuk imsik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | Will you have Chinese food for lunch today? |
| *9. Onil cəmsim in <u>Yangsik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | Will you have Western food for lunch today? |
| *10. Onil cəmsim in <u>Wəssik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | Will you have Japanese food for lunch today? |
| 11. Onil cəmsim in <u>Hənsik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | Will you have Korean food for lunch today? |

D. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hənsik il məkıl kka yo?

'Shall we eat Korean food?'

Student: Hənsik il məkə pol kka yo?

'Shall we try (eating) Korean food?'

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hakkyo e kal kka yo? | Hakkyo e ka pol kka yo? |
| 2. Il il sɨcak-hal kka yo? | Il il sɨcak-hæ pol kka yo? |
| 3. Wekuk mal il pəul kka yo? | Wekuk mal il pəwə pol kka yo? |
| 4. Kicha lɨl thal kka yo? | Kicha lɨl tha pol kka yo? |
| 5. Mækcɨ lɨl masil kka yo? | Mækcɨ lɨl masiə pol kka yo? |
| 6. Samusil e tɨllɨl kka yo? | Samusil e tɨllə pol kka yo? |
| 7. Komthang il hal kka yo? | Komthang il hæ pol kka yo? |
| 8. Hankuk mal il yənsɨp-hal kka yo? | Hankuk mal il yənsɨp-hæ pol kka yo? |
| 9. Mun aph esə nəlɨl kka yo? | Mun aph esə nəlɨə pol kka yo? |
| 10. Tapang esə kɨ salam il kitalɨl kka yo? | Tapang esə kɨ salam il kitaliə pol kka yo? |

E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il meke pol kka yo?

'Shall we try Korean food?'

Student: Ne, Hansik il meke popsita.

'Yes, let's try (Korean food).'

1. Hakkyo e tillo pol kka yo?

Ne, hakkyo e tillo popsita.

2. Kyosil e tillo ka pol kka yo?

Ne, kyosil e tillo ka popsita.

3. Cikim sicak-hae pol kka yo?

Ne, cikim sicak-hae popsita.

4. Yeki ese Kim Sensaeng il kitalie
pol kka yo?

Ne, Yeki ese kitalie popsita.

5. Mun aph ese naelie pol kka yo?

Ne, mun aph ese naelie popsita.

6. Hankuk mal lo mal-hae pol kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hae popsita.

7. Hankuk maekeu lil masie pol kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk maekeu lil masie popsita.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Amu kes ina cohsimnita.

Anything is O.K.

2. Mues ina cohsimnita.

Anything is O.K.

3. Amu salam ina cohsimnita.

Anyone is O.K.

4. eti na cohsimnita.

Any place is O.K.

5. Nuku na cohsimnita.

Anybody is O.K.

6. Amu haksang ina cohsimnita.

Any student is O.K.

7. Amu {te na
kos ina} cohsimnita.

Any place is O.K.

8. Amu kikeang ina cohsimnita.

Any theatre is O.K.

*9. Amu ttæ na cohsimnita.

Any time is O.K.

10. ence na cohsimnita.

Any time is O.K.

11. eni nal ina cohsimnita.

Any day is O.K.

12. Musin yoil ina cohsimnita.

Any day of the week is O.K.

13. Amu lmsik ina cohsimnita.

Any kind of food is O.K.

*14. eni cumal ina cohsimnita.

Any weekend is O.K.

1. Menu (111) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me the menu.
2. <u>Ki kilim</u> (11) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me that picture.
3. <u>Nolan syassi</u> (111) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me a yellow shirt.
4. <u>Kkaman yangpok</u> (11) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me the black suit.
5. <u>Phalan suken</u> (11) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me a blue towel.
6. <u>Hayan cong</u> i (111) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me the white paper.
7. <u>Han-Yeng sacen</u> (11) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me a Korean-English dictionary.
8. <u>Menu</u> (111) com poye cusipsiyo.	Please show me the menu.
9. Menu (111) com <u>kace osipsiyo</u> .	Please bring [me] the menu.
10. Menu (111) com <u>kace kasipsiyo</u> .	Please take (away) the menu.

1.	Na nin <u>mæku</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink beer.
2.	Na nin <u>saita</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink saita.
3.	Na nin <u>mul</u> ɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink water.
4.	Na nin <u>khəphi</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like (to drink) coffee.
5.	Na nin <u>khokhoa</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like (to drink) cocoa.
6.	Na nin <u>cha</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like (to drink) tea (green).
*7.	Na nin <u>hongcha</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like (to drink) tea (black).
*8.	Na nin <u>chan mul</u> ɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like (to drink) cold water.
*9.	Na nin <u>əlɪm mul</u> ɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink ice water.
*10.	Na nin <u>khokhakholla</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink coca cola.
*11.	Na nin <u>uyu</u> lɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to drink milk.
*12.	Na nin <u>sul</u> ɪl masiko siphsimnita.	I'd like to have (some) {wine } {liquor}.

I. Grammar Drill (Make one sentence out of two as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka mæmnita. Catongcha
lo kamnita.

'The school is far. I go by car.'

Student: Hakkyo ka mæni kka, catongcha
lo kamnita.

'Because the school is far, I go by
car.'

1. I siktang e nin imsik kaps i
ssamnita. Salam i manhsimnita.

I siktang e nin imsik kaps i ssani
kka, salam i manhsimnita.

2. Hankuk e kamnita. Hankuk mal il
pæwæ ya hamnita.

Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il
pæwæ ya hamnita.

3. Yeki e siktang i æpsimnita. Sinæ
kkaci kamnita.

Yeki e siktang i æpsini kka, sinæ
kkaci kamnita.

4. Mok i malimnita. Mækcū līl
masikessimnita.

Mok i malini kka, mækcū līl
masikessimnita.

5. Cæmsim sikan i ta twemnita. Na
nin pæ ka kophimnita.

Cæmsim sikan i ta tweni kka, na nin
pæ ka kophimnita.

6. Na nin Hansik il cohahamnita.
Hansikcæm e kakessimnita.

Na nin Hansik il cohahani kka,
Hansikcæm e kakessimnita.

7. Ppæsi ka manhci anhsimnita. Nil
salam i manhsimnita.

Ppæsi ka manhci anhini kka, nil
salam i manhsimnita.

8. Samusil i cip esæ kakkapsimnita.
Kim Sænsæng in kælæ sæ tanimnita.

Samusil i cip esæ kakkauni kka, Kim
Sænsæng in kælæ sæ tanimnita.

9. Hankuk mal il amnita. Hankuk salam
kwa il-haki cæmi issimnita.

Hankuk mal il ani kka, Hankuk salam
kwa il-haki cæmi issimnita.

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Wæ catongcha lo kamnikka?
/Hakkyo ka mæmnita./

'Why do you go by car?' /School is
is far./

Student: Hakkyo ka mæni kka, catongcha
lo kamnita.

'Because the school's far, I go by
car.'

1. Wæ Hankuk mal il pæumnikka? /Hankuk
e kamnita./

Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il
pæumnita.

2. Wæ nal mata Sæul Tæhakkyo e na
kamnikka? /Yængæ līl kalichimnita./

Yængæ līl kalichini kka, nal mata
Sæul Tæhakkyo e na kamnita.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. Wæ yetelp-si pan kkaci samusil e
wa ya hamnikka. /Yetelp-si pan
e il i sicak-hamnita./ | Yetelp-si pan e il i sicak-hani
kka, yetelp-si pan kkaci wa ya
hamnita. |
| 4. Wæ æce nin swiæssimnikka? /Mom i
aphæssimnita./ | Mom i aphæssini kka, æce nin
swiæssimnita. |
| 5. Wæ Hankuk mal kongpu-haki e kilêhke
sikan i kellimnikka? /Hankuk mal
i ælyæssimnita./ | Hankuk mal i ælyeuni kka,
kongpu-haki e kilêhke sikan
kellimnita. |
| 6. Wæ kêlê sæ hakkyo e tanimnikka?
/Cip esê mælci anhsimnita./ | Cip esê mælci anhini kka, kêlê sæ
hakkyo e tanimnita. |
| 7. Wæ kilêhke puncuhamnikka? /Yosæ
nin hal il i manhsimnita./ | Yosæ nin hal il i manhini kka,
kilêhke puncuhamnita. |
| 8. Wæ kilêhke pæ ka kophimnikka?
/Achim il mækci anhæssimnita./ | Achim il mækci anhæssini kka,
kilêhke pæ ka kophimnita. |
| 9. Wæ kî salam cip e tîllê ya hamnikka?
/Na lîl kitaliko issimnita./ | Na lîl kitaliko issini kka, kî
salam cip e tîllê ya hamnita. |

K. Completion Exercise (Complete the sentence using the given expression based on your own experiences.)

Tutor: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,...

'Because I go to Korea...'

Student: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.

'Because I go to Korea I'm studying
Korean.'

- Hankuk mal in Yenge wa talini kka,
- Hankuk mal il cal mal-haci mot
hani kka,
- Na nin mok i malini kka,
- Cæmsim sikan i tweæssini kka,
- Hakkyo kal sikan i nicæssini kka,
- Hapsing i ceil phyællihani kka,
- Na nin Yenge lîl alê tîlîl su issini kka,
- Na nin mom i aphæssini kka,
- Sêul il kukyeng-hako siphini kka,
- Taim tal e Mikuk e tola kani kka,

L. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on the reality.)

Tutor: Wæ Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase
yo?

'Why do you study Korean?'

Student: Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal
il Kongpu-hæ yo.

'Because I go to Korea, (I'm study-
ing Korean)'.

1. Wæ kælæ sæ hakkyo e tanise yo?
2. Wæ Hankuk mal i kilæhke ælyæwæ yo?
3. Wæ yosæ kilækhe pappise yo?
4. Wæ Hankuk yenghwa lil poko siphise yo?
5. Wæ Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillæ ya hæ yo?
6. Wæ Thoyoil mata sicang e kase yo?
7. Wæ cip esæ hakkyo kkaci sikan i manhi kellyæ yo?
8. Wæ æce nin cip esæ swiæsse yo?
9. Wæ Hankuk mal i philyo-hase yo?

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kalyemyen,

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,.'

Student: Hankuk e kalyemyen, Hankuk
mal il pæwæ ya hamnita.

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,
[you] have to learn Korean.'

1. Hansik il capsusilyemyen,
2. Cæ lil kitalilyemyen,
3. Catongcha lil phallyemyen,
4. Mikuk yenghwa lil polyemyen,
5. Hakkyo e ppæsi lo kalyemyen,
6. Kil il mulæ polyemyen,
7. Mækcæ lil masilyemyen,
8. Chinku lil mannalyemyen,
9. Hankuk e olæ tongan issilyemyen,
10. Mikuk e tola kalyemyen,

N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Pul-koki wa Komthang, Nəngmyən
i issimnita.

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nəngmyən.'

Student: Pul-koki wa Komthang, kiliko,
Nəngmyən ting i issimnita.

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nəngmyən and others (so forth).'

1. Yəngə wa Pullanə mal, Tokil mal
il kalichimnita.
2. Yəki esə moca wa kutu, yangpok il
phamnita.
3. Ppəsi wa cəncha, hapsing i tanimnita.
4. Hansikcəm kwa Yangsikcəm, Cungkuk
siktang il pol su issimnita.
5. Pəkhwacəm kwa pakmulkwan, sicang il
kukyəngəhako siphsimnita.
6. Mannyənpəhil kwa congī, khal il
sassimnita.
7. Cip kaps kwa mulkən kaps, imsik kaps
il alə ya hakessimnita.

- Yəngə wa Pullanə mal, kiliko, Tokil
mal ting il kalichimnita.
- Yəki esə moca wa kutu, kiliko,
yangpok ting il phamnita.
- Ppəsi wa cəncha, kiliko, hapsing
ting i tanimnita.
- Hansikcəm kwa Yangsikcəm, kiliko,
Cungkuk siktang ting il pol su
issimnita.
- Pəkhwacəm kwa pakmulkwan, kiliko,
sicang ting il kukyəngəhako
siphsimnita.
- Mannyənpəhil kwa congī, kiliko, khal
ting il sassimnita.
- Cip kaps kwa mulkən kaps, kiliko,
imsik kaps ting il alə ya
hakessimnita.

O. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pəuko siphimyən,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'If you want to learn Korean,
(please) go to school.'

Student: Hankuk mal il pəulyəmyən,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'If you're going to learn Korean
(please) go to school.'

1. Hansik il məkko siphimyən, Hansikcəm
e kasipsiyo.
2. Mikuk moca līl sako siphimyən,
pəkhwacəm e tillisipsiyo.
3. Hankuk sinmun il ilkko siphimyən,
il nyən tongan ilkki līl pəwə ya
hamnita.

- Hansik il məkilyəmhən, Hansikcəm
e kasipsiyo.
- Mikuk moca līl salyəmyən, pəkhwacəm
e tillisipsiyo.
- Hankuk sinmun il ilkilyəmyən, il
nyən tongan ilkki līl pəwə ya
hamnita.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>4. Səul kanın kicha lɪl thako siphimɔ̃n, han-sɪ kkaci yək e kasipsiyo.</p> <p>5. Təsakwan aph esə nəliko siphimɔ̃n, mənɕə mal-hasipsiyo.</p> <p>6. Catongcha lɪl phalko siphimɔ̃n, ɕə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.</p> <p>7. Hyuka lɪl patko siphimɔ̃n, taim tal e patɪsipsiyo.</p> <p>8. Təhak kyosu ka tweko siphimɔ̃n, kongpu lɪl manhi hæ ya hamnita.</p> <p>9. Kil ɪl mulə poko siphimɔ̃n, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.</p> <p>10. Na lɪl kitaliko siphimɔ̃n, tapang e ɪssɪsipsiyo.</p> | <p>Səul kanın kicha lɪl thalyəmyən, han-sɪ kkaci yək e kasipsiyo.</p> <p>Təsakwan aph esə nəlilyəmyən, mənɕə mal-hasipsiyo.</p> <p>Catongcha lɪl phallyəmyən, ɕə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.</p> <p>Hyuka lɪl patilyəmyən, taim tal e patɪsipsiyo.</p> <p>Təhak kyosu ka twelyəmyən, kongpu lɪl manhi pæ ya hamnita.</p> <p>Kil ɪl mulə polyəmyən, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.</p> <p>Na lɪl kitalilyəmyən, tapang e ɪssɪsipsiyo.</p> |
|--|--|

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal ɪl pəukessə yo?
Hakkyo e tanɪsipsiyo.

Student: Hankuk mal ɪl pəulyəmyən,
hakkyo e tanɪsipsiyo.

'Will you study Korean? Go to
(or attend) school.'

'If you intend (or are going) to
study Korean, go to school.'

1. Hansik ɪl capsusikessə yo?
Pul-koki ka ɪssimnita.
2. Hankuk e kakesse yo? Mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
3. Tapang e tɪllikessə yo? Na wa kathi kapsita.
4. Yənghwa lɪl pokessə yo? Kukce Kikcang ɪ cohsimnita.
5. Məkcu lɪl masikessə yo? Tapang e kaci masipsiyo.
6. Wekyokwan ɪ twekessə yo? Yələ nala mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
7. Kil ɪl mulə pokessə yo? Catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.
8. Mikuk yangpok ɪl sakesse yo?
Pəkhwacəm e manhi ɪssə yo.

- Hansik ɪl capsusilyəmyən, Pul-koki ka ɪssimnita.
- Hankuk e kalyəmyən, mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
- Tapang e tɪllilyəmyən, na wa kathi kapsita.
- Yənghwa lɪl polyəmyən, Kukce Kikcang ɪ cohsimnita.
- Məkcu lɪl masilyəmyən, tapang e kaci masipsiyo.
- Wekyokwan ɪ twelyəmyən, yələ nala mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
- Kil ɪl mulə polyəmyən, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.
- Mikuk yangpok ɪl salyəmyən, pəkhɪacəm e manhi ɪssə yo.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Mr. Lee that:

1. You are hungry.
2. It is time to eat lunch; time to go to bed; time to get up.
3. It has already been two hours.
4. Any food is O.K. with you.
5. You would like to try Chinese food.
6. You are thirsty.
7. The food at the nearby restaurant is very good.
8. They serve Pul-koki, Nængmyen, Komthang, and so forth.
9. You have not ordered (food) yet.
10. You haven't had breakfast (or supper) yet.
11. It's time to go for food shopping.

B. Order from the waitress the following:

1. two bottles of beer
2. Pulkoki for two people /tu salam pun/
3. three cups of coffee afterward
4. one glass of cold water and one ice tea
5. milk for the baby
6. Chinese food
7. Japanese food
8. Komthang for only one person /han salam pun man/

C. Make short dialogues so that the second party responds using the following phrases:

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. muës itinci | 'anything' | 7. amu yoil itinci | 'any day of the week' |
| 2. eti tinci | 'any place' | 8. eni cumal itinci | 'any weekend' |
| 3. ence tinci | 'any time' | 9. amu kos itinci | 'any place' |
| 4. nuku tinci | 'anybody' | 10. amu nal itinci | 'any day' |
| 5. myechil itinci | 'any date' | 11. amu ttæ tinci | 'any time' |
| 6. amu imsik itinci | 'any food' | 12. amu te tinci | 'any place' |

D. Jones Sənsəŋg explains the reasons when you ask him:

1. Why he is studying Korean.
2. Why he hasn't had breakfast yet.
3. Why the nearby restaurant is always crowded.
4. Why he is busy all the time.
5. Why he didn't come to school yesterday.
6. Why he has to speak Korean.
7. Why he's going to sell his car.
8. Why the traffic is so thick.
9. Why he joined the foreign service.
10. Why he wants to take a vacation.
11. Why he intends to walk.
12. Why he doesn't take the bus.
13. Why he doesn't take his wife to the movies.
14. Why he tries to find out Mr. Kim's telephone number /cənhwa pənho/.
15. Why he doesn't want to try Korean food.

제 13 과 음식 (계속)

자

1. 부탁운 : 자, 어서 드십시오.

시작합니다

2. 이 : 예, 같이 시작합니다.

소금

고추

고추 가루

저에게

3. 부탁운 : 거기 소금과 고추 가루 좀 저에게 주시겠습니까?

4. 이 : 예, 여기 있습니다. 나도 소금이 좀 필요합니다.

맛

5. 부탁운 : 곱탕 맛이 어떻습니까?

6. 이 : 맛(이) 있습니다. 선생의 불고기요?

맛은 좋으나

고기가 질겁니다

7. 부탁운 : 맛은 좋으나, 고기가 좀 질겁니다.

맵습니다

매운 음식

8. 이 : 선생은 매운 음식이 좋습니까?

UNIT 13. Eating and Drinking (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Brown

- ca well; now
 1. Ca, əsə tɪ(ɪ)sipsiyo. (Now) Please help yourself.

Lee

- sıcak-hapsita let's start
 2. Ne, kathi sıcak-hapsita. Thank you. ('Let's begin together.')

Brown

- sokım salt
 kochu red pepper
 kochu kalu (pepper powder)
 cə eke to me
 3. Kəki sokım kwa kochu kalu com May I have the salt and pepper,
 cə eke cusikessımnıkkā? please? ('Will you give me the
 salt and red pepper there?')

Lee

4. Ne, yəki ıssımnıta. Na to sokım Here you are! I need a little salt,
 ı com phılyo-hamnıta. too.

Brown

- mas taste
 5. Komthang mas ı əttəhsımnıkkā? How does the Komthang taste?

Lee

6. Mas ı ıssımnıta. Sənsəng e It tastes good. ('Taste exists.')
- Pul-koki nın yo? And how about your Pul-koki?

Brown

- cohına [it]'s good but...
 mas ın cohına it's tasty but...
 koki ka cilkımnıta the meat is tough
 7. Mas ın cohına, koki ka com It's tasty but the meat is a little
 cilkımnıta. tough.

싫어합니다

9. 부락운 : 예, 그리 싫어하지 않습니다.

먹은 일, 먹어 본 일, 먹어 본 적

먹어 본 일(적)이 있습니다

10. 이 : 선생은 중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까?

11. 부락운 : 예, 여러 번 먹어 본 적이 있습니다.

12. 이 : 아, 그래요? 어디에서요?

13. 부락운 : 미국 에도 중국 음식점이 많습니다.

양식

별로

별로 먹지 않았습니다

14. 이 : 나도 중국 음식은 많이 먹었지만, 양식은 별로 많이 먹지 않았습니다.

양식 집

15. 부락운 : 그럼, 내일은 양식 집에 갑시다.

있는지

있는지 아십니까

16. 이 : 그거, 좋습니다. 양식점이 어디에 있는지 아십니까?

Lee

mæpsimnita

(food) is spicy

mæun imsik

spicy (hot) food

8. Sænsæng in mæun imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like spicy food? ('Is spicy food good for you?')

Brown

silhəhamnita

[I] dislike

9. Ne, kil i silhəhaci anhsimnita.

It's all right. ('I don't dislike it so much.')

Lee

məkɪn il
məkə pon il
məkə pon cək }

('the experience of eating')

məkə pon il i issimnita

[I] have an experience of
eating

10. Sænsæng in Cungkuk imsik il
məkə pon il i issimnikka? Have you ever eaten Chinese food?

Brown

11. Ne, yelə pən məkə pon cək i
issimnita.

Yes, I have (eaten) many times.

Lee

12. A, kilæ yo? eti esə yo?

Oh, you have? Where?

Brown

13. Mikuk e to Cungkuk imsikcəm i
manhsimnita.

There are many Chinese restaurants
in the U.S., too.

Lee

Yangsik

Western food

pyello

not particularly; not so much

pyello məkci anhəssimnita

[I] didn't eat so much

14. Na to Cungkuk imsik in manhi
məkəssci man, Yangsik in pyello
manhi məkci anhəssimnita.

I also have eaten Chinese food a
lot but I haven't had much
Western food.

17. 부탁은 : 예, 압니다.

어느 곳

몰라도

이 부근에

18. 어느 곳이 더 좋은지 몰라도, 이 부근에
두 개 있습니다.

Brown

15. Kilem, nœil in Yangsik cip e
kapsita.

Let's go to a Western restaurant
tomorrow, then.

Lee

- issnin ci/inninci/
issnin ci asimnikka
eti e issnin ci asimnikka
16. K1 kes, cohsmnita. Yangsikœm i
eti e issnin ci asimnikka?

if there is; that there is
do [you] know if there is?
do [you] know where [it] is?
Fine. Do you know where there is a
Western restaurant?

Brown

17. Ne, amnita.

Yes, I do (know).

œni kos
molla to
i pukin e

which place
even though [I] do not know
in this vicinity

18. œni kos i tœ cohin ci molla to,
i pukin e tu kœ issimnita.

There are two in this area but I
don't know which one is better.
(Even though I don't know which
place is better, there are two in
this vicinity.)

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

1. a. Mom i aphimnita.
- b. œlkul i aphimnita.
- c. Nun i aphimnita.
- d. Ppyam i aphimnita.
- e. Son i aphimnita.
- f. Son-kalak i aphimnita.
- g. Pal i aphimnita.
- h. Pal-kalak i aphimnita.
- i. Tali ka aphimnita.
- j. Phal i aphimnita.
- k. œkkœ ka aphimnita.
- l. Ip i aphimnita.
- m. Mok i aphimnita.
- n. Thek i aphimnita.

I'm sick. ('Body hurts.')

My face hurts.

My eyes hurt.

My cheek hurts.

My hand hurts.

My finger aches.

My foot hurts.

My toes are aching.

My leg hurts.

My arm hurts.

My shoulder hurts.

My mouth is sore.

I have a sore throat.

My chin hurts.

Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

- A.
1. 몸 이 아 픉 니 다.
 2. 앞 굴 이 아 픉 니 다.
 3. 눈 이 아 픉 니 다.
 4. 뺨 이 아 픉 니 다.
 5. 손 이 아 픉 니 다.
 6. 손 가 락 이 아 픉 니 다.
 7. 발 이 아 픉 니 다.
 8. 발 가 락 이 아 픉 니 다.
 9. 다 리 가 아 픉 니 다.
 10. 팔 이 아 픉 니 다.
 11. 어 께 가 아 픉 니 다.
 12. 입 이 아 픉 니 다.
 13. 목 이 아 픉 니 다.
 14. 턱 이 아 픉 니 다.
 15. 머 리 가 아 픉 니 다.
 16. 가슴 이 아 픉 니 다.
 17. 귀 가 아 픉 니 다.
 18. 코 가 아 픉 니 다.
 19. 이(빨)가/이 아 픉 니 다.
 20. 등 이 아 픉 니 다.
 21. 허 리 가 아 픉 니 다.
- B.
1. 소금 이 좀 필요 합니다.
 2. 설탕 이 좀 필요 합니다.
 3. (간)장 이 좀 필요 합니다.
 4. 양념 이 좀 필요 합니다.
 5. 물 이 좀 필요 합니다.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| o. <u>Mæli</u> ka aphimnita. | I have a headache. |
| p. <u>Kasim</u> i aphimnita. | I have a pain on my chest. |
| q. <u>Kwi</u> ka aphimnita. | My ear aches. |
| r. <u>Kho</u> ka aphimnita. | My nose hurts. |
| s. <u>I</u> ka
<u>Ippal</u> i } aphimnita. | My teeth ache. |
| t. <u>Ting</u> i aphimnita. | I have a backache. |
| u. <u>Hæli</u> ka aphimnita. | My waist aches. |
| | |
| 2. a. <u>Sokim</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need some salt. |
| b. <u>Sæthang</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need some sugar. |
| c. <u>(Kan)cang</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need some soy sauce. |
| d. <u>Yangyæm</u> /yangnyæm/ i com philyo-hamnita. | I need some seasoning. |
| e. <u>Mul</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need some water. |
| f. <u>Kilis</u> i com philyo-hamnita.. | I need some containers. |
| g. <u>Koppu</u> ka com philyo-hamnita. | I need some {cups.
}glasses. |
| h. <u>Cho</u> ka com philyo-hamnita. | I need some vinegar. |
| i. <u>Huchu kalu</u> ka com philyo-hamnita. | I need some black pepper (powder). |
| j. <u>Sut-kalak</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need a spoon. |
| k. <u>Cæs-kalak</u> i com philyo-hamnita. | I need chopsticks. |
| | |
| 3. a. <u>(Hong)cha</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have tea. |
| b. <u>Khæphi</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have coffee. |
| c. <u>Sul</u> il hakessimnita. | I'll have {wine.
}liquor. |
| d. <u>Ppilul</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have beer. |
| e. <u>Mækcû</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have beer. |
| f. <u>Yachæ</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have vegetables. |
| g. <u>Chæso</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have vegetables. |
| h. <u>Kwail</u> il hakessimnita. | I'll have fruits. |
| i. <u>Kwasil</u> il hakessimnita. | I'll have fruits. |
| j. <u>Silkwa</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have fruits. |
| k. <u>Koki</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have [some] meat. |
| l. <u>Sængsæn</u> il hakessimnita. | I'll have fish. |
| m. <u>So koki</u> lil hakessimnita. | I'll have beef ('cow meat'). |

6. 그릇이 좀 필요합니다.
7. 고춧가루가 좀 필요합니다.
8. 초가 좀 필요합니다.
9. 후추 가루가 좀 필요합니다.
10. 숟가락이 좀 필요합니다.
11. 젓가락이 좀 필요합니다.

- C.
1. (홍)차를 하겠읍니다.
 2. 커피를 하겠읍니다.
 3. 술을 하겠읍니다.
 4. 맥주를 하겠읍니다.
 5. 야채를 하겠읍니다.
 6. 채소를 하겠읍니다.
 7. 과일을 하겠읍니다.
 8. 과식을 하겠읍니다.
 9. 고기를 하겠읍니다.
 10. 생선을 하겠읍니다.
 11. 소 고기를 하겠읍니다.
 12. 닭 고기를 하겠읍니다.
 13. 돼지 고기를 하겠읍니다.
 14. 도야지 고기를 하겠읍니다.
 15. 계란을 하겠읍니다.
 16. 달걀을 하겠읍니다.
 17. 국을 하겠읍니다.

- D.
1. 잠이 옵니다.
 2. 잠을 잡니다.
 3. 좀 피곤합니다.
 4. 좀 고단합니다.
 5. 좀 피로합니다.

- n. Ta(1)k koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have chicken ('chicken meat').
- o. Tweci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork ('pig meat').
- p. Toyaci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork.
- q. Kyelan il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- r. Talkyal il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- s. Kuk il hakessimnita. I'll have soup.
-
4. a. imsik i nemu ccamnita. [This] food is too salty.
- b. imsik i nemu tamnita. [This] food is too sweet.
- c. imsik i nemu singkepsimnita. [This] food is too bland.
- d. imsik i nemu mæpsimnita. [This] food is too hot (spicy).
- e. imsik i nemu chamnita. [This] food is too cold.
- f. imsik i nemu simnita. [This] food is too sour.
- g. imsik i nemu ttikepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- h. imsik i nemu tepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- i. imsik i nemu ssimnita. [This] food is too bitter.
-
5. a. (imsik) mas i cohsimnita. It tastes good. ('(Food) taste is good.')
- b. (imsik) mas i issimnita. It's delicious.
- c. (imsik) mas i epsimnita. It's tasty; It tastes good.
- d. (imsik) mas i kwæchanhsimnita. It's tasteless.
- e. (imsik) mas i hullyunghanmита. It tastes all right.
- It tastes very good. ('Taste is excellent.')
-
6. a. Kipun i cohsimnita. I feel well. ('Feeling is good.')
- b. Kipun i com nappimnita. I don't feel very well. ('Feeling is a little bad.')
- c. Kipun i ettæhsimnikka? How are you feeling?
-
7. a. Pæ ka kophimnita. I'm hungry. ('Stomach is empty.')
- b. Pæ ka pulimnita. I'm full.
- c. Pæ ka aphimnita. I have a stomach-ache.
- d. Pæ ka pulphyenhamnita. My stomach is uncomfortable.
-
8. a. Cam i omnita. I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.')
- b. (Cam il) camnita. I'(m) sleep(ing).
- c. (com) phikonhamnita. I'm (a little) tired.

6. 목 이 마릅니다.
7. 음식이 넉넉합니다.
8. 음식이 충분합니다.
9. 음식이 부족합니다.
10. 음식이 모자랍니다.
11. 음식이 많 습 니 다.

- E.
1. 음식이 너무 짜 습 니 다.
 2. 음식이 너무 달 습 니 다.
 3. 음식이 너무 싱겁 습 니 다.
 4. 음식이 너무 맵 습 니 다.
 5. 음식이 너무 찝 습 니 다.
 6. 음식이 너무 싹 습 니 다.
 7. 음식이 너무 뜨겁 습 니 다.
 8. 음식이 너무 덥 습 니 다.
 9. 음식이 너무 쌀 습 니 다.

- F.
1. (음식)맛이 좋 습 니 다.
 2. (음식)맛이 있 습 니 다.
 3. (음식)맛이 없 습 니 다.
 4. (음식)맛이 괜찮 습 니 다.
 5. (음식)맛이 훌륭 습 니 다.

- G.
1. 기분 이 좋 습 니 다.
 2. 기분 이 좀 나쁩 습 니 다.
 3. 기분 이 어떻 습 니 까?

- H.
1. 배가 고프 습 니 다.
 2. 배가 부르 습 니 다.
 3. 배가 아픉 습 니 다.
 4. 배가 불편 습 니 다.

- d. (com) kotanhamnita. I'm (a little) tired.
e. (com) philohamnita. I'm (rather) fatigued.
f. Mok i malimnita. I'm thirsty. ('Throat dries.')
9. a. imsik i {nəknəkhamnita
 /nəngnəkhamnita/. The food is sufficient.
- b. imsik i chungpun-hamnita. The food is enough.
c. imsik i pucok-hamnita. The food is not enough.
d. imsik i mocalamnita. {The food is not enough.
 {We are short of food.
e. imsik i manhsimnita. The food is plenty.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.2. Ca, ɛsə tɪ(ɪ)siɪsiyo. ('Well, lift [it] please.', 'Well, please have [it].') is a fixed expression in the eating or drinking situation to have your guest or company start eating or drinking. The usual response to Ca, ɛsə tɪ(ɪ)siɪsiyo. is Ne, kathɪ sɪcak-hapsita. ('Yes, let's begin together.').
6. Mas ɪ iss-ta. ('Taste exists.') and Mas ɪ coh-ta. ('Taste is good.') are the two common fixed expressions; both of which are used as the Korean equivalents of 'It's tasty.' or 'It's delicious.'
10. Məkə pɒn ɪl (or məkə pɒn cək) ('The experience of having eaten') and məkin ɪl (or məkin cək) can be interchangeably used (See Grammar Note 3.)
12. In Kɪlæ yo? ('Is that so?') kɪlæ is the infinitive form of the verb kɪləh- 'to be so'. Thus, Kɪlæ yo? is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite Kɪləhsɪmnɪkka?; Kɪlæ yo. of the formal polite Kɪləhsɪmnɪta.
13. Cungkuk ɪmsɪkcəm 'Chinese restaurant' is often substituted by Cungkuk cɪp ('Chinese house'). In Korea, Cungkuk cɪp is usually referred to Cungkuk ɪmsɪkcəm.
14. Pyello '(not) particularly', is an adverb which occurs before an negative inflected expression, and denotes mildness or less being positive in negating the following expression.
15. Yangsik cɪp ('Western food house.') is a substitute for Yangsikcəm.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(1)na

The inflected form ending in -(1)na (or simply the -(1)na form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)na form: -na is added to a vowel stem; -ina to a consonant stem. The -(1)na form denotes that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. (Compare the -(1)na form with -ci + man, Grammar Note 2, Unit 9.) Examples:

Mas in cohina, koki ka com cilkinmrita.	'It's tasty, but the meat is a little tough.'
Hankuk mal i elyuna, cam i sse yo.	'Korean is difficult but is interesting.'
Kim Pyenhosa e elkul in molina, ilim in tillessimnita.	'I don't know Lawyer Kim's face, but I've heard of his name.'

2. $\left. \begin{array}{l} -n/in \\ \text{Infinitive} + \text{pon} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} il \\ c\check{e}k \end{array} \right\} i + iss-$ 'has an experience of having done something'

The construction -n/in il i issimnita is used to mean 'have, sometime up to the present, done so-and-so'. The question form, -n/in il i issimnikka?, is the Korean equivalent of 'Have [you] ever done so-and-so?'. In the above construction il meaning 'work' or 'act' or 'experience' is synonymous with c\check{e}k and they are interchangeable with each other. The first word in the construction ending in -n/in (-n is added to a vowel stem; -in to a consonant stem) can be substituted by the verb phrase Infinitive + pon. The negation for the whole expression is made by replacing eps- 'not exit' in place of iss-. Thus, -n/in il i epsimnita means '[Someone] has, some time up to the present, never done so-and-so.' and -n/in il i epsimnikka? 'Haven't [you] ever done so-and-so?'. Examples:

Cungkuk imsik il mekin il i issimnikka?	'Have you ever eaten Chinese food?'
Hankuk e kasin c\check{e}k i issna yo?	'Have you ever been ('gone') to Korea?'
C\check{e} nin Nyuyok ese cihachelto lil than il i issci yo.	'I have an experience of riding a subway in New York.'
C\check{e}n e catongcha lil unc\check{e}nh\check{e} pon il i issci man, cikim in unc\check{e}nhanin kes il ice pellessimnita.	'I drove an automobile before, but I have forgotten how to drive (now).'

Ne, Hankuk e olæ cæn e kan cæk i
issimnita.

'Yes, I've gone to Korea long time
ago.'

Note that the ending -n/in is distinguished from the present noun-modifier ending -n/in/nin since -n/in which is added only to an action verb stem indicates the past action of the following nominal. We shall call the ending -n/in Past Noun-Modifier Ending. We will learn more about the ending -n/in as well as the description verb past noun-modifier forms in the further units. For the time being, observe the following examples:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a. kanın salam } | 'the person who (is) go(ing).' |
| kan salam } | 'the person who has gone' |
| b. næ ka mannanın yæca } | 'the woman (or girl) whom I'(m) |
| næ ka mannan yæca } | meet(ing)' |
| | 'the woman whom I've met' |
| c. atıl ı sanın chæk } | 'the book that my son is buying' |
| atıl ı san chæk } | 'the book that my son bought' |
| d. mæknın ımsık } | 'the food that [we] eat' |
| mækın ımsık } | 'the food that [we] ate' |

3. Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci

An interrogative (i.e. what, who, where, why, etc.) followed by a present noun-modifier word + ci, occurs as a nominal expression with or without a particle after it before another inflected expression, and denotes the present action or description of the verb for the subject or topic in the same nominal expression. When the phrase interrogative + -n/in/nin ci is followed by the verb a(1)- 'know' or moll- 'not know', it is always the object of the verb.

Examples:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <u>Cæ salam i nuku in ci</u> alæ yo. | '[I] know <u>who that man is</u> .' |
| <u>I chæk i elma in ci</u> alko siphe yo? | 'Do you want to know <u>how much this book is</u> ?'' |
| <u>Kim Sænsæng i eti e sanın ci</u>
asici yo? | 'You know <u>where Mr. Kim lives</u> , don't you?' |
| <u>Sænsæng i mæes il wænhanın ci</u>
molimnita. | 'I don't know <u>what you want</u> .' |

Note that the present noun-modifier word in the same construction may be replaced by the form -(a,æ)ssnın for the past and the form -(1)l for the future, if the equivalent English noun clause is in the past or future tense respectively.

Observe the following:

GROUP 1

Ki salam i eti e <u>kassnin</u> ci amnita.	'[I] know where he <u>went</u> .'
Hakkyo ka ence <u>sicak-hæssnin</u> ci molla yo.	'[I] don't know when the school <u>began</u> .'
Næ ka Yenge lil ettêhke <u>pæwæssnin</u> ci ase yo?	'Do you know how I <u>have learned</u> English?'

GROUP 2

Sip nyen hu e muës il <u>hal</u> ci. acik molimnita.	'[I] don't know what [I] <u>will do</u> after ten years from now.'
Sikan i elma na <u>këllil</u> ci alki elyæpsimnita.	'It's difficult to know how long it <u>will take</u> .'
Ki i ka elma tongan Sæul esæ <u>kinmu-hal</u> ci molla yo?	'Don't you know how long he <u>will</u> <u>work</u> in Seoul?'

4. Particles eke 'to' and ekesæ 'from'

A personal nominal + eke and a personal nominal + ekesæ before an inflected expression mean 'to + P.N.' and 'from + P.N.' respectively. Remember that the particles e and esæ preceded by a place name before an inflected expression mean also 'to' and 'from' respectively (Units 2 and 3). Do not use e and esæ after a personal nominal to mean the same. Examples:

GROUP 1 (eke)

I chæk il Kim Sænsæng eke tilisipsiyo.	'Please give this book to Mr. Kim.'
Halapæci eke mulæ pwassci man, mollasæ yo.	'I asked (to) my grandfather but he didn't know.'
Onil in chinku eke phyænci lil sse ya hakesæ yo.	'[I think] I've got to write a letter to my friend today.'

GROUP 2 (ekesæ)

Pak Sænsæng ekesæ ki mal il titko, nollassimnita.	'I was surprised to hear that from Mr. Park. ('I heard that word from Mr. Park and was sur- prised.')
æmeni ekesæ sængil sænmul il patæssimnita.	'I have received a birthday present from my mother.'

5. Dependent Nouns

There is a small class of Korean nouns which occur only as bound forms in certain constructions but are neither Determinatives nor Post-Nouns (Unit 3). We shall call the words of this class Dependent Nouns. Remember that a determinative is a word which occurs before another noun (free or bound), and that a post-noun occurs either after other nouns or after modifier categories of inflected words. In both cases, they form nominal phrases. However, a dependent noun also occurs after the modifier categories of inflected words, but is followed by a certain expression to form a phrase. Thus, it is not necessary to learn the meaning of an individual dependent noun separately. Instead, you should learn the meaning of the whole phrase where such a dependent noun is included as if it were one word. For example, in Kal kka yo? 'Shall [we] go?', Ttenal kka hamnita. '[I]'m thinking of leaving.', Anin ka yo? 'Do [you] know?', Kal su issimnita. '[I] can go.', Mues in ci amnita. '[I] know what [it] is.', eti e sanin ci molimnita. 'I don't know where [he] lives.', Pi ka ol tit hamnita. 'It looks like rain.', Keki kan cek i isse yo? 'Have you ever been there?', kka, ka, su, ci, tit, cek, etc. are Dependent Nouns.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Cə nɪn pə ka kophɪmnɪta. | I'm hungry. |
| 2. Cə nɪn pə ka pulɪmnɪta. | I'm full. |
| 3. Cə nɪn mok i malɪmnɪta. | I'm thirsty. |
| 4. Cə nɪn (com) phikonhamnɪta. | I'm (a little) tired. |
| 5. Cə nɪn (com) kotanhamnɪta. | I'm (rather) fatigued. |
| 6. Cə nɪn cam i omnɪta. | I'm sleepy. |
| 7. Cə nɪn mom i aphɪmnɪta. | I'm sick. |
| 8. Cə nɪn kipun i cohɪmnɪta. | I'm feeling well. |
| 9. Cə nɪn kipun i nappɪmnɪta. | I'm not feeling well. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Na nɪn mom i com aphɪmnɪta. | I'm a little sick. ('My body aches a little.') |
| 2. Na nɪn mɛli ka com aphɪmnɪta. | I have a little headache. |
| 3. Na nɪn tali ka com aphɪmnɪta. | My leg hurts a little. |
| 4. Na nɪn nun i com aphɪmnɪta. | My eyes hurt a little. |
| 5. Na nɪn pal i com aphɪmnɪta. | My foot hurts a little. |
| 6. Na nɪn son i com aphɪmnɪta. | My hand hurts a little. |
| 7. Na nɪn i ka com aphɪmnɪta. | My tooth aches a little. |
| 8. Na nɪn ip i com aphɪmnɪta. | My mouth is a little sore. |
| 9. Na nɪn ɛkkə ka com aphɪmnɪta. | My shoulder hurts a little. |
| 10. Na nɪn mok i com aphɪmnɪta. | I have a little sore throat. ('My throat is a little sore.') |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kəki sokɪm com (cə eke)
cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the salt. ('Will you give me the salt there?') |
| 2. Kəki sɛlthang com (cə eke)
cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the sugar. |
| 3. Kəki kochu kalu com (cə eke)
cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('red-pepper powder') |
| 4. Kəki huchu kalu com (cə eke)
cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('black-pepper powder') |

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 5. Kæki <u>(kan)cang</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the soy sauce. |
| *6. Kæki <u>ccæm</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the jam. |
| *7. Kæki <u>ppata</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the butter. |
| *8. Kæki <u>ppang</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the bread. |
| *9. Kæki <u>Kimchi</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me Kimchi. |
| *10. Kæki <u>næphikhin</u> com (cæ eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the napkins. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. K1 chæk 11 na eke cusipsiyo. | Give me that book. |
| 2. K1 chæk 11 <u>Kim Sænsæng</u> eke
cusipsiyo. | Give that book to Mr. Kim. |
| 3. K1 chæk 11 <u>Ceims1</u> eke cusipsiyo. | Give that book to James. |
| 4. K1 chæk 11 <u>apæci</u> eke cusipsiyo. | Give that book to your father. |
| 5. K1 chæk 11 <u>cæ haksæng</u> eke
cusipsiyo. | Give that book to the student. |
| 6. K1 chæk 11 <u>Mikuk chinku</u> eke
cusipsiyo. | Give that book to your American
friend. |
| 7. K1 chæk 11 <u>Kim Sænsæng puin</u> eke
cusipsiyo. | Give that book to Mrs. Kim. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Chinku ekese sikye 111 patæssimnita. | I received a watch from a friend. |
| 2. <u>Ceims1</u> ekese <u>moca</u> 111 patæssimnita. | I received a hat from James. |
| 3. <u>Kim Sænsæng</u> ekese <u>kapang</u> 11
patæssimnita. | I received a briefcase from Mr. Kim. |
| *4. <u>æmeni</u> ekese <u>phyænci</u> 111 patæssimnita. | I received a letter from my mother. |
| *5. <u>Tæsa</u> ekese <u>cænhwa</u> 111 patæssimnita. | I received a telephone call from the
ambassador. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| *6. <u>Apeci</u> ekese <u>sənmul</u> il patəssimnita. | I received a present from my father. |
| *7. <u>Hankukə</u> kangsa ekese <u>Yəng-Han</u>
<u>sacən</u> il patəssimnita. | I received an English-Korean dictionary from the Korean instructor. |
| *8. <u>Yəngsa</u> ekese <u>cənpə</u> lil patəssimnita. | I received a {telegram} from the
{cable } consul. |
| *9. <u>Sangkwan</u> ekese <u>myəngnyəng</u> il
patəssimnita. | I received an order from [my]
{boss.
{supervisor. |
| *10. <u>Sonnim</u> ekese <u>cumun</u> il patəssimnita. | I received an order from [my]
{customer.
{guest. |
| *11. <u>Təthongyəng</u> ekese <u>chotə</u> lil
patəssimnita. | I received an invitation from the President. |
| *12. <u>Haksəng</u> til ekese <u>cilmun</u> il
patəssimnita. | I received questions from the students. |
| *13. <u>Tongyo</u> ekese <u>puthak</u> il patəssimnita. | I was asked of a favor from a colleague. |
| *14. <u>Sacang</u> ekese <u>singkip</u> il
patəssimnita. | I received a promotion from the president (of the company). |
| *15. <u>Insakwacang</u> ekese <u>pongkip</u> il
patəssimnita. | I've got my pay from the personnel officer. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Sənsəng in məun imsik i cohsimnikka? | Do you like hot (spicy) food? |
| 2. Sənsəng in <u>Cungkuk</u> <u>imsik</u> i
cohsimnikka? | Do you like Chinese food? |
| 3. Sənsəng in <u>Yangsik</u> i cohsimnikka? | Do you like Western food? |
| 4. Sənsəng in <u>Wəsik</u> i cohsimnikka? | Do you like Japanese food? |
| 5. Sənsəng in <u>Hankuk</u> <u>məkcū</u> ka
cohsimnikka? | Do you like Korean beer? |
| 6. Sənsəng in <u>musin</u> <u>imsik</u> i
cohsimnikka? | What kind of food do you like? |
| 7. Sənsəng in <u>ənī</u> <u>siktang</u> i
cohsimnikka? | Which restaurant do you like? |
| 8. Sənsəng in <u>ənī</u> <u>sənsəng</u> i
cohsimnikka? | Which teacher do you prefer? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I ɪmsik in com mæpsimnita. | This food is a little spicy. |
| 2. I ɪmsik in com ccamnita. | This food is a little salty. |
| 3. I ɪmsik in com chamnita. | This food is a little cold. |
| 4. I ɪmsik in com tæpsimnita. | This food is a little warm. |
| 5. I ɪmsik in com simnita. | This food is a little sour. |
| 6. I ɪmsik in com tamnita. | This food is a little sweet. |
| 7. I ɪmsik in com ssimnita. | This food is a little bitter. |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I koki nin com cilkimnita. | This meat is a little tough. |
| 2. I Pul-koki nin com cilkimnita. | This Pul-koki is a little tough. |
| 3. I sængsæn in com cilkimnita. | This fish is a little tough. |
| 4. I ta(1)k koki nin com cilkimnita. | This chicken is a little tough. |
| 5. I so koki nin com cilkimnita. | This beef is a little tough. |
| 6. I toyaci koki nin com cilkimnita. | This pork is a little tough. |
| 7. I tweci koki nin com cilkimnita. | This pork is a little tough. |
| *8. I tweci koki nin putilæpsimnita. | This pork is {tender.
soft. |
| *9. I tweci koki nin yenhamnita. | This pork is tender (for meat). |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Yangsikcæm i æti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a restaurant for
Western food is. |
| 2. Hansikcæm i æti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a Korean restaurant
is? |
| 3. Wæsikcæm i æti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a Japanese restau-
rant is? |
| 4. Cungkuk ɪmsikcæm i æti e issnin
ci asimnikka? | Do you know where a Chinese restaurant
is? |
| 5. Pakmulkwan i æti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where the museum is? |
| *6. Tongmulwæn i æti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where the zoo is? |

- *7. Kukhwe ka eti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the
 {National Assembly} is?
 {Congress}
- *8. Wemupu ka eti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of
 Foreign Affairs is?
- *9. Sopangsə ka eti e issnin ci
 asimnikka? Do you know where the fire station
 is?
- *10. Kukmusəng i eti e issnin ci
 asimnikka? Do you know where the State Depart-
 ment is?
- *11. Kukpangpu ka eti e issnin ci
 asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of
 Defense is?
- *12. Kukpansəng i eti e issnin ci
 asimnikka? Do you know where the Defense
 Department is?
- *13. Kisuksa ka eti e issnin ci
 asimnikka? Do you know where the dormintory
 is?

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e
 kassimnikka?

'Did you go to Korea before?'

Student: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e
 kan il i issimnikka?

'Have you ever been to Korea before?'

1. Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il
 pəwəssimnikka?
2. Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lɪl
 kalichɪəssimnikka?
3. Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkɔ
 e taniəssimnikka?
4. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lɪl
 mannassimnikka?
5. Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə
 il-həssimnikka?
6. Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lɪl
 thassimnikka?
7. Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyenci
 lɪl patəssimnikka?
8. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke
 sacən il puchiəssimnikka?

- Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il pəun
 il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lɪl kalichin
 il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkɔ e
 tanin il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lɪl
 mannan il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə il-han
 il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lɪl than
 il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyenci
 lɪl patin il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke
 sacən il puchin il i issimnikka?

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>9. Sənsəŋg in cən e Hankuk ɪmsik ɪl
məkəssɪmnɪkka?</p> <p>10. Sənsəŋg in cən e kɪ yəca lɪl
kɪtaliəssɪmnɪkka?</p> | <p>Sənsəŋg in cən e Hankuk ɪmsik ɪl
məkɪn ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?</p> <p>Sənsəŋg in cən kɪ yəca lɪl kɪtəlɪn
ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?</p> |
|---|---|

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Cən e Hankuk ɪmsik ɪl məkɪn
ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

'Have you ever eaten Korean food
before?'

Student: Ne, məkə pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

'Yes, I have (eaten).'

1. Cən e ɪlpon mal ɪl pəun ɪl ɪ
ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, pəwə pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

2. Cən e Yəŋgə lɪl kalɪchɪn ɪl ɪ
ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, kalɪchɪə pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

3. Cən e Hankuk məkcu lɪl masɪn ɪl
ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, masyə pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

4. Cən e kuntə e kan ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, ka pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

5. Talɪn salam eke ɪ chæk ɪl poyə
cun ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, poyə cwe pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

6. Cən e mok ɪ aphɪn ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, aphe pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

7. Hankuk salam chɪŋku ekəsə phyəncɪ
lɪl patɪn ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

Ne, patə pən cək ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta.

8. Wəlyoɪl e cip esə swɪn ɪl ɪ
ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, (Wəlyoɪl e) swɪə pən cək ɪ
ɪssɪmnɪta.

9. Cip esə hakkyo kkaci tu sɪkan ɪ
kəllɪn ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪkka?

Ne, tu sɪkan ɪ kəllɪə pən cək ɪ
ɪssɪmnɪkka?

L. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ətɪ e issimnikka?

Student: Siktang i ətɪ e issnɪn ci
asimnikka?

1. Kim Sənsəŋ i muəs ɪl hamnikka?
2. Kɪ sikye ka əlma imnikka?
3. Cə Mikuk yəca ka nuku imnikka?
4. Hakkyo ka myəch-sɪ e sɪcak-
hamnikka?
5. Cungkuk mal i əlma na əlyəpsimnikka?
6. Onɪl i myəchɪl imnikka?
7. I catongcha ɪl əlma e phamnikka?
8. ənce ppəsɪ ka ttenamnikka?
9. Cə Mikuk kunɪn i muəs ɪl
wənhamnikka?
10. Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ i musɪn yɔɪl e hyuka
ɪl patsimnikka?

'Where is the restaurant?'

'Do you know where the restaurant
is?'

- Kim Sənsəŋ i muəs ɪl hanɪn ci
asimnikka?
- Kɪ sikye ka əlma ɪn ci asimnikka?
- Cə Mikuk yəca ka nuku ɪn ci
asimnikka?
- Hakkyo ka myəch-sɪ e sɪcak-hanɪn ci
asimnikka?
- Cungkuk mal i əlma na əlyəun ci
asimnikka?
- Onɪl i myəchɪl ɪn ci asimnikka?
- I catongcha ɪl əlma e pha(ɪ)ɪn
ci asimnikka?
- ənce ppəsɪ ka ttenanɪn ci asimnikka?
- Cə Mikuk kunɪn i muəs ɪl wəhanɪn
ci asimnikka?
- Ceɪmsɪ Sənsəŋ i musɪn yɔɪl e hyuka
ɪl patnɪn ci asimnikka?

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ətɪ e issnɪn ci
asimnikka?Student: Ne, (siktang i) ətɪ e
issnɪn ci alə yo.

1. I catongcha ka əlma ɪn ci asimnikka?
2. Sɪmɪsɪ Sənsəŋ i ətɪ esə ɪl-hanɪn
ci asimnikka?
3. Kɪcha ka myəch-sɪ e ttenanɪn ci
asimnikka?
4. ənce Hankuk ɪlo kanɪn ci asimnikka?

'Do you know where the restaurant
is?'

'Yes, I know where it is.'

- Ne, (i catongcah ka) əlma ɪn ci
alə yo.
- Ne, (Sɪmɪsɪ Sənsəŋ i) ətɪ esə
ɪl-hanɪn ci alə yo.
- Ne, (kɪcha ka) myəch-sɪ e ttenanɪn
ci alə yo.
- Ne, ənce (Hankuk ɪlo) kanɪn ci
alə yo.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Cə salam i əlma na Hankuk mal il
cal hal su issnin ci asimnikka? | Ne, (cə salam i) əlma na (Hankuk
mal il) cal hal su issnin ci alə
yo. |
| 6. Ppəsi ka ənce ttənassnin ci
asimnikka? | Ne, (ppəsi ka) ənce ttənassnin ci
alə yo. |
| 7. Ceimsi Sənsəng i myəch sal e
Hankuk e wassnin ci asimnikka? | Ne, (Ceimsi Sənsəng i) myəch sal e
Hankuk e wassnin ci alə yo. |
| 8. Nə ka təhakkyo esə muəs il kongpu-
həssnin ci asimnikka? | Ne, (tangsin i təhakkyo esə) muəs il
kongpu-həssnin ci alə yo. |
| 9. Cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci əlma na
mən ci asimnikka? | Ne, (cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci) əlma
na mən ci alə yo. |
| 10. Səul e mulkən kaps i əlma na
pissan ci asimnikka? | Ne, (Səul e mulkən kaps i) əlma na
pissan ci alə yo. |
| 11. Nə ka nuku lil mannako siphin ci
asimnikka? | Ne, (sənsəng i) nuku lil mannako
siphin ci alə yo. |
| 12. Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci myəchil i
kəllinin ci asimnikka? | Ne, (Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci) myəchil
i kəllinin ci alə yo. |

N. Response Drill

Tutor: I kəs i muəs in ci ase yo?

Student: Aniyo, (muəs in ci) molimnita.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Pak Sənsəng i musin imsik il
cohahanin ci ase yo? | 'Do you know what this is?' |
| 2. Hwesa samu ka myəch-si e sicak-
hanin ci ase yo? | 'No, I don't know (what is it).' |
| 3. Nə ka hwesa esə han tal e əlma
patnin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (musin imsik il cohahanin ci)
molimnita. |
| 4. əlma tongan Yəngə lil pəwəssnin
ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci)
molimnita. |
| 5. Mikuk təsa ka əlma cən e yeki e
wassnin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (əlma patnin ci) molimnita. |
| 6. Nuka na eke Hankuk mal il kalichie
cuəssnin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (əlma tongan Yəngə lil
pəwəssnin ci) molimnita. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i myəch-si e samusil
e tola onin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (əlma cən e yeki e wassnin
ci) molimnita. |
| | Aniyo, (nuka kalichie cuəssnin ci)
molimnita. |
| | Aniyo, (myəch-si e tola onin ci)
molimnita. |

8. Cə yəca ka nuku lil salang-hanin
ci ase yo?
9. Səul e Mikuk salam i myəch salam
i issnin ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (nuku lil salang-hanin ci)
molimnita.

Aniyo, (myəch salam i issnin ci)
molimnita.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: Pə ka kophimnikka?

Student: Ne, (pə ka) com kophimnita.

1. Mok i malimnikka?
2. (Mom i) phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Mom i aphimnikka?
6. Kotanhamnikka?
7. Pə ka pulimnikka?
8. Mas i issimnikka?
9. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

'Yes, (I'm) a little.'

Ne, (mok i) com malimnita.

Ne, com phikon-hamnita.

Ne, (cam i) com omnita.

Ne, (kipun i) com cohsimnita.

Ne, (mom i) com aphimnita.

Ne, com kotanhamnita.

Ne, (pə ka) com pulimnita.

Ne, (mas i) com issimnita.

Ne, (koki ka) com cilkimnita.

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Pə ka kophimnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kili kophici anhe yo.

1. Mok i malimnikka?
2. Phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Kipun i nappimnikka?
6. Mom i aphimnikka?
7. Kotanhamnikka?
8. Pə ka pulimnikka?
9. Mas i issimnikka?
10. Mas i cohsimnikka?
11. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

'No, (I'm) not very much (hungry).'

Aniyo, kili malici anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili phikon-haci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili oci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili nappici anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili aphici anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili kotanhaci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili pulici anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili issci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.

Aniyo, kili cilkici anhe yo?

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Pæ ka kophimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

Student: Aniyo, pyello kophici
 anhsimnita.'No, not particularly. ('I'm not
 particularly hungry.')

1. Mom i aphimnikka?
2. Sokim i philyo-hamnita.
3. imsik i ccamnikka?
4. (imsik) mas i issimnikka?
5. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
6. Cam i omnikka?
7. Mok i malimnikka?
8. Phikon-hamnikka?
9. Kotanhamnikka?
10. Koki ka cilkimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il cal hamnikka?

Aniyo, pyello aphici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, phello philyo-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello ccaci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello issci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cohci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello oci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello malici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello phikon-haci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello kotanhaci anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cilkici anhsimnita.
Aniyo, pyello cal haci anhsimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Ask Kim Sənsəng the following questions: (Mr. Kim answers beginning once with Ne, and once with Aniyo, both in Informal Polite Speech.)

1. if he is hungry.
2. if he is tired.
3. if he is sleepy.
4. if he is sick.
5. if he is feeling well.
6. if he is not feeling well.
7. if his stomach is uncomfortable.
8. if the meat is too tough.
9. if the pork is tender.
10. if the chicken is delicious.
11. if the food is spicy (hot).
12. if the soup is too salty.
13. if the coffee is too sweet (sugary).
14. if he needs salt and pepper.
15. if he has ever eaten Chinese food.
16. if he has ever taught Korean before.
17. if he knows what time the school ends.
18. if he knows who taught you Korean.
19. if he knows how you have studied Korean.
20. if he doesn't like Chinese food.
21. if the food is enough.
22. if the food is insufficient
23. if the food is plenty.

B. Tell the waitress to bring the following:

1. two bottles of O.B. beer
2. wine (or liquor)
3. vegetables
4. fruits
5. fish
6. seasoning
7. salt and pepper

8. spoon and chop sticks
9. soy sauce and a bowl
10. bread, butter and jam.
11. chicken and eggs.
12. three bowls of beef soup.
13. Pul-koki for two people.

C. Ask Pak Sensaeng whether he likes the following kinds of food:

1. salty food
2. sweet food
3. bland food
4. spicy (hot) food
5. cold food
6. sour food
7. bitter food
8. dry food
9. western food
10. hot (in temperature) food

D. Make a short simple statement using each of the following words:

- | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. face | 13. shoulder |
| 2. head | 14. arm |
| 3. neck | 15. hand |
| 4. throat | 16. finger |
| 5. eye | 17. foot |
| 6. nose | 18. toe |
| 7. cheek | 19. leg |
| 8. chin | 20. <u>knee</u> /mulip/ |
| 9. mouth | 21. waist |
| 10. tooth | 22. chest |
| 11. hair | 23. back |
| 12. ear | 24. <u>wrist</u> /son-mok/ |

E. Pak Sensaeng wants to know what have happened to you; answer as follows:

1. that you received a letter from your mother.
2. that you received questions from the student.
3. that you received a promotion from your boss.
4. that you received your pay from the personnel officer /insa kwacang/.
5. that your bookstore received an order from the customers.
6. that your colleague asked a favor of you.
7. that you have received an order from the Ambassador.
8. that you've received a dinner invitation from the (company) president.
9. that you've received a birthday present from your girl friend.
10. that you received a telephone call from your father.

제 14 과 개인의 입생과 가족 이야기

고향

1. 제임스 : 박 선생은 고향이 어디이세요?

원태

거의

2. 박 : 제 고향은 원태 인천이었으나 거의 서울에서
살았습니다.

어립니다

어릴 때에, 어렸을 때에

3. 제임스 : 그럼, 어렸을 때에 서울로 왔습니까?

세 살

세 살 때에

이사

이사했습니다

4. 박 : 예, 그렇습니다. 제가 세 살 때에 우리
가족이 서울로 이사했습니다.

계십니까

5. 제임스 : 지금, 가족은 몇 분이나 계십니까?

결혼

결혼했습니다

결혼해서

아내, 처

아이들

UNIT 14. Talking About One's Life and Family

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

James

kohyang

native place; home town

1. Pak Sənsəŋ in, kohyang i ətɪ
ise yo?

Where do you come from, Mr. Park?

Park

wellə

originally; formerly

kəi

almost; mostly

2. Ce kohyang in wellə Inchen iəssina,
kəi Səul ɛsə saləssimnita.

I am originally from Incheon but I
have lived mostly in Seoul.

James

əlimnita

[I]'m young

əlil ttə (e)
əlyəssil ttə (e) }

when [I] was young ('at the
time of being young')

3. Kiləm, əlyəssil ttə e Səul lo
wassimnikka?

Then, did you come to Seoul when
you were young?

Park

se sal

three years old

se sal ttə e

at the age of three

uli kacok

my family ('our family')

isa

moving (house, office, etc.)

isa-həssimnita

[we] moved

4. Ne, kilənsimnita. Ce ka se sal
ttə e uli kacok i Səul lo
isa-həssimnita.

That's right. When I was three
years old, my family moved to
Seoul.

James

kyesimnikka

do you have?; are there? (H)

5. Cikim, kacok in myəch pun ina
kyesimnikka?

How many are there in your family
now?

6. 박 : 지금은 결혼해서 아내와 아이들이 둘
있습니다.

아들
7. 제임스 : 아이들은 다 아들인가요?

큰 아이
딸
8. 박 : 아닙니다. 큰 아이는 딸이고 둘째 아이가
아들입니다.

부모, 부모님
살아 계십니다
9. 제임스 : 부모님도 살아 계십니까?

아버지
어머니
형님, 형
돌아 가셨습니다
돼
10. 박 : 아버지는 돌아 가셨고, 어머니는 형님 돼에서
삽니다.

형제
모두, 전부
11. 제임스 : 형제는 모두 몇 분이나 됩니까?

형님 외에
누이 (동생)

Park

kyelhon

marriage

kyelhon-hæssimnita

[I]'m married; [I] got married

kyelhon-hæ sæ

[I]'m married and...; [I] got married and...

anæ

wife

ai til

children; babies

6. Cikim in kyelhon-hæ sæ, anæ wa
ai til i tul issimnita.

I'm married now and have a wife
and two children.

James

atil

son

7. Ai til in ta atil in ka yo?

Are your children both sons?

Park

khin ai

the eldest child ('big child')

ttal

daughter

8. An imnita. Khin ai nin ttal iko,
tul ccæ ai ka atil imnita.

No. The elder child is a daughter,
and the second is a son.

James

pumo }
pumo nim }

parents

sala issimnita }
sala kyesimnita }

[he] is alive; [he] is living

9. Pumo nim to sala kyesimnikka?

Are your parents still living?

Park

apeci

father

eməni

mother

hyəng }
hyəng nim }

(man's) older brother

tola kasyæssimnita

[they] passed away ('went back')

tæk

house; home (H)

10. Apeci nin tola kasyæssko, eməni
nin hyəng nim tæk esə samnita.

My father is dead but my mother
lives at my older brother's
home.

(남) 동생

하나 씩

12. 박 : 형님 한 분 외에 누 이 동생과 남 동생이
하나 씩 있습니다.

다 들

13. 제임스 : 다 들 결혼했나요?

얼마 전에

혼자

14. 박 : 누 이 동생은 얼마 전에 결혼했지만, 남 동생은
아직 혼자입니다.

몇 살

15. 제임스 : 남 동생은 몇 살입니까?

나이

나이가 많 습 니 다

나이가 작 습 니 다

16. 박 : 아직 나이가 그렇게 많 지 않 습 니 다. 에
금년에 스무 살입니다.

17. 제임스 : 학 교 에 다니는 가 요?

고 등 학 교

대 학

대 학 교

조 업

조 업 학 교

삼 학 년

James

hyəŋgce

brothers and sisters; siblings

 motu }
 cənpu }

in all; all together

11. Hyəŋgce nin motu myəch pun ina
twemnikka?

How many brothers and sisters do you
have in all? ('As for your siblings
how many persons do they become
in all?')

Park

hyəŋg nim we e/weye/

beside an older brother

nui (tongsəŋg)

(younger) sister

(nam) tongsəŋg

younger brother

hana ssik

one each; one at one time

12. Hyəŋg nim han pun we e, nui
tongsəŋg kwa nam tongsəŋg i
hana ssik issimnita.

Besides an older brother, I have a
younger sister and a younger
brother.

James

ta til

all; everybody

kyəlhon-həssna yo/kyəlhonhənnayo/

did [he] get married?

13. Ta til kyəlhon-həssna yo?

Are they all married? ('Did they all
get married?')

Park

əlma cən e

sometime ago

honca

single; alone

14. Nui tongsəŋg in əlma cən e
kyəlhon-həssci man, nam tongsəŋg
in acik honca imnita.

My younger sister got married some-
time ago, but my younger brother
is still single.

James

myəch sal/myəssal/

how old?; what age?

15. Nam tongsəŋg in myəch sal imnikka?

How old is your younger brother?

18. 박 : 예, 삼 년 전에 고등 학교를 졸업하고,
 지금은 서울 대학교 삼 학년에 다니고
 있습니다.

Park

nai

age

nai ka manhsimnita

[he] is old ('age is much')

nai ka ceksimnita

[he] is young ('age is little')

16. Acik nai ka kiløhke manhci
anhsimnita. Kimnyen e simu
sal imnita.

He is still quite young. He is
twenty years old (this year).

James

17. Hakkyo e taninin ka yo?

Does he go to school?

Park

koting hakkyo

high school

tøhakkyo

university

coløp

graduation

coløp-hako

[he] graduated and...

sam haknyen/hangnyen/

3rd grade

18. Ne, sam nyen cøn e koting hakkyo
lil coløp-hako, cikim in Søl
Tøhakkyo sam haknyen e taniko
issimnita.

Yes, he finished high school three
years ago and is attending Seoul
University in the junior class.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. (Sənsəng in) kohang i eti i(sɪ)mnikka? ('What place is your native place?') is the fixed expression of which English equivalent is 'Where do you come from?' or 'Where are you from?'. The noun kohyang refers to either 'one's birth-place' or 'the place of his family origin'.
3. eli- 'to be young' is a description verb which usually means someone 'is in or before his boyhood'. It is also used to the grownups in somewhat cynical sense, implying 'immaturity' for the age. Ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when', is a noun. (See Grammate Note 1.)
4. isa 'moving' is a noun which refers to only moving one's residence and/or office from one place to another, and isa-ha- 'to move' is its verb. For 'moving something' other than one's residence, the verb o(l)mki- (transitive verb) is used. Uli 'we' which includes the speaker is a personal noun which occurs in the nominal positions: uli ka 'we (as subject)', uli lil 'us (as object)', uli eke 'to us', uli e 'our', uli nin 'we (as topic)', etc. However, before certain nouns uli occurs without accompanying any particle to make up noun phrases: uli kacok 'my family', uli əmeni 'my mother', uli apəci 'my father', uli nala 'my country', uli cip 'my home', uli hakkyo 'our school', uli cip salam 'my wife ('our house person')', etc.
5. Kacok means either 'family' or 'a family member'. So, Kacok i manhsimnita. means '[I] have a large family.' but not '[I] have many families.'
6. Kyelhon means either 'marriage' or 'wedding'; Kyelhon-həssimnikka? means either 'Are [you] married?' or 'Did [you] get married?'
8. Khin atil ('big son') refers to 'the first son', and khin ttal 'the first daughter'. Mat atil and khin atil are synonymous, so are mat ttal and khin ttal. Regardless of sex, the last child is called mangnæ. Mangnæ + atil (or ttal) = the last child who is a son (or daughter). An imnita. ('No, [it]'s not.') is synonymous with aniyo.

9. Pumo refers always to 'both parents'. Nim is either a free noun or a post-noun. As a free noun it is a poetic word, meaning 'sweetheart' or 'lover'. As a post-noun occurring after a title or kinship name, nim makes up a noun phrase: Title (or kinship name) + nim = Title or kinship name (honored).

Examples:

<u>Regular</u>	<u>Honored</u>	
sənsəŋ	sənsəŋ	{ 'teacher' 'you'
Pak Sənsəŋ	Pak Sənsəŋ nim	'Mr. Park'
pumo	pumo nim	'parents'
hyəŋ	hyəŋ nim	'older brother'
təsa	təsa nim	{ 'Mr. Ambassador' 'ambassador'
sacang	sacang nim	'the president of the company'
apəci	apənim	'father'
əməni	əmənim	'mother'
nui	nunim	'older sister'
atɪl	atɪnim	'your son'
ttal	ttanim	'your daughter'

Note: apənim, əmənim, nunim, atɪnim, ttanim are irregular one-word expressions.

10. Tola ka(sie)ssimnita. ('[They] went back.', '[They] returned.') is a Korean euphemism for 'died'. Təək is the polite equivalent of cɪp 'house', 'home'. Used directly to the addressee təək also means 'your home' or sometimes 'you'.
11. Motu and its synonym cənpu 'in all', 'all' occurs either as an adverb or as a noun.
12. Nui means 'female sibling' which is used by a male sibling. Nunim is one-word term specifically for 'older sister' and nui tongsəŋ is a noun phrase which means 'younger sister'. Tongsəŋ is used for any 'younger sibling' of either sex. Nui, nunim, nui tongsəŋ are words for males only.
14. Honca 'single', 'alone' occurs either as a noun or as an adverb. As a noun it denotes 'a single person with no family' which is often the synonym of toksin 'an unmarried single person.'

16. Nai ka manh-ta. ('Age is plenty.') and Nai ka cək-ta. ('Age is little.') are most commonly used for the single verb expressions nilkəss-ta 'is aged'; cə(1)məss-ta 'is young', 'is youthful'. The stems of nilkəss-ta and cəlməss-ta, both of which occur usually in the past tense to describe the present state, are nilk- and cəlm- respectively. Sal ('the age counter') never occurs with the numerals of Chinese character origin, but always preceded by the numerals of Korean origin.
18. Haknyən/hangnyən/ ('learning year') is a counter which occurs only after the numerals of Chinese character origin, and means either 'grader' or 'school grade':

il haknyən	'1st grader' or '1st grade'
i haknyən	'2nd grader' or '2nd grade'
sam haknyən	'3rd grader' or '3rd grade'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. ttə 'time', 'occasion', 'when'

The noun ttə bound to other forms occurs in the following constructions:

(a.1.) A (certain) nominal + ttə = a nominal phrase 'such-and-such time'

Examples:

hakkyo tə	'the school days'
cəmsim tə	'the lunch time'
se sal tə	'the age of three'
kuntə tə	'the time of military service'
ai tə	'childhood'

(a.2.) A nominal + ttə + e = an adverbial phrase

hakkyo tə e	'in the school days'
cəmsim tə e	'during the lunch time'
ai tə e	'in [my] childhood', 'when I was child'
se sal tə e	'at the age of three'

(b.1.) -(1)l + ttæ = a nominal phrase 'the time of doing so-and-so'

The honorific and/or the past tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)l form. Examples:

Cal ttæ lil kitalimnita.

'[I]'m waiting for the bed-time
('sleeping time').'

Selo ssaul ttæ ka issimnita.

'There are times of fighting each
other.'

Thipi lil pol ttæ ka ceil cæm1
issnin sikan ici yo.

'When I watch TV is the most
interesting time.' ('The time
of watching TV is the most
interesting time.')

(b.2.) -(1)l + ttæ + e = an adverbial phrase 'at the time of doing so-and-so', 'when [someone] does so-and-so'

The construction -(1)l ttæ e which may be followed by a pause occurs as a time adverbial expression before another inflected expression to indicate that the second action/description takes place at the time of the first action/description. Examples:

Hakkyo e kal ttæ e, tækkæ
ttwæ kamnita.

'When [we] go to school, [we]
usually run.'

Tæhak e tanil ttæ e, cikim
anæ wa kyælhon-hæssci yo.

'When [I] was in college, [I]
married my present wife.'

Achim e ilenassil ttæ e, pi ka
oko issessimnita.

'When [I] got up in the morning,
it was raining.'

Cheim Hankuk e wassil ttæ e,
cæ nin chongkak iessæ yo.

'When [I] first came to Korea, I
was a bachelor.'

2. Infinitive + sæ, 'and...', 'and so...'

Sæ like the particles to (Unit 10) and ya (Unit 11), belongs to a small class of particles which occur after inflected words. Infinitive + sæ which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and denotes the cause, reason or sequence of the first action or description for which the following inflected expression follows. Examples:

Cikim in kyælhon-hæ sæ, anæ wa ai
til i tul issimnita.

'Now, I'm married, and have a wife
and two children.'

æce nin mom i ap hæ sæ, il-halæ
kaci anhæsse yo.

'I was sick yesterday, so I didn't
go to work.'

Pi ka wa sæ, kil i nappikun yo.

'Because it rained, the roads are
bad.'

Tosəkwən e ka sə, tasəs sikan tongan 'I went to the library and studied
kongpu-həssimnita. for five hours.'

3. A nominal + $\begin{Bmatrix} \text{we} \\ \text{pakk} \end{Bmatrix}$ e 'beside + the nominal', 'except the nominal'

We ('outside') is a noun which with the preceeding nominal makes up a nominal phrase. A nominal + we + e which may be followed by a pause occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected affirmative expression, meaning 'beside the nominal' or 'except the nominal'.

We and pakk are synonymous and are interchangeable each other. Examples:

Hyəng nim han salam we e, nui 'Beside one older brother, [I] have
tongsəng i isse yo. a sister.'

Səul we e Pusan esə to kinmu-həsse 'Not only in Seoul, [I] also worked
yo. in Pusan.'

Note that a nominal $\begin{Bmatrix} \text{we} \\ \text{pakk} \end{Bmatrix}$ e + negative inflected expression means either 'only the nominal + affirmative inflected expression' or 'except the nominal + negative expression'. Observe the following:

Na nin Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita. 'I know only Korean.' ('Except
Korean, I don't know.')

Yəngə pakk e pəuci anhəssimnita. 'I learned only English.' ('Except
English, I didn't learn.')

Phyo lil tu cang pakk e saci mot 'I could buy only two tickets.'
həsse yo. ('Except two tickets, I couldn't
buy.')

Also note that kī we e, (or kī pakk e) 'Besides', 'Beside that' followed by a pause at the beginning of a sentence occurs as a sentence adverbial.

4. ssik 'each', 'at one time'

A numeral expression + ssik occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expression, denoting distribution for each separate action. Examples:

Nunim kwa nui tongsəng i hana 'I have one older sister and one
ssik isse yo. younger sister each.'

Tu salam ssik tilə osipsiyo. 'Please come in, two at a time.'

Hankuk imsik il han kaci ssik məkə 'I will try (eating) Korean food
pokesse yo. one by one.'

Han tal e han pən ssik əməni eke 'I write my mother once a month.'
phyənci-haci yo.

5. Infinitive + iss-

The verb iss- preceded by a small class of action verbs in the infinitive form, occurs as an auxiliary verb.. It denotes the state of being. Compare the following:

sal-	'to live'	{salə issimnita {salə kyesimnita	'is alive'; 'is living'
anc-	'to sit'	ance issimnita	'is seated'
kac-	'to possess'	kace issimnita	'has'; 'possess'
sə-	'to stand'	sə issimnita	'is standing'
seu-	{'to erect' {'to park'	sewə issimnita	'is being erected'; 'is being parked'
tu-	{'to put' {'to place'	tue issimnita	'is being placed'
noh-	{'to put' {'to place'	noha issimnita	'is being left'; 'is being placed'
yelli-	'to be open'	yellie issimnita	'is being open'; 'is left open'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pak Sənsəŋ in kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | { Where is Mr. Park from?
Where do you come from, Mr. Park? |
| 2. <u>Ceimsɪ Sənsəŋ</u> in kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where's Mr. James from? |
| 3. <u>Sənsəŋ puin</u> in kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where's your wife from? |
| 4. <u>Sənsəŋ ɐməni</u> nin kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where was your mother born? |
| 5. <u>Mikuk tæsa</u> nin kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where's the U.S. Ambassador from? |
| 6. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəŋ</u> in kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where's the Korean teacher from? |
| 7. <u>Yəŋgə sənsəŋ</u> in kohyang i ətɪ isə yo? | Where's the English teacher from? |
| 8. Yəŋgə sənsəŋ in <u>kohyang i ətɪ isimnikka?</u> | Where's the English teacher from? |
| 9. Yəŋgə sənsəŋ in <u>kohyang i ətɪ imnikka?</u> | Where's the English teacher from? |
| 10. Yəŋgə sənsəŋ in <u>kohyang i ətɪ iye yo?</u> | Where's the English teacher from? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ce ka se sal ttæ Səul lo isa-hæssimnita. | [We] moved to Seoul when I was 3 years old. |
| 2. Ce ka se sal ttæ (e) <u>Səul lo wassimnita.</u> | [We] <u>came</u> to Seoul when I was 3 years old. |
| 3. Ce ka <u>tasəs sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 5 years old. |
| 4. Ce ka <u>ilkop sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 7 years old. |
| 5. Ce ka <u>ahop sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 9 years old. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Ce ka <u>yel sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo
wassiṁnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 10
years old. |
| 7. Ce ka <u>yel han sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo
wassiṁnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 11
years old. |
| 8. Ce ka <u>simul tu sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo
wassiṁnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 22
years old. |
| 9. Ce ka <u>səlhin se sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul
lo wassiṁnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 33
years old. |
| 10. Ce ka <u>mahin ne sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul
lo wassiṁnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 44
years old. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ce nin kəl Səul esə salessiṁnita. | I have lived mostly in Seoul. |
| 2. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>il-hæssiṁnita</u> . | I have worked mostly in Seoul. |
| 3. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>kongpu-hæssiṁnita</u> . | I have studied mostly in Seoul. |
| 4. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo e</u>
<u>taniessiṁnita</u> . | I attended school mostly in Seoul. |
| 5. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>issæssiṁnita</u> . | I have stayed mostly in Seoul. |
| *6. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo lil</u>
<u>na wassiṁnita</u> . | I finished most of schools in
Seoul. |
| 7. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo lil</u>
<u>coləp-hæssiṁnita</u> . | I graduated most of schools in
Seoul. |
| *8. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>calassiṁnita</u> . | I have grown up mostly in Seoul. |
| 9. Ce nin kəl Səul esə <u>Hankuk mal il</u>
<u>pæwæssiṁnita</u> . | I have learned Korean mostly in
Seoul. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <u>Hyəng nim</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have an older brother?
(to male) |
| *2. <u>Nunim</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have an older sister? (to
male) |
| *3. <u>Oppa</u> ka kyesimnikka? | Do you have an older brother? (to
female) |
| *4. <u>ənni</u> ka kyesimnikka? | Do you have an older sister? (to
female) |

- | | |
|---|--|
| *5. <u>Acessi</u> ka kyesimnikka? | Do you have an uncle? |
| *6. <u>Acumeni</u> ka kyesimnikka? | Do you have an aunt? |
| *7. <u>Ttanim</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have a daughter (H)? |
| *8. <u>Chinchek</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have relatives? |
| 9. <u>Hyengce (t1l)</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have brothers and sisters? |
| 10. <u>Puin</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have a wife? |
| *11. <u>Cangmo (nim)</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have mother-in-law ('wife's mother')? |
| *12. <u>Cangin</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have father-in-law ('wife's father')? |
| *13. <u>Sipumo (nim)</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have your husband's parents? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə e anə nin Mikuk e issimnita. | My wife is in America. |
| 2. Cə e kacok in Mikuk e issimnita. | My family is in America. |
| 3. Cə e at1l in Mikuk e issimnita. | My son is in America. |
| 4. Cə e ttal in Mikuk e issimnita. | My daughter is in America. |
| 5. Cə e (nam) tongsəng in Mikuk e issimnita. | My younger brother is in America. |
| *6. Cə e sachon in Mikuk e issimnita. | My cousin is in America. |
| *7. Cə e cokha nin Mikuk e issimnita. | My nephew is in America. |
| *8. Cə e cokha ttal in Mikuk e issimnita. | My niece is in America. |
| *9. Cə e chinchek in Mikuk e issimnita. | My relatives are in America. |
| *10. Uli cuin in Mikuk e issimnita. | My husband ('our master') is in America. |
| *11. Cə e namphən in Mikuk e issimnita. | My husband is in America (to older people). |
| *12. Uli sawi nin Mikuk e issimnita. | My son-in-law is in America. |
| *13. Uli myənuli nin Mikuk e issimnita. | My daughter-in-law is in America. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Pumo nim i sala kyesimnikka? | Are [your] parents living? |
| 2. <u>Apəci</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] father living? |
| 3. <u>əmeni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] mother living? |
| *4. <u>Halapəci</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] grandfather living? |

- | | |
|--|---|
| *5. <u>Halmoni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] grandmother living? |
| 6. <u>Acessi</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] uncle living? |
| 7. <u>Acumoni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] aunt living? |
| 8. <u>Nunim</u> i sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] older sister living? (to male) |
| 9. <u>Cangmo (nim)</u> i sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] mother-in-law ('wife's mother') living? |
| 10. <u>Cangin</u> i sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] father-in-law ('wife's father') living? |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Uli kacok i Seul lo isa-hæssimnita. | My family moved to Seoul. |
| 2. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>kassimnita</u> . | My family went to Seoul. |
| 3. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>ttenassimnita</u> . | My family left for Seoul. |
| 4. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>wassimnita</u> . | My family came to Seoul. |
| 5. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>olla wassimnita</u> . | My family came up to Seoul. |
| 6. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>olla kassimnita</u> . | My family went up to Seoul. |
| 7. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>nælye kassimnita</u> . | My family went down to Seoul. |
| 8. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>kæle kassimnita</u> . | My family walked to Seoul. |
| 9. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>thako kassimnita</u> . | My family rode to Seoul. |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kacok in myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many are there in your family? |
| 2. <u>Sensang</u> in myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many teachers are there? |
| 3. <u>Hyeng nim</u> in myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many older brothers do you have? (to male) |
| 4. <u>Nunim</u> in myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many older sisters do you have? (to male) |
| 5. <u>Acessi</u> nin myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many uncles do you have? |
| 6. <u>Acumoni</u> nin myeoch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many aunts do you have? |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. <u>Mikuk chinku</u> nin myæch pun ina
kyesimnikka? | How many American friends do you
have? |
| 8. <u>Hyængce</u> nin myæch pun ina
kyesimnikka? | How many brothers and sisters do
you have? |
| 9. <u>Ttanim</u> in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many daughters do you have? |
| 10. <u>ænni</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many older sisters do you have?
(to female) |
| 11. <u>Oppa</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many older brothers do you have?
(to female) |
| 12. Oppa nin myæch pun ina <u>twesimnikka</u> ? | How many older brothers do you have?
('As for your older brothers, how
many do they become?') |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Apæci nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My father passed away. |
| 2. <u>æmeni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My mother passed away. |
| 3. <u>Halapæci</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My grandfather passed away. |
| 4. <u>Halmæni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My grandmother passed away. |
| 5. <u>Acæssi</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My uncle passed away. |
| 6. <u>Acumæni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita. | My aunt passed away. |
| *7. <u>Khin hyæng nim</u> in tola
kasyæssimnita. | My oldest brother passed away. |
| *8. <u>Khin nunim</u> in tola kasyæssimnita. | My oldest sister passed away. |
| *9. Khin nunim in <u>cukæssimnita</u> . | My oldest sister {is dead.
died. |
| 10. Khin nunim in <u>kyælhon-hæssimnita</u> . | My oldest sister is married. |
| 11. Khin nunim in <u>honca imnita</u> . | My oldest sister is single. |
| 12. Khin nunim in <u>honca samnita</u> . | My oldest sister lives alone. |
| 13. Khin nunim in <u>nai ka manhsimnita</u> . | My oldest sister is old. |
| 14. Khin nunim in <u>nai ka cæksimnita</u> . | My oldest sister is young. |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. æmeni nin hyæng nim tæk esæ
samnita. | [My] mother lives at my older
brother's home. |
| 2. <u>Cæimsi</u> nin <u>Kim Sænsæng</u> tæk esæ
samnita. | James lives at Mr. Kim's home. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>Apeci</u> nin <u>Mikuk</u> esə samnita. | [My] father lives in America. |
| 4. <u>Halapeci</u> nin <u>kohyang</u> esə samnita. | [My] grandfather lives in the home town. |
| 5. <u>Acessi</u> nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə samnita. | [My] uncle lives in Europe. |
| 6. <u>Hyeng nim</u> in <u>Inchen</u> pukin esə samnita. | [My] older brother lives in the vicinity of Inchen. |
| 7. <u>Nunim</u> in <u>Pusan</u> sinə esə samnita. | [My] older sister lives in downtown Pusan. |
| 8. <u>Cangin kwa cangmo</u> nin <u>sikol</u> esə samnita. | [My] wife's father and mother live in the country. |
| 9. <u>Siapeci wa siəmeni</u> nin <u>kohyang</u> esə samnita. | [My] husband's father and mother live in the home town. |

K. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A1 ka tul issimnita. | I have two children. |
| 2. <u>Atil</u> i <u>hana</u> issimnita. | I have one son. |
| 3. <u>Ttal</u> i <u>ses</u> issimnita. | I have three daughters. |
| *4. <u>Sonca</u> ka <u>tul</u> issimnita. | I have two grandsons. |
| *5. <u>Sonnye</u> ka <u>nes</u> issimnita. | I have four granddaughters. |
| 6. <u>Hyeng nim</u> i <u>ne(s)</u> (<u>salam</u>) issimnita. | I have four older brothers. |
| 7. <u>Nunim</u> i <u>tases</u> (<u>salam</u>) issimnita. | I (male) have five older sisters. |
| 8. <u>Acessi</u> ka <u>yəsəs</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita. | I have six uncles. |
| 9. <u>Acumeni</u> ka <u>ilkop</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita. | I have seven aunts. |
| 10. <u>Oppa</u> ka <u>han</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita. | I (female) have one older brother. |
| 11. <u>Yetongsəng</u> i <u>tul</u> issimnita. | I have two younger sisters. |
| *12. <u>Chənam</u> i <u>yələs</u> issimnita. | I have several brothers-in-law ('wife's brothers'). |
| *13. <u>Chəce</u> ka <u>myəch</u> issimnita. | I have some wife's younger sisters. |
| *14. <u>Chəhyəng</u> i <u>tu-sə-nes</u> issimnita. | I have a couple of wife's older sisters. |

L. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Tongsəng</u> in <u>myəch</u> sal imnikka? | How old is your younger brother? |
| 2. <u>Sənsəng</u> in <u>myəch</u> sal imnikka? | How old is the teacher? |
| 3. <u>Punin</u> in <u>myəch</u> sal imnikka? | How old is your wife? |
| 4. <u>Nunim</u> in <u>myəch</u> sal imnikka? | How old is your older sister? |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <u>Hyəng nim</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your older brother?
(to male) |
| 6. <u>Ttanim</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your daughter? |
| 7. <u>Atil</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your son? |
| 8. <u>Khin ai nin</u> myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your first child? |
| 9. <u>Ches ccæ atil</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your first son? |
| 10. <u>Chənam</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your wife's brother? |
| 11. <u>Chəce</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your wife's younger
sister? |
| 12. <u>Sitongsəng</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your husband's younger
brother? |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Hyəng nim we e nunim to issimnita. | I have an older sister as well as
an older brother. |
| 2. <u>Namtongsəng</u> we e <u>yətongsəng</u> to
issimnita. | I have a younger sister as well as
a younger brother. |
| 3. <u>Səul Təhakkyo</u> we e <u>Kolyə Təhakkyo</u>
to issimnita. | There is Korea University as well
as Seoul University. |
| 4. <u>Panto Hothel</u> we e <u>Cosən Hothel</u> to
issimnita. | There is Chosen Hotel as well as
Bando Hotel. |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> we e <u>Yəngkuk</u>
<u>Yəngsakwan</u> to issimnita. | There is British Consulate as well
as American Embassy. |
| 6. <u>Ilpon chinku</u> we e <u>Cungkuk chinku</u>
to issimnita. | I have a Chinese friend as well as
a Japanese friend. |
| 7. <u>Atil hana</u> we e <u>ttal tul</u> to
issimnita. | I have two daughters as well as a
son. |
| 8. <u>Kicha wa ppəsi</u> we e <u>pihəngki wa</u>
<u>pə</u> to issimnita. | There are airplanes and ships as
well as trains and buses. |
| 9. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> we e <u>Cungang Kikcang</u>
to issimnita. | There is Central Theatre as well
as International Theatre. |

N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Hyəng nim i issimnita. /nunim/

'I have an older brother.' /older sister/

Student: Hyəng nim we e nunim to
issimnita.

'Beside an older brother I also have
an older sister.'

1. Pullanse mal il pəwəssimnita. /Tokil
mal/

Pullanse mal we e Tokil mal to
pəwəssimnita.

2. Na nin Səul esə salassimnita.
/Pusan/

Na nin Səul we e Pusan esə to
salassimnita.

3. Uli hakkyo esə Hankuk mal il
kalichimnita. /Ssolyən mal/

Uli hakkyo esə Hankuk mal we e
Ssolyən mal to kalichimnita.

4. Səul sinə lil kukyəng-həssimnita.
/Cungang Pakmulkwan/

Səul sinə we e Cungang Pakmulkwan
to kukyəng-həssimnita.

5. Kicha wa ppesi lo kal su issimnita.
/pihəngki/

Kicha wa ppesi we e pihəngki lo to
kal su issimnita.

6. Kī yəca wa kathī kako siphsimnita.
/Kim Kisu/

Kī yəca we e Kim Kisu wa to kathī
kako siphsimnita.

7. Səul pukin il kukyəng-halyəko
hamnita. /Pusan/

Səul pukin we e Pusan to kukyəng-
halyəko hamnita.

8. Kacok til il pwa ya hakessimnita.
/yələ chinku/

Kacok til we e yələ chinku to pwa
ya hakessimnita.

9. Hankuk inhəng e kal il i issimnita.
/Cungang Sicang/

Hankuk inhəng we e Cungang Sicang
e to kal il i issimnita.

O. Substitution Drill

1. Cə nin cangnyən e koting hakkyo
lil coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the high school
last year.

2. Cə nin cangnyən e cunghakkyo lil
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the junior high
school ('middle school') last
year.

3. Cə nin cangnyən e təhakkyo lil
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the university
last year.

4. Cə nin cangnyən e sohakkyo lil
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the elementary
school last year.

5. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from Seoul University
last year.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
<u>na wassimnita.</u> | I graduated from Seoul University
last year. |
| 7. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
<u>tanlæssimnita.</u> | I attended Seoul University last
year. |
| *8. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
<u>tile kassimnita.</u> | I entered Seoul University last
year. |
| *9. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
<u>kkith-machiæssimnita.</u> | I finished Seoul University last
year. |
| 10. Cə nin cangnyən Səul Təhak il
<u>kimantuæssimnita.</u> | I quit Seoul University last year. |
| 11. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il
<u>sicak-hæssimnita.</u> | I began Seoul University last year. |

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnita. Ppesi lll
thamnita.

'[I] go to school. [I] take the
bus.'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttæ (e), ppesi
lll thamnita.

'When I go to school I take the
bus.'

1. Mok i malimnita. Mul il masimnita.

Mok i malil ttæ (e), mul il
masimnita.

2. Pæ ka kophimnita. Cəsim il
məksimnita.

Pæ ka kophil ttæ (e), cəsim il
məksimnita.

3. Catongcha lll samnita. Ton i
philyo-hamnita.

Catongcha lll sal ttæ (e), ton i
philyo-hamnita.

4. Phyənci lll puchimnita. Uphyənkuk
e ka ya hamnita.

Phyənci lll puchil ttæ (e), uphyənkuk
e ka ya hamnita.

5. Hankuk yənghwa lll sangyənghamnita.
Hangsang polə kamnita.

Hankuk yənghwa lll sangyəngchal ttæ
(e), hangsang polə kamnita.

6. Səul esə il-hamnita. Kukyəng-
hakessimnita.

Səul esə il-hal ttæ (e), kukyəng-
hakessimnita.

7. Kələ sə hwesa e kamnita. Kim
Sənsəng cip e tllikessimnita.

Kələ sə hwesa e kal ttæ (e), Kim
Sənsəng cip e tllikessimnita.

8. Isa-hamnita. Sə cha lll sakessimnita.

Isa-hal ttæ (e), sə cha lll
sakessimnita.

9. Na nin pappimnita. Məkilə na kal
su əpsimnita.

Na nin pappil ttæ (e), məkilə na
kal su əpsimnita.

11. Təhak e taniəssimnita. Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnita.
12. Hankuk mal il sicak-həssimnita. Chəim e nin əlyəwəssimnita.
13. K1 yəca ekese phyənci l1l patəssimnita. Na to kot ssəssimnita.
14. Təhak il kkith-machiəssimnita. Cikim anə l1l mannəssimnita.
15. Ppəsi esə nəliəssimnita. Anə ka kitaliko issəssimnita.

- Təhak e taniəssil ttə (e), Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnita.
- Hankuk mal il sicak-həssil ttə (e), chəim e nin əlyəwəssimnita.
- K1 yəca ekese phyənci l1l patəssil ttə (e), na to kot ssəssimnita.
- Təhak il kkith-machiəssil ttə (e), cikim anə l1l mannəssimnita.
- Ppəsi esə nəliəssil ttə (e), anə ka kitaliko issəssimnita.

Q. Grammar Drill

Tutor: ənce ppəsi l1l thamnikka?
/Hakkyo e kamnita./

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttə (e), ppəsi l1l thamnita.

'When do you take the bus?' / [I]
go to school./

'When I go to school, I take the bus.'

1. ənce phyənci l1l ssimmikka?
/Sikan i issimnita./

Sikan i issil ttə (e), phyənci l1l ssimnita.

2. ənce məkcü l1l masimnikka? /Mok i malimnita./

Mok i malil ttə (e), məkcü l1l masimnita.

3. ənce hapsing il thamnikka? /Salam i manhci anhsimnita./

Salam i manhci anhil ttə (e), hapsing il thamnita.

4. ənce Yəngə l1l kalichikəssimnikka?
/Yəngə sənsəng i əpsimnita./

Yəngə səngsəng i əpsil ttə (e), yəngə l1l kalichikəssimnita.

5. ənce tək e kyesikəssimnikka? /Cənyək il məksimnita./

Cənyək il məkil ttə (e), cip e isskəssimnita.

6. ənce kyəlhon-hakəssimnikka?
/Cohahanin yəca l1l mannəmnita./

Cohahanin yəca l1l mannal ttə (e), kyəlhon-hakəssimnita.

7. ənce halapəci ka tola kasyəssimnikka?
/Nə ka yəl sal tweəssimnita./

Nə ka yəl sal tweəssil ttə (e), halapəci ka tola kasyəssimnita.

8. ənce kkaci honca saləssimnikka?
/Təhak il coləp-həssimnita./

Təhak il coləp-həssil ttə kkaci, honca saləssimnita.

9. ənce Yəngə l1l pəwəssimnikka?
/Cunghakkyo e taniəssimnita./

Cunghakkyo e taniəssil ttə (e), Yəngə l1l pəwəssimnita.

R. Response Exercise

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal ttæ (e), muæs
 ilo kase yo?

'What do you ride when you go to
 school?'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttæ e, ppæsi
 lo kamnita.

'I take the bus when I go to school.'

1. Cæmsim il mækil ttæ e, nuku wa kathi kase yo?
2. Cip e issil ttæ e, muæs il hase yo?
3. Sikan i issil ttæ e, tækkæ muæs (il) hase yo?
4. Hankuk il ttænal ttæ e, muæs ilo okesse yo?
5. Seul esæ salæssil ttæ e, musin cip e salæssæ yo?
6. Mom i aphil ttæ e, muæs il capsuse yo?
7. Tæhakkyo e taniæssil ttæ e, muæs il kongpu-hæssæ yo?
8. Koting hakkyo lil colæp-hæssil ttæ e, myæch sal iyæssæ yo?
9. Khæphi lil masiko siphil ttæ e, eti e kase yo?
10. Mok i malil ttæ e, muæs il masise yo?
11. Mikuk e tola kal ttæ e, nuku wa kathi kakesse yo?
12. Phyænci lil puchil ttæ e, muæs i philyo-hæ yo?

EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story to the class that:

You are originally from Inchon but you have lived most of your life in in Seoul. When you were three years old, your family moved to Seoul, and you began elementary school there at six. You went to junior high, senior high and college, all in Seoul. You are employed by a big company. You are married and have a wife and two children. Your first child is a daughter but the second one is a son. Your parents are not with your family. Your mother is still living but your father passed away a few years ago, and your mother lives at your brother's home. Besides one older brother, you have one (each) younger sister and one younger brother but you don't have any older sisters. Your sister got married sometime ago, but your younger brother is still single. He is now 20 years old and is still too young to get married. After finishing high school 3 years ago, he entered Seoul University. Since he is a junior this year he will be graduated in a year and a half, but probably he will have to go into military service for two years after that.

B. Prepare a short biography of yourself and tell the class. The information in your autobiography may include your home town, your schools, your immediate family, your parents, brothers and sisters if any; what they are doing; their ages; their marital status, and so forth.

C. Make a short statement or question using each of the following kinship terms:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. grandfather | 20. your husband |
| 2. grandmother | 21. your daughter |
| 3. parents | 22. relatives |
| 4. father | 23. parents-in-law ('husband's parents') |
| 5. mother | 24. father-in-law ('husband's father') |
| 6. uncle | 25. mother-in-law ('husband's mother') |
| 7. aunt | 26. father-in-law ('wife's father') |
| 8. older sister (for male and female) | 27. mother-in-law ('wife's mother') |
| 9. older brother (for male and female) | 28. sister-in-law ('wife's older sister') |
| 10. daughter | 29. sister-in-law ('wife's younger sister') |
| 11. son | 30. sister(s)-in-law ('husband's sister(s)') |
| 12. cousin (male, female) | 31. brother(s)-in-law ('wife's brother(s)') /chenam/ |
| 13. nephew | 32. son-in-law /sawi/ |
| 14. niece | 33. daughter-in-law |
| 15. grandson | 34. brother-in-law ('male's sister's husband') /maepu/ |
| 16. granddaughter | 35. brother-in-law ('female's older sister's husband') /hyengpu/ |
| 17. my wife | |
| 18. my husband | |
| 19. your wife | |

제 15 과 개인의 일생과 가족 이야기 (계속)

1. 이 : 제임스 선생은 미국 어디에서 오셨습니까?

뉴욕 주

났습니다

아이를 낳았습니다

아이가 났습니다

자랐습니다

2. 제임스 : 저의 집은 시카고에 있습니다. 그러나, 저는
뉴욕 주에서 났아서 거기에서 자랐습니다.

3. 이 : 그럼, 학교도 뉴욕 주에서 다녔습니까?

대학

4. 제임스 : 대학 말입니까? 대학은 보스턴에서
다녔습니다.

나 왔습니다

5. 이 : 언제 대학은 나 왔습니까?

팔 년 전에

6. 제임스 : 팔 년 전에 나 왔습니다.

그 후에

7. 이 : 그 후에는 무엇을 했습니까?

종업합니다

종업한 후에

UNIT 15. Talking About One's Life and Family (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

1. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk ətɪ esə
osyæssimnikka?

Where in America are you from, Mr.
James?

James

- Nyuyok Cu
nahassimnita
ai lil nahassimnita
ai ka nahassimnita
calassimnita
2. Cə e cip in Sikhako e issimnita.
Kiləna, cə nin Nyuyok Cu esə
naha sə kəkɪ esə calassimnita.

New York State
[I] was born
[she] gave birth to a child
a child was born
[I] grew up
My home is in Chicago. But I was
born in New York State and grew
up there.

Lee

3. Kiləm, hakkyo to Nyuyok Cu esə
tanyæssimnikka?

Well, did you go to school in New
York State, too?

James

- təhak
4. Təhak mal imnikka? Təhak in
Posithon esə tanyæssimnita.

college
You mean college? I went to
college in Boston.

Lee

- na wassimnikka
5. ənce təhak in na wassimnikka?

('did you come out?')

When did you graduate from college?

James

- phal nyən cən e
6. Han phal nyən cən e na wassimnita.

8 years ago
I graduated about eight years ago.

얼마 동안

어느 회사에서

8. 제임스 : 대학을 졸업한 후에 얼마 동안 어느 회사에서 일했습니까.

언제부터

외교관이 되었어요

9. 이 : 그럼, 언제부터 외교관이 되었어요?

들어 옵니다

들어 온지

국무성

꼭

10. 제임스 : 국무성에 들어 온지 꼭 육 년 되었습니까.

오기 전에

여러 나라에서

11. 이 : 한국에 오기 전에 여러 나라에서 일했나요?

12. 제임스 : 예, 서울에 오기 전에(는) 구 타파 여러 나라에서 한 사 년 동안 근무했었습니다.

있는 동안

구 타파에 있는 동안

여행

여행(을) 했습니까

13. 이 : 구 타파에 있는 동안 여행 많이 했습니까?

Lee

ki hu e

after that

7. Ki hu e nin muēs il hæssimnikka?

What did you do after that?

James

coləp

graduation

coləp-hamnita

[I] graduate

coləphan hu e

after graduating

əlma tongan

for some time

ənī hwesa

a certain firm

8. Təhak il coləp-han hu e, əlma
tongan ənī hwesa esə il-hæssimnita.After I graduated from college, I
worked with a business firm for
some time.Lee

ence puthe

since when

wekyokwan i tweəsə yo

have [you] become a diplomat?

9. Kīlēm, ence puthe wekyokwan i
tweəsə yo?Then, when did you join the foreign
service? ('Since when have you
become a diplomat?')James

tīlə omnita

('I come in'); [I] join

tīlə on ci

since I joined

Kukmusəng/kungmusəng/

State Department

kkok

just; without fail; exactly

10. Kukmusəng e tīlə on ci, kkok yuk
nyen tweəssimnita.It has been exactly six years since
I came into the State Department.Dialogue BLee

okī cən e

before coming

yələ nala esə

in many countries

11. Hankuk e okī cən e, yələ nala
esə il-hæssna/ilhænna/ yo?Have you worked in many countries
before coming to Korea?

14. 제임스 : 예, 많이 (여행)했습니다.

기후

비슷합니다

15. 이 : 거기에 기후는 한국과 비슷했습니까?

생각합니다

16. 제임스 : 예, 그렇게 생각합니다.

기후에 대해(서)

말씀 해주십시오

17. 이 : 그 곳, 기후에 대해서 좀 말씀 해주십시오.

봄

날씨

따뜻하지만

비

비가 옵니다

여름

덥지 않습니다

18. 제임스 : 봄 날씨는 따뜻하지만, 비가 좀 많이 오지요.

여름에는 그리 덥지 않아요.

가을

겨울

갑습니다

19. 이 : 가을과 겨울 날씨도 한국과 갑습니까?

James

12. Ne, Seul e oki cən e (nɪn),
Kulapha yələ nala esə han sa
nyən tongan kinmu-hæssæssimnita.

Yes, I worked in several countries
in Europe for about four years
before I came to Seoul.

Lee

- issnin/innin/ tongan
Kulapha e issnin tongan
yəhəŋg
yəhəŋg (il) hæssimnikka
13. Kulapha e issnin tongan, yəhəŋg
manhi hæssimnikka?

while [I] stay; while [I] was
(there)
while [you] were in Europe
travelling; trip
have you travelled?
Did you travel a lot while in Europe?

James

14. Ne, manhi (yəhəŋg-)hæssimnita.

Yes, I travelled a lot.

Lee

- kihu
pisithamnikka
15. Kəki e kihu nɪn Hankuk kwa
pisithæssimnikka?

climate; weather
is [it] similar?
Was the weather there similar to
that of Korea?

James

- səŋgak-hamnita
16. Ne, kiləhke səŋgak-hamnita.

[I] think
Yes, I think so.

Lee

- kihu e təhə (sə)
malssim-hə cusipsiyo
17. Kɪ kos kihu e təhə (sə) com
malssim-hə cusipsiyo.

about the weather; concerning
the weather
please tell me
Please tell me a little about the
climate there.

James

- pom
nalssi
ttattithaci man

spring
weather
[it]'s warm but

눈

눈 이 오고

바람

바람이 불 니다

20. 제임스 : 예, 대개 가을 날씨에는 같습니다. 그러나,
겨울에는 한국보다 눈 이 많이 오고, 바람이
많이 불 니다.

pi
pi ka omnita
yelim
təpci anhsimnita

18. Pom nalssi nin ttattithaci man,
pi ka com manhi oci yo. Yelim
e nin killi təpci anhe yo.

rain
it rains ('rain comes')
summer
[it]'s not hot

Spring weather is warm but it rains
a lot. It's not so hot in the
summer.

Lee

kail
kyeul
kathsimnikka/kassimnikka/

19. Kail kwa kyeul nalssi to Hankuk
kwa kathsimnikka?

autumn; fall
winter
is [it] the same?

Is the weather in the autumn and
winter the same as in Korea?

James

nun
nun i oko
palam
palam i pu(11)mnita

20. Ne, ~~tə~~kə kail nalssi nin kathsimnita.
Kiləna, kyeul e nin Hankuk pota
nun i mahhi oko, palam i manhi
pumnita.

snow
it snows and ('snow comes and..')
wind
it's windy; wind blows

Yes, the weather in the fall is about
the same, but in the winter it is
more snowy and windy than in Korea.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

5. (Hakkyo 111) na o- ('to come out (of school)') is more colloquial than colap-ha- 'to graduate'
8. eni hwesa and elma tongan in the statement sentences mean 'a (certain) company' and 'for some time' respectively. Some of the interrogative expressions in the sentences other than question sentences mean 'certain--' or 'some--': eni hakkyo 'some school', nuku 'somebody', eti 'some place', eni nal 'one-day' or 'someday', ence 'sometime', myech pən 'several times', myechil tongan 'for some days', etc. (See Grammar Note 4b, Unit 10.)
10. Kkok 'exactly', 'just', 'without fail' is an adverb which occurs either before another adverbial expression or before an inflected expression. When it occurs before another adverbial expression kkok means 'exactly' or 'just'; before an inflected expression it means 'without fail'. Compare the following:
- GROUP 1 'exactly'
- | | |
|---|--|
| <u>Kkok han-si e ttenakessimnita.</u> | 'I will leave <u>at 1 o'clock sharp.</u>
('I will leave <u>exactly at 1 o'clock.</u>) |
| <u>Kkok kiləhke hasipsiyo.</u> | 'Do [it] <u>exactly like that.</u>
('Do <u>exactly so.</u>) |
| Na nin <u>kkok han tal tongan</u> Hankuke
111 <u>pəwəssimnita.</u> | 'I have studied Korean <u>just (for)</u>
<u>a month.</u> |
- GROUP 2 'without fail'
- | | |
|--|--|
| Onil pam e <u>kkok tola osipsiyo.</u> | 'Be <u>sure to come back tonight.</u>
('Come back tonight <u>without fail.</u>) |
| K1 11 11 <u>kkok kkith-nəkessimnita.</u> | 'I <u>will finish</u> the work <u>without fail.</u> |
| <u>Kkok yumyeng-han salam i twee ya</u>
<u>hamnita.</u> | '[You] <u>have to become</u> a famous
man <u>by all means.</u> |
15. Kihu 'weather', 'climate' and nalssi are synonymous.
16. Səngkak is a noun which means 'thought' or 'idea'. Səngkak-ha- is a transitive verb. Thus, N + 11/111 + səngkak-ha- means 'to think of N'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. hu (or taim) 'after', 'the later time', 'next'

Hu occurred previously as a noun. Hu e 'later', 'afterward', 'at a later time'; ki hu e 'after that'; a point in time + hu e 'after' + the point in time'; a period of time + hu e 'the period of time + later', also occurred as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -n/in hu e, (i.e. the inflected form of an action verb ending in -n/in plus hu + e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'after having done so-and-so' or 'after doing so-and-so'. Hu and taim are synonymous and are interchangeable in all the above phrase constructions. Examples:

Təhak il coləp-han hu e, əni hwesa e
kinmu-həssimnita.

'After I graduated from college, I
worked with a business firm.'

Kuntə esə na on hu e, təhakwən kongpu
lil sicak-həssimnita.

'After [I] got out of the Army, [I]
began my graduate studies.'

Ki hwesa lil kimantun hu e, wekyokwan
sihəm il pwassə yo.

'I took the foreign service exam-
ination after I had quit the
company.'

Tul ccə ai lil nahin hu e, sə cip il
sassimnita.

'After the second child was born,
[we] bought a new house.'

Hankuk mal il pəun hu e, Səul e kalyəko
hamnita.

'I intend to go to Korea after I
(have) studied Korean.'

2. cən 'before' 'the previous time'

Cən is a noun. Cən e 'previously', ki cən e 'before that', a point in time + cən e 'before + the point in time', a period of time + cən e 'the period of time + ago' occurred previously as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -ki cən e (i.e. the ki form + cən e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'before doing so-and-so' or 'before [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

Hankuk e oki cən e, Tong Kulapha
lil yəhəng-həssə yo.

'Before [I] came to Korea, [I]
travelled in East Europe.'

Sənsəng in Kukmusəng e tilə oki cən
e, mues il həssə yo?

'What did you do before you joined
the State Department?'

Nalssi ka chupki cən e, kyəul cunpi lil
hə ya hamnita.

'Before the weather gets cold, I
have to prepare for the winter.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Cə nin Nyuyok Cu esə nahassimnita. | I was born in New York State. |
| 2. Cə e hyəng nim in <u>Sikhako</u> esə nahassimnita. | My older brother was born in Chicago. |
| 3. Cə e anə nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə nahassimnita. | My wife was born in Europe. |
| 4. Cə e tongsəng in <u>Puk-Han</u> esə nahassimnita. | My younger brother was born in North Korea. |
| 5. Cə e ənni nin <u>Inchən</u> esə nahassimnita. | My older sister was born in Inchon. |
| 6. Cə e oppa nin <u>Wəsingthon Cu</u> esə nahassimnita. | My older borther was born in Washington State. |
| 7. <u>Uli khin atil</u> in <u>pyəngwən</u> esə nahassimnita. | Our oldest son was born in the hospital. |
| 8. Cə e nui tongsəng in <u>wekuk</u> esə nahassimnita. | My younger sister was born abroad. |
| *9. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə nahassimnita. | My daughter was born abroad. |
| 10. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>calassimnita</u> . | My daughter grew up abroad. |
| 11. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>salassimnita</u> . | My daughter has lived abroad. |
| 12. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>hakkyo e tanyəssimnita</u> . | My daughter went to school abroad. |
| *13. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>khəssimnita</u> . | My daughter grew up abroad. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cə nin Nyuyok esə naha sə kəki esə calassimnita. | I was born in New York and grew up there. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Inchən</u> esə naha sə <u>Seul</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in Inchon and grew up in Seoul. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Puk-Han</u> esə naha sə <u>Nam-Han</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in North Korea and grew up in South Korea. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə naha sə <u>Mikuk</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in Europe and grew up in the United States. |
| *5. Cə nin <u>Sikhako</u> esə naha sə <u>Tongpu</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in Chicago and grew up in the East. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| *6. Cə nin <u>Tongpu</u> esə naha sə <u>Səpu</u> esə
calassimnita. | I was born in the East and grew up
in the West. |
| *7. Cə nin <u>Səpu</u> esə naha sə <u>Nampu</u> esə
calassimnita. | I was born in the West and grew up
in the South. |
| *8. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Nampu</u> esə naha sə
<u>Nammi</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in the Southern part of
the U.S. and grew up in South
America. |
| *9. Cə nin <u>Hawai</u> esə naha sə (Mikuk)
<u>pontho</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in Hawaii and grew up
on the mainland (of the U.S.). |
| *10. Cə nin <u>səm</u> esə naha sə <u>yukci</u> esə
calassimnita. | I was born on an island and grew
up on the mainland. |
| *11. Cə nin <u>sikol</u> esə naha sə <u>tosi</u> esə
calassimnita. | I was born in a village and grew
up in the city. |
| *12. Cə nin <u>chon</u> esə naha sə <u>tohweci</u>
esə calassimnita. | I was born in a village and grew
up in a metropolitan area. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tanyessimnita. | [I] went to college in New York
State. |
| 2. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>na wassimnita</u> . | I finished college in New York State. |
| 3. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>tile</u>
<u>kassimnita</u> . | I was admitted to ('entered')
college in New York State. |
| 4. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>coləp-</u>
<u>hæssimnita</u> . | I graduated from college in New
York State. |
| 5. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>sicak-</u>
<u>hæssimnita</u> . | I began college in New York State. |
| 6. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>kkith-</u>
<u>machiæssimnita</u> . | I finished college in New York State. |
| 7. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>taniko</u>
<u>siphæssimnita</u> . | I wanted to attend college in New
York State. |
| 8. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>tanilyəko</u>
<u>hæssimnita</u> . | I intended to go to college in New
York State. |
| 9. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>tanici</u>
<u>mot hæssimnita</u> . | I could not attend college in New
York State. |
| 10. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə <u>tanie ya</u>
<u>hæssimnita</u> . | I had to attend college in New York
State. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
hwesa esə il-hæssimnita. | I worked for a company after
graduating from school. |
| 2. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>Kukmusəng e tilə wassimnita.</u> | I joined the State Department after
graduating from school. |
| 3. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>wekyokwan i twayəssimnita.</u> | I joined the foreign service after
graduating from school. |
| 4. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>Kulapha lil yehəng-hæssimnita.</u> | I travelled in Europe after
graduating from school. |
| 5. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>kyəlhon-hæssimnita.</u> | I got married after graduating from
school. |
| 6. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>kuntə e tilə kalyəko hæssimnita.</u> | I intended to join the (military)
service after graduating from school. |
| 7. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>chəs ccə ai lil nahassimnita.</u> | We had our first child after I
graduated from school. |
| 8. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>cəngpu e kinmu-hæssimnita.</u> | I worked for the government after
graduating from school. |
| 9. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
<u>kiləhke səngkak-hæssimnita.</u> | I thought so after I graduated from
school. |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Mikuk Kongpowən e tilə on ci
sam nyən tweəssimnita. | It's been three years since I joined
USIS. |
| 2. <u>I il (il) sicak-han ci</u> sam nyən
tweəssimnita. | It's been three years since I began
this job. |
| 3. <u>Kyəlhon-han ci</u> sam nyən tweəssimnita. | I have been married for three years. |
| 4. <u>Wekyokwan i twen ci</u> sam nyən
tweəssimnita. | It's been three years since I joined
the foreign service. |
| 5. <u>I hwesa esə il-han ci</u> sam nyən
tweəssimnita. | I have worked at this company for
three years now. |
| 6. <u>Təhak il coləp-han ci</u> sam nyən
tweəssimnita. | It's been three years since I
graduated from college. |
| 7. <u>Hankuk esə san ci</u> sam nyən
tweəssimnita. | I have lived in Korea for three
years now. |

8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il an ci sam nyən
tweəssimnita.

I have known Mr. James for three
years now.

9. Anə lil cheim mannan ci sam nyən
tweəssimnita.

It's been three years since I first
met my wife.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Səul e oki cən e, Kulapha esə
il-həssimnita.

Before I came to Seoul I worked in
Europe.

2. Səul e oki cən e, təhak il
na wassimnita.

I graduated from college before I
came to Seoul.

3. Səul e oki cən e, Hankuk mal il
pəwəssimnita.

I studied Korean before I came to
Seoul.

4. Səul e oki cən e, Kukmusəng e
kinmu-həssimnita.

I worked at the State Department
before I came to Seoul.

5. Səul e oki cən e, kyəlhon-həssimnita.

I got married before I came to Seoul.

6. Səul e oki cən e, kuntə esə na
wassimnita.

I got out of the army before I came
to Seoul.

7. Səul e oki cən e, Ilpon il
kukyəng-həssimnita.

I went sightseeing in Japan before
I came to Seoul.

8. Səul e oki cən e, uli ai ka
nahəssimnita.

Our child was born before we came
to Seoul.

9. Səul e oki cən e, apəci ka tola
kasiəssimnita.

My father passed away before I came
to Seoul.

10. Səul e oki cən e, yələ nala lil
yəhəng-həssimnita.

I travelled in many countries before
I came to Seoul.

*11. Səul e oki cən e, ai ka cukəssimnita.

[Our] child died before [we] came to
Seoul.

G. Combination Drill

Tutor: Təhak il coləp-həssimnita.
ənı hwesa esə il-həssimnita.

'[I] graduated from college. [I]
worked for a (certain) company.'

Student: Təhak il coləp-han hu e,
ənı hwesa esə il-həssimnita.

'[I] worked for a company after
graduating from college.'

1. Wekyokwan i tweəssimnita. Yələ
nala esə salessimnita.

Wekyokwan i twen hu e, yələ nala
esə salessimnita.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2. Cəngpu e tilə wassimnita. Sam
nyən tweəssimnita. | Cəngpu e tilə on hu e, sam nyən
tweəssimnita. |
| 3. Kuntə esə na wassimnita. Təhak
il sicak-həssimnita. | Kuntə esə na on hu e, təhak il
sicak-həssimnita. |
| 4. Anə ka ai lil nahassimnita.
Mom i aphəssimnita. | Anə ka ai lil nahin hu e, mom i
aphəssimnita. |
| 5. Na nin kyəlhon-həssimnita.
Səul e kassimnita. | Na nin kyəlhon-han hu e, Səul e
kassimnita. |
| 6. I nyən tongan əni hwesa esə
il-həssimnita. Cəngpu e tilə
wassimnita. | I nyən tongan əni hwesa esə il-han
hu e, cəngpu e tilə wassimnita. |
| 7. Apəci ka tola kasiəssimnita.
əmeni ka hyəng nim tək e samnita. | Apəci ka tola kasin hu e, əmeni ka
hyəng nim tək e samnita. |
| 8. Pihəngki ka ttənəssimnita.
Kicha ka tahəssimnita. | Pihəngki ka ttənan hu e, kicha ka
tahəssimnita. |
| 9. Kī yəca lil han pən pwəssimnita.
Kī yəca lil cohəhəssimnita. | Kī yəca lil han pən pən hu e, kī
yəca lil cohəhəssimnita. |
| 10. Kī yəca lil mannəssimnita.
Il nyən hu e kyəlhon-həssimnita. | Kī yəca lil mannə hu e, il nyən hu
e kyəlhon-həssimnita. |

H. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo lil coləp-hako kuntə
e kakesə yo.

Student: Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,
kuntə e kakesə yo.

'[I]'ll graduate from school and go
to the army.'

'After graduating from college
[I]'ll go to the army.'

- Hankuk mal il mənə pəuko,
Hankuk e kalyəko hə yo.
- Cəsim il məkko, Mikuk Təsakwan
e tillikəsə yo.
- Wekuk esə manhi kukyəng-hako,
nənyən cəim e tola okəsə yo.
- Uphyenkuk esə phyənci lil puchiko,
kot tapang ilo okəsə yo.
- Wekyokwan i tweko, kyəlhon-həkəsə
yo.

- Hankuk mal il mənə pəun hu e,
Hankuk e kalyəko hə yo.
- Cəsim il məkin hu e, Mikuk Təsakwan
e tillikəsə yo.
- Wekuk esə manhi kukyəng-han hu e,
nənyən cəim e tola okəsə yo.
- Uphyenkuk esə phyənci lil puchin
hu e, kot tapang ilo okəsə yo.
- Wekyokwan i twen hu e, kyəlhon-
həkəsə yo.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. Catongcha lil phalko, wekuk ilo
ttenakesse yo. | Catongcha lil phan hu e, wekuk ilo
ttenakesse yo. |
| 7. Chinku eke i chæk il cuko, talin
chæk il patkessse yo. | Chinku eke i chæk il cun hu e, talin
chæk il patkessse yo. |
| 8. Sëul lo isa-hako, cip il sakesse yo. | Sëul lo isa-han hu e, cip il sakesse
yo. |
| 9. I il il kkith-næko, talin il il
sicak-hakesse yo. | I il il kkith-næn hu e, talin il il
sicak-hakesse yo. |
| 10. Com tē sǝngkak-hako, mal-hakesse yo. | Com tē sǝngkak-han hu e, mal-hakesse
yo. |

I. Grammar Drill (Use kkok in the proper place.)

Tutor: Sam nyen tweæssimnita.

'It has been three years.'

Student: Kkok sam nyen tweæssimnita.

'It has been exactly three years.'

1. Cikim han-si imnita.

Cikim kkok han-si imnita.

2. Cē nin kimnyen e sēlhın sal imnita.

Cē nin kimnyen e kkok sēlhın sal
imnita.

3. Onil pam e uli cip e osipsiyo.

Onil pam e uli cip e kkok osipsiyo.

4. Kim Sǝnsǝng eke kilǝhke
mal-hasipsiyo.Kim Sǝnsǝng eke kkok kilǝhke
mal-hasipsiyo.

5. Manhi capsusipsiyo.

Kkok manhi capsusipsiyo.

6. Pak Sǝnsǝng eke mulǝ posipsiyo.

Pak Sǝnsǝng eke kkok mulǝ posipsiyo.

7. I chæk i cohsimnita.

I chæk i kkok cohsimnita.

8. Han-Yǝng sacen in sakessimnita.

Han-Yǝng sacen in kkok sakessimnita.

9. Nǝil kkaci tola okessimnita.

Nǝil kkaci kkok tola okessimnita.

10. Kī il il kkith-næ ya hamnita.

Kī il il kkok kkith-næ ya hamnita.

11. Khǝphi lil masiko siphsimnita.

Khǝphi lil kkok masiko siphsimnita.

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Han tal cēn e Sēul e wassimnita.

'I came to Seoul one month ago.'

Student: Sēul e on ci, han tal
tweæssimnita.'It's been one month since I came
to Seoul.'1. Sam nyen cēn e tǝhakkyo lil
colǝp-hæssimnita.Tǝhakkyo lil colǝp-han ci, sam nyen
tweæssimnita.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. O nyen cən e kyelhon-hæssimnita. | Kyelhon-han ci, o nyen tweæssimnita. |
| 3. Tu tal cən e Kim Sənsəng i yəki
lil ttənassimnita. | Kim Sənsəng i yəki lil ttənən ci,
tu tal tweæssimnita. |
| 4. Sam-sip pun cən e hakkyo e
wassimnita. | Hakkyo e on ci, sam-sip pun
tweæssimnita. |
| 5. Il nyen cən e Ceimsi Sənsəng il
alæssimnita. | Ceimsi Sənsəng il an ci, il nyen
tweæssimnita. |
| 6. Ne cuil cən e Hankuk mal kongpu
lil sicak-hæssimnita. | Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-han ci,
ne cuil tweæssimnita. |
| 7. Tassə cən e Mikuk e tahassimnita. | Mikuk e tahn ci, tassə tweæssimnita. |
| 8. Yelhil cən e Seul lo isa-hæssimnita. | Seul lo isa-han ci, yelhil
tweæssimnita. |
| 9. Myəch tal cən e i sikye lil
sassimnita. | I sikye lil san ci, myəch tal
tweæssimnita. |
| 10. Yələ hə cən e Mikuk il
ttənassimnita. | Mikuk il ttənən ci, yələ hə
tweæssimnita. |

K. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tutor: ənce Hankuk e wassimnikka?
/tasəs tal/ | 'When did you come to Korea?'
/five months/ |
| Student: Hankuk e on ci, tasəs tal
tweæssimnita. | 'I have been in Korea for five
months.' ('It's been five months
since I came to Korea.') |
| 1. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)
sicak-hæssimnikka? /ne cuil/ | Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) sicak-han ci
ne cuil tweæssimnita. |
| 2. ənce kyelhon-hæssimnikka?
/sam nyen/ | Kyelhon-han ci, sam nyen tweæssimnita. |
| 3. ənce wekyokwan i tweæssimnikka?
/il nyen pan/ | Wekyokwan i twen ci, il nyen pan
tweæssimnita. |
| 4. ənce catongcha lil sassimnikka?
/myəchil/ | Catongcha lil san ci, myəchil
tweæssimnita. |
| 5. ənce təhak il coləp-hæssimnikka?
/sa nyen ccim/ | Təhak il coləp-han ci, sa nyen
ccim tweæssimnita. |
| 6. ənce hyəng nim ekəsə phyənci
lil patæssimnikka? /il cuil/ | (Hyəng nim ekəsə) phyənci lil
patın ci, il cuil tweæssimnita. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. ənce halapəci ka tola kasiəssimnikka?
/olæ/ | Halapəci ka tola kasin ci, olæ
tweəssimnita. |
| 8. ənce Səul lo isa-həssimnikka?
/yələ hæ/ | Səul lo isa-han ci, yələ hæ
tweəssimnita. |
| 9. ənce puthə ki yəca lil
aləssimnikka? /myəch nyən/ | Ki yəca lil an ci, myəch nyən
tweəssimnita. |
| 10. ənce hakkyo lil kimantuəssimnikka?
/myəch tal/ | Hakkyo lil kimantun ci, myəch tal
tweəssimnita. |

L. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tutor: Hankuk mal il pəun ci, əlma
na tweəsse yo? | 'How long have you studied Korean
(by now)?' |
| Student: Hankuk mal il pəun ci,
tu tal tweəssimnita. | 'I have studied Korean two months.' |

1. Təhakkyo lil na on ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
2. Wekyokwan i twen ci, myəch nyən ina tweəsse yo?
3. Kyəlhon-han ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
4. Kohyang il ttenan ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
5. Puin kwa mannan ci, myəch hæ na tweəsse yo?
6. Təhak il coləp-han ci, myəch nyən ina tweəsse yo?
7. Cəngpu il e tilə on ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
8. Yəki e san ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
9. Kuntə lil kkith-machin ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?
10. Mikuk Təsakwan e kinmu-han ci, əlma na tweəsse yo?

M. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on the fact.)

1. Sənsəng in kohyang i eti (i)ci yo?
2. Mikuk ənı cu esə osyessci yo?
3. Sənsəng in eti esə nahassci yo?
4. Sənsəng in eti esə calassci yo?
5. Təhak in musin təhak il taniəssci yo?
6. Təhak in ənce na wassci yo?
7. Koting hakkyo nin myəch sal e tilə kassci yo?
8. Kacok in motu myəch salam ina twesici yo?

9. Ai til in musin hakkyo e tanici yo?
 10. Khan ai nin myeoch sal ici yo?

N. Grammar Drill (Use acik in the proper place.)

Tutor: Sikye ka ppalimnita.

'The watch is fast.'

Student: Sikye ka acik ppalimnita.

'The watch is still fast.'

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hankuk mal pæuki ka ælyæpsimnita. | Hankuk mal pæuki ka acik ælyæpsimnita. |
| 2. Ce tongsæng in honca imnita. | Ce tongsæng in acik honca imnita. |
| 3. Kim Sænsæng i samusil esæ il-hako
issimnita. | Kim Sænsæng i acik samusil esæ
il-hako issimnita. |
| 4. Na nin cæ yæca e ilim il molimnita. | Na nin cæ yæca e ilim il acik
molimnita. |
| 5. Kikcang e salam i manhsimnita. | Kikcang e acik salam i manhsimnita. |
| 6. Pak Sænsæng in kimchi lil
cohahamnita. | Pak Sænsæng in acik kimchi lil
cohahamnita. |
| 7. Cæ nin cohin il il chacko
issimnita. | Cæ nin acik cohin il il chacko
issimnita. |
| 8. Uli hwesa esæ nin yosæ to
pappimnita. | Uli hwesa esæ nin yosæ to acik
pappimnita. |
| 9. Apæci nin nai ka killi manhci
anhsimnita. | Apæci nin nai ka acik killi manhci
anhsimnita. |
| 10. Cæ e nunim in cikim to yeppimnita. | Cæ e nunim in cikim to acik yeppimnita. |

O. Response Drill (Answer the question using acik.)

Tutor: Kulapha e ka pon il i issimnikka?

'Have you ever been in Europe?'

Student: Aniyo, acik (ka pon il i)
æpsimnita.

'No, not yet.'

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cæmsim il capsusyæssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik mækei anhæssimnita. |
| 2. Cip e kal sikan i tweæssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik tweeci anhæssimnita. |
| 3. Nui tongsæng in kyælhon-hæssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kyælhon-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 4. Tongsæng in tæhak il
colæp-hæssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik colæp-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 5. Samu sikan i kkith-nassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kkith-naci anhæssimnita. |
| 6. Sæul kanin kicha ka ttænassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik ttænaci anhæssimnita. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. Yeltu-si ppesi ka pelsse
tahassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik tahci anheessimnita. |
| 8. Kulapha lil yehang-han il i
issimnikka? | Aniyo, acik yehang-han il i
epsimnita. |
| 9. Seul Cungang Kongwan il
kukyeng-heessimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kukyeng-haci anheessimnita. |
| 10. Se il il chacesimnikka? | Aniyo, acik chacci anheessimnita. |

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e oki cen e, eti ese
il-hesse yo? /Ilpon/

Student: Hankuk e oki cen e, Ilpon
ese il-heessimnita.

'Where did you work before you came
to Korea? /Japan/

'I worked in Japan before I came to
Korea.'

1. Kyelhon-haki cen e nuku e cip ese
salasse yo? /pumo nim cip/
2. Kuntae e kaki cen e, mues il
hesse yo? /taehak/
3. Cemsim il mekki cen e, mues il
masil kka yo? /maekcu/
4. Cikim puin il alki cen e, nuku lil
alasse yo? /talin yeca/
5. Wekyokwan i tweki cen e, mues i
tweko siphesse yo? /taehak kyosu/
6. Seul Taehakkyo e tile kaki cen e,
eni hakkyo e taniesse yo?
/koting hakkyo/
7. Phyenci lil puchiki cen e, mues
il sasse yo? /uphyo/

Kyelhon-haki cen e, pumo nim cip ese
salassimnita.

Kuntae e kaki cen e, taehak e
taniessimnita.

Cemsim il mekki cen e, maekcu lil
masipsita.

Cikim anae lil alki cen e, talin
yeca lil alessimnita.

Wekyokwan i tweki cen e, taehak kyosu
ka tweko siphessimnita.

Seul Taehakkyo e tile kaki cen e,
koting hakkyo e taniessimnita.

Phyenci lil puchiki cen e, uphyo
lil sassimnita.

Q. Response Drill (Give a negative answer using /kilohke/.)

Tutor: Nai ka manhsimnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kilohke manhci
anhe yo.

'Is [he] old?'

'No, not so old.'

1. Nai ka ceksimnikka?

Aniyo, kilohke cekci anhe yo.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 2. Nal mata pappimnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke pappici anhe yo. |
| 3. Səul cip kaps i pissamnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke pissaci anhe yo. |
| 4. K1 yəca l1l cohahamnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke cohahaci anhe yo. |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə l1l cal
hamnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke cal haci anhe yo. |
| 6. Catongcha ka philyo-hamnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke philyo-haci anhe yo. |
| 7. Məli ka aphimnikka? | Aniyo, kiləhke aphici anhe yo. |

EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story about Mr. James to Pak Sənsəng in Korean:

Mr. James' home is in Chicago but he was born in New York State and grew up there. Until he finished high school he lived in his home town with his parents and brothers and sisters, but he went to college in Boston, Massachusetts. He enjoyed his college life/səngħwal/ very much. After he graduated from the college he worked for a while with a business firm but his work was not very enjoyable. He wanted to become a diplomat, so he took examinations/sihəm 1l pwassimnita/. After that, he was able to join the foreign service right away. It was six years ago. For the first four years he worked in two countries in Europe. While he was in Europe, he could travel in several countries, and saw many interesting places. Since then, Mr. James has been in Korea almost two years now. The weather in Europe is more or less similar to that of Korea. The spring climate in Europe is warm but it rains more than in Korea. The autumn weather there is the same as that of Korea, but in winter it is more snowy and windy. Before he came to Korea, he didn't know much about Korea and the Korean people, but he has been enjoying his work here. He made many Korean friends and learned many Korean customs/phungsok/.

B. Conduct short conversations so that the following expressions are included in the second partner's responses.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. əni hwesa | 'a (certain company)' |
| 2. əlma tongan | 'for some time' |
| 3. kkok | 'without fail', 'exactly',
'at all cost' |
| 4. Hankuk e { təshə } sə
{ kwanhə } | 'about Korea' |
| 5. təhak e taninin tongan | 'while [I was] attending college' |

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 6. Səul e oki cən e | 'before [I] came to Seoul' |
| 7. wekyokwan i twen hu e | 'since [I] joined the foreign service' |

C. Find out from Brown Sənsəŋg the following information:

1. where he was born.
2. where he grew up.
3. what schools he went to.
4. when he finished college.
5. where he worked first after he graduated from college.
6. why he quit the first job.
7. how long he has been married.
8. how many years he has been with the government.
9. what country he served in before he came to Seoul.
10. how many countries he has travelled in so far.

D. Pak Sənsəŋg wants to know where you were born and grew up; tell him that you were born at (A) and grew up at (B) :

- | (A) | (B) |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. farm/nongcang/ | city |
| 2. island | mainland |
| 3. country (<u>or</u> village) | metropolitan area |
| 4. the East | the South |
| 5. the Mid-west | the West |
| 6. North America | South America |
| 7. overseas | home country/ponkuk/ |
| 8. North Korea | South Korea |

E. Prepare a ten-minute narrative autobiography of yourself based on Units 14 and 15 for a fluency drill and tell it to the class, giving such information as your hometown, your schools, some of your experiences, your parents, brothers and sisters, relatives, your immediate family members, their ages, your immediate plans, etc.

제 16 과 전화

(대화 A)

전화

전화 번호

찾는 데

1. 제임스 : 이 선생의 전화 번호를 찾는 데 찾을 수 (가) 없습니다.

거읍니다

전화(를) 거겠읍니다

2. 김 : 전화를 거려고 하십니까?

전화 거 이

3. 제임스 : 예, 좀 전화 거 일이 있습니다.

전화 번호책

4. 김 : 전화 번호책에 없습니까?

보읍니다

보이지 않습니다

혹, 혹시

5. 제임스 : 보이지 않습니다. 혹시 아세요?

잠간만

수첩

적읍니다

적어 두 있습니다

UNIT 16. Telephoning

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AJames

- cenhwa
 cenhwa penho
 chachin te/channinte/
 1. I Sənsəŋg e cenhwa penho lil
 chachin te, chacil su (ka)
 əpsimnita.

telephone
 telephone number
 [I]'m looking for [it] and...
 I'm looking for Mr. Lee's telephone
 number but I cannot find it.

Kim

- kə(11)mnita
 cenhwa (lil) kəlkəssimnita
 2. Cenhwa kə(1)lyəko hasimnikka?

('[I] hang [it]')
 [I]'ll make a telephone call
 Are you going to make a phone call?

James

- cenhwa kəl il
 3. Ne, com cenhwa kəl il i issimnita.

something to call for
 Yes, I have something to ask him
 about.

Kim

- cenhwa penho chæk
 4. Cenhwa penho chæk e əpsimnikka?

telephone book
 Can't you find it in the telephone
 book? ('Isn't it in the telephone
 book?')

James

- poimnita
 poici anhsimnita
 hok }
 hoksi }
 5. Poici anhsimnita. Hoksi ase yo?

I see [it] ('it is seen');
 [it] is visible
 I can't see [it]; [it] is not
 visible
 by any chance?
 I can't find it. Do you happen to
 know it?

6. 김 : 잠깐만 기다리세요. 내 수첩에 적어
두었습니다.

다행입니다, 다행합니다
7. 제임스 : 아, 다행입니다. 좀 찾아 주십시오.

8. 김 : 예, 여기 이 선생의 회사 번호만 있습니다.

몇 번
9. 제임스 : 몇 번이지요?

공, 영
10. 김 : 삼의 육 오 공 삼입니다.

(대화 B)

-전화기에서-

11. S : 여보세요.

12. 제임스 : 여보세요. 반도 회사입니까?

예?

드립니다

안 드립니다

크게

13. S : 예? 잘 안 드립니다. 좀 더 크게 말씀
해 주십시오.

Kim

camkan man

just a while; only a short time

suchəp

address book

næ suchəp

my address book

cəksimnita

[I] write [it] down

cəke tuəssimnita

[I] wrote [it] down (for future use)

6. Camkan man kitalise yo. Næ suchəp
e cəke tuəssimnita.

Just a minute. I wrote it down in
my address book.

James

tahəng imnita }
tahəng-hamnita }

[it] is fortunate

7. A, tahəng imnita. Com chace
cusipsiyo.

Oh, that's lucky. Please look it
up for me.

Kim

8. Ne, yəki I Sənsəng (e) hwesa
penho man issimnita.

I have only his office number, here.

James

myəch pən/myəppən/

what number

9. Myəch pən ici yo?

What is it? ('What number is it?')

Kim

kong }
yəng }

zero

10. Sam e yuk o kong sam imnita.

It is 3-6503.

Dialogue B
(..on the telephone..)

S

11. Yəpose yo.

Hello.

James

12. Yəpose yo. Panto Hwesa imnikka?

Hello, is this the Bando Company?

14. 제임스 : 아, 거기 반도 회사이지요?

15. S : 예, 그렇습니다.

바깥니다

바꿔 주십시오

16. 제임스 : 거기에 이 기수 선생 계시면 좀 바꿔 주십시오.

17. S : 거기는 어메(이)시지요?

18. 제임스 : 미국 대사관의 제임스입니다.

계시는지 보겠습니다

름이 계시는지 보겠습니다

19. S : 잠깐만 계십시오. 지금 림이 계시는지 보겠습니다.

20. 제임스 : 고맙습니다.

(대화 C)

-전화기에서-

21. 교환수 : 한국 은행입니다.

외환과

부탁

부탁합니다

S

- ne? (I beg your pardon.)
 tillimnita I hear [it] ('[it] is heard');
 [it] is audible
 an tillimnita I can't hear [you]; [it] is not
 audible
 khike loudly; to be big
13. Ne? Cal an tillimnita. Com te I beg your pardon! I can't hear
 khike malssim-hæ cusipsiyo. you very well. Please speak a
 little louder.

James

14. A, kēki Panto Hwesa ici yo? Oh, isn't this the Bando Company?

S

15. Ne, kilēhsimnita. Yes, it is.

James

- pakkumnita [I] exchange; [I] change
 pakkwæ cusipsiyo please let me talk to..
 ('please change it')
16. Kēki e Lee Kisu Sēnsang kyesimyen May I talk to Mr. Kisu Lee, please?
 com pakkwæ cusipsiyo. ('If Mr. Kisu Kim is there, please
 change it.')

S

17. Kēki nin eti (i)sici yo? May I ask who is calling, please?
 ('Where is that place?')

James

18. Mikuk Tæsakwan e Ceimsi imnita. This is James at the American Embassy.

S

- kyesinin ci pokessimnita I'll see if [he] is [in]
 thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita I'll see if [he] is free
19. Camkan man kyesipsiyo. Cikim Wait just a moment, please. I'll
 thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita. see if he's free now.

James

20. Komapsimnita. Thank you.

22. 이 : 외환과의 최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁드립니다.

통화

통화중

통화중입니다

돌립니다

돌려 드리겠습니다

23. 교환수 : 아, 지금 통화중인데요. 잠깐 기다리세요.
곧, 돌려 드리겠습니다. 예, 말씀 하십시오.

24. 이 : 여보세요. 최 준 선생 계십니까?

자리

25. 비서 : 지금 자리에 안 계시는데요. 점심에 나가셨습니까.

들어 옵니다

26. 이 : 몇 시에 들어 올지 아십니까?

돌아 옵니다

전합니다

전할 말씀

27. 비서 : 아마, 곧 돌아 올 것입니다. 전할 말씀이 있으시는지요?

28. 이 : 아니요, 괜찮습니다. 이따 다시 걸겠습니다.

Dialogue C
(..on the telephone..)

Kyohwansu('Operator')

21. Hankuk inhæng imnita. Bank of Korea.

Lee

- | | |
|--|--|
| Wehwan Kwa
puthak
puthak-hamnita | Foreign Currency Department
a favor to ask
('I ask you for a favor') |
|--|--|
22. Wehwan Kwa e Chwe Sænsæng (eke) May I speak to Mr. Choe of the
 com puthak-hamnita. Foreign Currency Department?

Kyohwansu

- | | |
|--|---|
| thonghwa
thonghwa cung

thonghwa cung imnita
tollimnita
tollye tilikessimnita | ('telephone talk')
('in the middle of telephone talk')

line is busy
[I] rotate [it]; [I] switch [it]
I'll switch it for you |
|--|---|
23. A, cikim thonghwa cung in te yo. The line is busy now. Just a moment.
 Camkan kitalise yo. Kot tollye I'll connect you right away.
 tilikessimnita. Ne, malssim- O.K., go ahead, please.
 hasipsiyo.

Lee

24. Yæpose yo. Chwe Cun Sænsæng Hello, is Mr. Jhoon Choe there?
 kyesimnikka?

Pise

- | | |
|---|--|
| cali
25. Cikim cali e an kyesinin te yo.
Cæmsim e na kasyæssimnita. | seat
He is not in his office now. He
went out for lunch. |
|---|--|

Lee

- | | |
|---|--|
| tile omnita
26. Myæch-si e tile ol ci asimnikka? | [he] comes in
Do you know what time he will be
back? |
|---|--|

Pisə

tola omnita
cənhamnita
cənhal malssım

[he] comes back

[I] deliver

message to leave ('words to
deliver')

27. Ama, kot tola ol kəs imnita.

Cənhal malssım i ıssısın nı cı yo?

He will probably be back soon.

Would you like to leave a message
for him?

Lee

28. Aniyo, kwəncəhanhsımnita.

Itta tasi kəlkəssımnita.

No, that's all right, thank you.

I'll call later.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Kəl- is a transitive verb which occurs after a certain object, and has various meanings depending on the object: cənhwa lil kəl- 'to make a phone call' or 'to telephone'; os il kəl- 'to hang up clothes'; ssaum il kəl- 'to pick a quarrel' or 'to challenge (to someone)'; ton il kəl- 'to bet (money)' or 'to make a deposit'; səngmyəng il kəl- 'to risk life', etc.
5. Hok or hoksi 'by any chance', 'do [you] happen to...?' occurs as an adverb in question sentences or in conditional clauses. Poi- 'to be visible' or 'to be seen' is an intransitive verb, whereas po- 'to look at' is a transitive verb.
6. Camkan man ('only a short while') occurs as a time adverbial.
7. Tahəng imnita. ('[It] is a fortunate thing.') is a fixed expression which is used as the Korean equivalent of 'That's fortunate.'.
9. Myəch pən/myəppen/ means either 'what number?' or 'how many times?' in question sentences; 'several times' or '(on) several occasions' in other types of sentences.
13. Ne? which is pronounced with a sharp rising intonation means 'Beg your pardon!' or 'Pardon me!' when you didn't understand someone well; ne? with a prolonged mild rising intonation means 'Oh, is that right?' (Unit 18).
13. The inflected word khike 'loudly', 'to be big' occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression (See G. N. 3). Tilli- 'to be audible' or 'to be heard' is an intransitive verb, whereas tīt-~tīl- 'to listen to' or 'to hear' is a transitive verb.
22. Puthak is a noun which means 'a favor to ask'. (Sənsəng eke) puthak i issimnita. means 'I have a favor to ask of you.' Puthak-hamnita. is used to mean, among the more common English equivalents, 'Would you please do it?'; 'Please do it for me.'; 'Yes, please.'; 'Please take care of things.', etc. In telephoning, So-and-so eke com puthak-hamnita. is a fixed expression used something like 'May I speak to so-and-so?' or '(Mr.) so-and-so, please.'

28. Itta 'later' refers to 'the later time on the same day'.

Akka 'a little while ago' is its one-word antonym.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -n/in/nin te 'while...', 'such is the case', 'in view of the fact that...', 'and then...', 'but...'

Remember that the post-noun te 'place' preceded by an inflected modifier word of an action verb occurred previously in the nominal positions (See Note 7 on Basic Dialogues, Unit 12). The selection of -n, -in or -nin is the same as the present noun-modifier ending (Unit 5). Remember, however, -n/in/nin te, -n/in te and -l/il te should be distinguished. Examples:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) il-hanin te } | 'the place where [I] work' |
| meknin te } | 'the eating place' |
| (b) kan te } | 'the place where [I] went' |
| calan te } | 'the place where [I] grew up' |
| (c) tlllll te } | 'the place to stop by' |
| sal te } | 'the place where [I] shall live' |

Note that the construction -n/in/nin te which may be followed by a pause may also occur before another inflected expression to signify some further explanation or remark in relation to or on the basis of the first action or description follows in the following inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -nin form of which inflected forms are the same in shapes for both action and description verbs: -(a,e)ssnin te, for the past; -kessnin te, for the future. Observe the following examples:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Hankuk mal il pæunin te, sikan i manhi
kellimnita. | { 'When (or In) studying Korean it
takes a lot of time.'
'[I]'m studying Korean and it takes
a lot of time.' |
| Catongcha lll sanin te, ton i philyo-
hamnita. | 'When buying a car [you] need money.' |
| I Sensæng il chac(1)nin te, chacil su
(ka) æpsimnita. | '[I]'m looking for Mr. Lee, but [I]
cannot find him.' |
| Cæ nin pæ ka kophin te, sensæng in
pæ ka kophici anhe yo? | 'I am hungry; are you not?' |

Ce sachon in coongsa in te, ton il manhi peŕe yo.	'My cousin is a pilot, and he makes (<u>earns</u>) a lot of money?'
Cen e Ilpon mal il pŕwessnin te, cikim in ta icessimnita.	'I studied Japanese before but I have forgotten [it] all now.'
Ki yŕca ka hakkyo ttŕe phŕk yeppessnin te, acik to kilŕhci yo?	'She was very pretty in her school days; she must be still pretty, isn't she?'
Nŕil nalssi ka cohkessnin te, ŕti e kal kka yo?	'(It seems) the weather will be nice tomorrow; shall we go some- place?'

-n/in/nin te + yo may occur to end a sentence which, in this case, is a kind of informal polite statement sentence. The sentence final -n/in/nin te yo occurs when the speaker shows slight surprise or hesitation.

Cham, cŕ pihŕngki ka ppalin te yo.	'O, that airplane is really fast.'
Ceimsi Sŕnsŕng i Hankuk mal il cal hanin te yo.	'Mr. James speaks good Korean.'
Aniyo, cal molikessnin te yo.	'No, I don't know [it] well.'

2. Infinitive + {tu- noh-}

As an independant verb, tu- or its synonym noh- means 'to put [something] (somewhere)' or 'to place [something] (somewhere)'.

However, tu- (or noh-) preceded by the infinitive of an action verb also occurs as an auxiliary verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + tu- which literally means something like 'does so-and-so and put [it] somewhere' is usually used to denote 'does so-and-so for future use or benefit' or 'does so-and-so in advance', or 'does so-and-so for the time being'. Compare the following pairs:

a. Han-Yŕng sacen il sassimnita.	'I bought a Korean-English dictionary.'
Han-Yŕng sacen il sa tuessimnita.	'I have bought a Korean-English dictionary (for future use).'
b. Nŕil in hal il i manhkessini kka, onil i il il ta kkith-nŕkessimnita.	'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish all this work today.'
Nŕil in hal il i manhkessini kka, onil i il il ta kkith-nŕ tukessimnita.	'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish up all this work today (in advance).'
c. Sukce lil hŕ ya hamnita.	'[I] have to do homework.'
Sukce lil hŕ tue ya hamnita.	'[I] have to do homework now {in advance. {(for some reason).

d. Kim Cangkun e cenhwa penho lil ale
pwassimnikka?

'Did you find out General Kim's
telephone number?'

Kim Cangkun e cenhwa penho lil ale
pwa tuæssimnikka?

'Have you found out General Kim's
telephone number (for future use
or in case)?'

3. -ke

The inflected form ending in -ke (or simply the -ke form) occurs before and modifies another inflected expression. Since the -ke form occurs as an adverbial, the ending -ke is called the Adverbializing Ending or simply the Adverbializer. The -ke form occurs in the following constructions:

- (a) A description verb inflected in -ke occurs as a modifier before another inflected expression of an action verb.

Alimtapke calamnita.

'[It] is growing beautifully.'

Cohke mal-hæsse yo.

'[He] spoke well of [you].'
'[He] spoke nicely.'

Kiløhke haci masipsiyo.

'Don't do it that way.'

Pissake sassimnita.

'I paid much for it.' ('I bought
[it] to be expensive.'

Khike malssim hasipsiyo.

'Please speak loud.'

- (b) An action verb inflected in -ke which may occur without a pause immediately before ha- is used with a causative meaning, of which English translations are {have} [someone] do...'. The personal nominal + {eke
{make}
{let } {il/lil}

may or may not precede the -ke ha- construction.

Kake hæssimnita.

'[I] had [him] go.'

Ai eke cake hasipsiyo.

'Please have the child go to bed.'

Cəngpu ka na eke wekukə lil

'The government makes me study
foreign languages.'

pəuke hamnita.

Note: As for the other construction types where the -ke form occurs (e.g. -ke twe-) we will learn in further units.

4. -n/in/nin ci

We learned that the construction, an interrogative + an inflected modifier word + the dependent noun ci, before an inflected expression occurs as a nominal expression (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 13).

The construction -n/in/nin ci without being preceded by an interrogative may also occur as a nominal expression. If -n/in/nin ci occurs as the object of the following inflected expression, the object particle il/lil is usually omitted. The construction -n/in/nin ci is used as the equivalent of the English nominal clauses which begin with 'if-', 'whether-' or 'that-'. Examples:

Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci pokessimnita.

'I'll see if Mr. Kim is in.'

Cip kaps i pissan ci alko siphsimmnita.

'I want to know whether the rent is high.'

Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci alə posipsiyo.

'Please find out if it takes a lot of time.'

Miss Brown i Səul e sanin ci
mollassimmnita.

{ 'I didn't know whether Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'
'I didn't know that Miss Brown is living in Seoul.' }

The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -n/in/nin form in the above construction: -(a,e)ssnin ci for the past, -kessnin (or its substitute -(i)l ci for the future, respectively. Note that an inflected modifier word (e.g. -n/in/nin) + ci + yo? may be used as a kind of informal polite question sentence final form. This form of a question sentence occurs only in a dialogue after a certain context has been established to denote the speaker's doubt or modesty. Examples:

(Hoksi) cənhal malssim i issisinin ci
yo?

{ 'Would you leave a message (by)
any chance)?'
'May I take your message, sir?'
'I wonder if you'd like to leave a
message.'

Kəki nin nuku isin ci yo?

{ ('As for there, who are you?')
'May I ask whom I am speaking to?'
'Who is speaking, please?'

Kiləm, Wellam mal in swiun ci yo?

'Well, is Vietnamese easy, then?'

Kilsse yo. Tangsin i Kimchi lil
cohahal ci yo?

'Well, I'm afraid if you'll like
Kimchi.'

Hoksi sə təsa lil mannasiešsnin ci yo?

'I wonder if you have met the new
ambassador, sir.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Chæk i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the book ('The book is not seen.') |
| 2. Cenhwa penho ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the telephone number. |
| 3. (Næ) suchep i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my address book. |
| *4. (Næ) cikap i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my wallet. |
| 5. (Næ) kapang i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my briefcase. |
| 6. Ton i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find money. |
| *7. Ipku ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the entrance. |
| *8. Pata ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot see the sea. |
| *9. (Næ) cangkap i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my gloves. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Cenhwa penho lil chacil su (ka)
epsnin te yo. | I cannot find the telephone number. |
| 2. Næ suchep il chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find my address book. |
| *3. K1 e cuso lil chacil su (ka)
epsnin te yo. | I cannot find his address. |
| *4. Il cali lil chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find a job. |
| *5. Cohin kihwe lil chacil su (ka)
epsnin te yo. | I cannot find a good chance. |
| *6. Ton cikap il chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find the (money) wallet. |
| *7. Sikmo lil chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find a maid. |
| *8. Chulku lil chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find the exit. |
| *9. Ipku lil chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find the entrance. |
| *10. Chulipku lil chacil su (ka) epsnin
te yo. | I cannot find the exit-entrance. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋ e mal (solɪ) i/ka cal
tillimnita. | I [can] hear you well. ('Your
speech (sound) is well heard.') |
| 2. <u>Təŋsin</u> e mal (solɪ) i/ka cal
tillimnita. | I [can] hear you well. |
| 3. <u>Kyosu</u> e mal (solɪ) i/ka cal
tillimnita. | I [can] hear the professor well. |
| 4. <u>Səŋkwən</u> e mal (solɪ) i/ka cal
tillimnita. | I [can] hear well what my boss says. |
| *5. <u>Latiyo</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I [can] hear the radio clearly. |
| *6. <u>Pihəŋki</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I [can] hear the airplane well. |
| *7. <u>Palam</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I hear the wind (well). |
| *8. <u>Kiçha</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I hear the train (well). |
| *9. <u>Pal</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I hear the footsteps (well). |
| *10. <u>Mok</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I [can] hear [your] voice clearly. |
| *11. <u>Salam</u> solɪ ka cal tillimnita. | I hear the voices (well). |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəŋ eke com pakkwə
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Mr. Kim? ('Exchange
[it] to Mr. Kim.') |
| *2. <u>Kim Paksa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim? |
| *3. <u>Kim Kyosu</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Professor Kim? |
| *4. <u>Kim Həkəŋ</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Dean Kim? |
| *5. <u>Kim Chəŋcəŋ</u> eke com pakkwə
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to President (of
university) Kim? |
| *6. <u>Kim Səcəŋ</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to President (of company)
Kim? |
| *7. <u>Kim Cəŋkən</u> eke com pakkwə
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to General Kim? |
| *8. <u>Kim Phansa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Judge Kim? |
| *9. <u>Kim Cəŋkwən</u> eke com pakkwə
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Minister (in the
government) Kim? |
| *10. <u>Kim Kyocəŋ</u> eke com pakkwə
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Principal Kim? |
| *11. <u>Kim Moksa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Minister (of the
church) Kim? |

- | | |
|---|---|
| *12. <u>Kim Kwacang</u> eke com pakkwæ
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Mr. ('Section Chief')
Kim? |
| *13. <u>Kim Kukcang</u> eke com pakkwæ
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Mr. ('Bureau Chief')
Kim? |
| *14. <u>Kim (Kukhwe) iywæn</u> eke com pakkwæ
cusipsiyo. | May I speak to Congressman ('National
Assembly Member') Kim? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Com tæ khike malssim hæ cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little louder. |
| *2. <u>Com tæ chenchênhi</u> malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little more slowly. |
| *3. <u>Com tæ ppalli</u> malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little faster. |
| *4. <u>Com tæ cakke</u> malssim hæ cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little more softly. |
| *5. <u>Com tæ coyonghi</u> malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little more quietly. |
| *6. <u>Com tæ sokhi</u> malssim hæ cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little more quickly. |
| *7. <u>Com tæ khin soli lo</u> malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. | Please speak a little louder ('in a
big voice'). |
| 8. <u>Tasi han pæn</u> malssim hæ cusipsiyo. | Please say [it] once more ('once
again'). |
| *9. <u>Maim tælo</u> malssim hæ cusipsiyo. | { Please say as you like.
{ Please say freely. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci
pokessimnita. | I'll see if Mr. Kim is [in]. |
| 2. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci
<u>alæ pokessimnita.</u> | I'll find out if Mr. Kim is [in]. |
| 3. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci
<u>mule pokessimnita.</u> | I'll inquire if Mr. Kim is [in]. |
| 4. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci
<u>chacæ pokessimnita.</u> | I'll try looking for Mr. Kim. |
| 5. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci
<u>cænhwa-hakessimnita.</u> | I'll call [to see] if Mr. Kim is in. |

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 6. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
<u>molikessimnita.</u> | I do not know if Mr. Kim is in. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
<u>alko siphsimnita.</u> | I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is in. |
| 8. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
<u>allye cusipsiyo.</u> | Please let me know if Mr. Kim is in. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
alko siphsimnita. | I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is [in]. |
| 2. <u>Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci</u>
alko siphsimnita. | I'd like to know if Mr. Park comes. |
| 3. Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci <u>molimnita.</u> | I don't know if Mr. Park comes. |
| 4. <u>Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci</u>
molimnita. | I don't know if it takes a lot of time. |
| 5. Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci
<u>mule pokessimnita.</u> | I'll ask if it takes a lot of time. |
| *6. <u>Khiki ka kathin ci</u> mule pokessimnita. | I'll ask if the size is the same. |
| 7. Khiki ka kathin ci <u>alə pokessimnita.</u> | I'll find out if the size is the same. |
| 8. <u>Ki pun i aphin ci</u> alə pokessimnita. | I'll find out if he (honored) is sick. |
| 9. Ki pun i aphin ci <u>cənhwa-hə</u>
<u>pokessimnita.</u> | I'll try calling to see if he is sick. |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i eti e sanin ci
molimnita. | I don't know where Mr. Kim lives. |
| 2. <u>Cə puin i muəs il hanin ci</u> molimnita. | I don't know what the lady does. |
| 3. <u>Təthongyeng i myəch sal in ci</u>
molimnita. | I don't know how old the President is. |
| 4. <u>Kim Paksa ka nuku lil chacnin ci</u>
molimnita. | I don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for. |
| 5. <u>Sikmo ka muəs il wənhənin ci</u>
molimnita. | I don't know what the maid wants. |
| 6. <u>Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci</u>
molimnita. | I don't know when [my] boss is coming back. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. Sangkwan i  nce tola onin ci <u>amnita</u> . | I know when [my] boss is coming back. |
| 8. Sangkwan i  nce tola onin ci
<u>alko siphsimnita</u> . | I'd like to know when [my] boss is
coming back. |
| *9. Sangkwan i  nce tola onin ci
<u>allye cusipsiyo</u> . | Please let [me] know when [your]
boss is coming. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ch k il iyca e tu ssimnita. | I have put the book on the chair. |
| 2. <u>Ai</u> lil <u>cip</u> e tu ssimnita. | I have left the child at home. |
| 3. <u>Kapang</u> il <u>cha</u> e tu ssimnita. | I have left the briefcase in the car. |
| 4. <u>Cikap</u> il <u>pang</u> e tu ssimnita. | I have left my wallet in the room. |
| *5. <u>Cha</u> lil <u>chako</u> e tu ssimnita. | I have left the car in the garage. |
| *6. <u>Catongcha</u> lil <u>cuchacang</u> e
tu ssimnita. | I have left the automobile in the
parking lot. |
| *7. <u>Cac n </u> lil <u>untongcang</u> e
tu ssimnita. | I have left the bicycle in the
playground. |
| *8. <u>Cha</u> lil <u>pakk</u> e tu ssimnita. | I have left the car outside. |
| *9. <u>Kong</u> il <u>an</u> e tu ssimnita. | I left the ball inside. |
| *10. <u>Kong</u> il <u>c ngw n</u> e tu ssimnita. | I left the ball in the yard. |
| *11. <u>Kilis</u> il <u>puekh</u> e tu ssimnita. | I left the dish in the kitchen. |

J. Grammar Drill (Use hoksi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sens ng e c nhwa penho
lil ase yo?

'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone
number?'

Student: Kim Sens ng e c nhwa penho
lil hoksi ase yo?

{ 'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone
number, by any chance?
'Do you happen to know Mr. Kim's
telephone number?'

1. T thongy ng il mannasse yo?
2. Cungkuk imsik il m k  pon il i
isse yo?
3. Sens ng in Panto Hwesa e
kinmu-hase yo?
4. Cikim thim i kyese yo?

T thongy ng il hoksi mannasse yo?
Cungkuk imsik il hoksi m k  pon il
i isse yo?
Sens ng in hoksi Panto Hwesa e
kinmu-hase yo?
Cikim hoksi thim i kyese yo?

5. Kɪ pun i myæch-si e tola ol ci
ase yo?
6. Ohu e sinæ e tillikessə yo?
7. Kim Sənsæŋ e cuso lil cəkə
tuessə yo?
8. Kimchi lil capsusin cək i issə yo?

- Kɪ pun i myæch-si e tola ol ci hoksi
ase yo?
- Hoksi ohu e sinæ e tillikessə yo?
- Hoksi Kim Sənsæŋ e cuso lil cəkə
tuessə yo?
- Hoksi kimchi lil capsusin cək i
issə yo?

K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kɪ e ilim il cəkəssimnita.

'I wrote his name.'

Student: Kɪ e ilim il cəkə tuəssimnita.

'I wrote his name down (for future use).'

1. Ssan kutu lil sasse yo.
2. Cən e Hankuk mal il pæwəssə yo.
3. Inchən kanin kil il mulə pwassə yo.
4. Yel-han-si e cəmsim il məkəssə yo.
5. Kim Sənsæŋ eke puthak-hæssə yo.
6. Kim Sənsæŋ e cuso lil aləssə yo.
7. Ton il inhæŋ e nəhəssə yo.
8. Pam e phyenci lil ssəssə yo.
9. Il il ppalli kkith-machiəssə yo.

- Ssan kutu lil sa tuessə yo.
- Cən e Hankuk mal il pæwə tuessə yo.
- Inchən kanin kil il mulə pwa tuessə
yo.
- Yel-han-si e cəmsim il məkə tuessə yo.
- Kim Sənsæŋ eke puthak-hæ tuessə yo.
- Kim Sənsæŋ e cuso lil alə tuessə yo.
- Ton il inhæŋ e nəhə tuessə yo.
- Pam e phyenci lil ssə tuessə yo.
- Il il ppalli kkith-machiə tuessə yo.

L. Combination Drill (Make one sentence out of two in the pattern as in the example.)

Tutor: Cənhwa pənho lil chacsimnita.
Poici anhsimnita.

'I'm looking for the telephone
number.' 'I cannot find it.'

Student: Cənhwa pənho lil chacin te,
poici anhsimnita.

'I'm looking for the telephone
number, but I cannot find it.'

1. Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Acik cal
mal-haci mot hamnita.
2. Palam i pumnita. Kili chupci
anhsimnita.
3. Cə yəca wa insa-həssimnita.
Ilim il molikessimnita.

- Hankuk mal il pəunin te, acik cal
mal-haci mot hamnita.
- Palam i punin te, kili chupci
anhsimnita.
- Cə yəca wa insa-həssnin te, ilim il
molikessimnita.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. Cəmsim il məkəssimnita. Tasi pə
ka kophimnita. | Cəmsim il məkəssnın te, tasi pə ka
kophimnita. |
| 5. Catongcha lıl sako siphsimnita.
Ton i əpsimnita. | Catongcha lıl sako siphın te, ton i
əpsimnita. |
| 6. Cə nin Səul pukın e samnita. Nal
mata kicha lo il-hələ omnita. | Cə nin Səul pukın e sanın te, nal
mata kicha lo il-hələ omnita. |
| 7. Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl
kələssimnita. Amu to patci
anhəssimnita. | Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl kələssnın
te, amu to patci anhəssimnita. |
| 8. Cip esə hakkyo ka phək məmnita.
I Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita. | Cip esə hakkyo ka phək mən te, I
Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita. |
| 9. Onıl kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hamnita.
Sikan i pucok-hamnita. | Onıl kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hanın
te, sikan i pucok-hamnita. |

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunın te,

'I am studying Korean but (or and)...

Student: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunın
te, acik cal mal-haci mot
hamnita.

'I'm studying Korean but I can't
speak it well yet.'

1. Catongcha lıl sako siphın te,
2. Cəmsim il məkəssnın te,
3. Hal il i manhın te,
4. Yəca chinku ka aphın te,
5. Hakkyo ka mən te,
6. Hankuk mal i phək əlyəun te,
7. Cip e cənhwa lıl kələssnın te,
8. Hyəng nim i Səul lo isa-həssnın te,
9. Ton i com philyo-han te,
10. Palam i manhi punın te,

N. Grammar Drill (Use it in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Tasi kəkəssimnita.

'I'll call again.'

Student: Itta tasi kəkəssimnita.

'I'll call again later.'

1. Tola osipsiyo.

Itta tola osipsiyo.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Chenchēnhi ttēnalyēko hamnita. | Itta chenchēnhi ttēnalyēko hamnita. |
| 3. Tto pwepkessimnita. | Itta tto pwepkessimnita. |
| 4. Tapang esē mannapsita. | Itta tapang esē mannapsita. |
| 5. Kim Sēsæng i tilla il kēs imnita. | Kim Sēsæng i itta tilla il kēs imnita. |
| 6. Kathi kal kka yo? | Itta kathi kal kka yo? |
| 7. Khēphi han can sa cuse/yo. | Itta khēphi han can sa cuse yo. |
| 8. Tto wa to kwēchanhsimnikka? | Itta tto wa to kwēchanhsimnikka? |
| 9. Sikan i issimyon, pwa ya
hakessimnita. | (Itta) sikan i issimyon, (itta) pwa
ya hakessimnita. |

0. Grammar Drill (Use akka in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Cē nin cēsim il mēkessimnita.

'I ate lunch.'

Student: Cē nin akka cēsim il
mēkessimnita.

'I ate lunch a little while ago.'

1. Kim Sēsæng in ttēnassimnita.

Kim Sēsæng in akka ttēnassimnita.

2. Lætio esē kī mal il tilēssimnita.

Akka lætio esē kī mal il tilēssimnita.

3. I Paksa wa cēnhwa lo mal-hæssimnita.

I Paksa wa cēnhwa lo akka mal-
hæssimnita.

4. Il il ta kkith-machiæssimnita.

Il il akka ta kkith-machiæssimnita.

5. Pi ka oki sicak-hæssimnita.

Pi ka akka oki sicak-hæssimnita.

6. Cē nin com swiæssimnita.

Cē nin akka com swiæssimnita.

7. Chinku ekese cēnhwa līl patæssimnita.

Chinku ekese akka cēnhwa līl
patæssimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Read aloud the following telephone numbers:

1. 3-7506

8. 73-0193

2. 5-2673

9. 567-7065

3. 4-0407

10. 370-8731

4. 2-9716

11. 672-0409

5. 3-3654

12. 490-2089

6. 22-3402

13. 903-4356

7. 23-9781

14. 633-0295

B. Make a short statement in Korean for each of the following:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim | 14. Senator/Sangwŏn iywŏn/ Kennedy |
| 2. Professor Park | 15. Representative ('National Assembly Member') Kim |
| 3. Dean Koh | 16. Mr. Kim's driver |
| 4. President (of a university) Yoon | 17. a maid |
| 5. General Choe | 18. your boss |
| 6. Minister (of the Government) Lee | 19. a banker/inhŏngka/ |
| 7. Judge Whang | 20. a politician/cŏngchika/ |
| 8. Principal James | 21. a farmer/nongpu/ |
| 9. Reverend Yoo | 22. a laborer/notongca/ |
| 10. President (of a company) Choe | 23. a businessman/saepka/ |
| 11. Doctor Park | 24. a guest (<u>or</u> visitor)/sonnim/ |
| 12. Mr. (chief of the department) Pae | 25. the owner/cuin/ |
| 13. Mr. (chief of the bureau) Seo | |

C. Telephone rings; answer it and say as follows:

1. 'Hello!'
2. 'I'm sorry but I can't hear you well.'
3. 'Please speak a little louder.'
4. 'One moment, please, the line is busy now.'
5. 'You have the wrong number but I'll connect you to his office in a minute.'
6. 'May I ask who is calling, please?'
7. 'Please wait just one second: he is on the line now.'
8. 'O.K.'

D. Call the Bank of Korea and conduct the following conversation:

- | <u>Secretary</u> | <u>You</u> |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Hello, Bank of Korea!' | 'Hello, may I speak to Mr. Choe of the Foreign Currency Section?' |
| 2. 'I'm sorry but he is not in the office now.' | 'Do you happen to know where he has gone?' |
| 3. 'Yes. He went out for lunch with a friend.' | 'Do you know what time he'll be back?' |
| 4. 'It's been nearly an hour since he left the office, so he'll be back soon. Do you want to leave a message?' | 'No, that's all right. I have something to say to him <u>directly</u> /cikčŏp/. I'll call again in about a half an hour.' |
| 5. 'O.K., then, please do so.' | 'Thank you.' |

E. Make short dialogues so that the second partner uses the following expressions in his response:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. maim tælo | 'as one pleases' |
| 2. tasi han pæn | 'once more' |
| 3. cohin kihwe | 'a good chance' |
| 4. il cali | 'a job' |
| 5. coyonghi | 'quietly' |
| 6. com tæ khike | 'a little more loudly' |
| 7. allyæ cusipsiyo | 'let [someone] know' |
| 8. khiki | 'size' |
| 9. (ton) cikap | 'wallet' |
| 10. pal soli | 'foot-steps' |
| 11. itta | 'later' |
| 12. akka | 'a little while ago' |
| 13. chenchenhî | 'slowly' |
| 14. camkan man | 'just a moment' |
| 15. Puthak-hamnita. | 'Yes, please.' |

F. For each of the following pairs of words make short statements in Korean which include both words:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. car: garage | 6. dishes: kitchen |
| 2. automobile: parking lot | 7. kids: yard (<u>or</u> garden) |
| 3. bicycle: playground | 8. address book: pocket/(ho)cumeni/ |
| 4. children: the outside | 9. wallet: briefcase |
| 5. ball: the inside | 10. Mr. Kim's address: his telephone number |

G. Tell the class that:

1. you've jotted down Mr. Kim's address and telephone number.
2. you've deposited money in the bank.
3. you can hear the airplane well.
4. you've left the car on the street.
5. you don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
6. you can answer any questions from the students.
7. you'll call the doctor a little while later.
8. you heard about the story just a little while ago.

제 17 과 전화 (계속)

(대화 A)

(김 선생 부인은 부엌에 있다.)

엄마

1. 어린 딸 : 엄마! 전화 왔어요.

밖어타

너

네가

왔니

2. 어머니 : 어디에서 왔니? 네가 밖어타.

아빠

3. 어린 딸 : 어느 분이 아버바를 찾어요.

4. 어머니 : 그림, 잠깐만 기다려타. 곧 들어 가겠타.

(대화 B)

-조금 후에-

5. 미씨씨 김 : 여보세요.

돼

- 6 제임스 : 여보세요. 김 기수 선생 댁입니까?

7. 미씨씨 김 : 예, 그렇습니다.

UNIT 17. Telephoning (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(..James tries to reach Mr. Kim..)
 (Mrs. Kim is in the kitchen.)

Little Daughter

emma

Mommy

1. emma! Cenhwa wassə yo.

Telephone, Mommy!

Mother

patəla

receive [it]

nə

you (Plain Speech)

ne ka

you (Subject in Plain Speech)

wassni/wanni/

has [it] come?

2. əti esə wassni? Ne ka patəla.

Where is it? You get it.

Little Daughter

appa

Daddy

3. əni pun i appa lil chace yo.

Somebody wants Daddy.

Mother

4. Kıləm, camkan man kitalyəla.

Well, just a minute. I'm coming in
right away.

Kot tılə kakessta.

Dialogue B

(..a little later..)

Mrs. Kim

5. Yəpose yo.

Hello.

James

tæk

home; residence

6. Yəpose yo. Kim Kisu Sənsəng

Is this Mr. Kisu Kim's residence?

tæk imnikka?

Mrs. Kim

7. Ne, kıləhsımnita.

Yes, it is.

8. 제임스: 지금, 김 선생 댁에 계세요?
- 아이구
조금 전에
9. 미쓰쓰 김: 아이구! 조금 전에 나 가셨는데요.
누구(이)시지요?
- 제임스(이)라고 합니다
10. 제임스: 김 선생의 친구입니다. (저는) 제임스(이)라고
합니다.
- 선생에 대해서, 선생에 관해서
이야기, 얘기
이야기 들었습니다
11. 미쓰쓰 김: 아, 그러세요? 선생에 대해서 이야기 많이
들었습니다. 저는 미쓰쓰 김입니다.
- 간다고 (말)합니다
12. 제임스: 그러세요? 전화로 실테합니다. 김 선생,
어디에 간다고 (말)했습니까?
- 약속
만날 약속이 있습니다
13. 미쓰쓰 김: 친구와 만날 약속이 있다고 (말씀)하셨습니다.
그리고, 다섯 시까지 집에 오겠다고 했어요.
14. 제임스: 그러면, 다시 겹칩니다.

James

8. Cikim, Kim Sənsəng, tək e
kyese yo?

Is Mr. Kim at home now?

Mrs. Kim

- aiku
cokim cən e
9. Aiku! Cokim cən e na kasyəssnın
te yo. Nuku (i)sici yo?

Gee!; Oh!
a little while ago
I'm sorry. He went out just a minute
ago. Who is calling, please?

James

- Ceimsı (i)lako hamnita
10. Kim Sənsəng e chinku imnita.
(Cə nın) Ceimsı (i)lako hamnita.

[they] say that [I]'m James
I'm Mr. James, a friend of Mr. Kim's.

Mrs. Kim

- sənsəng e {təhə sə }
 {kwanhə sə }
yəkı }
iyakı }
iyakı tiləssimnita
11. A, kiləse yo? Sənsəng e təhə sə
iyakı manhı tiləssimnita:
Cə nın Missisı Kim imnita.

about you; about teacher;
concerning you
story
I heard (the story)
Oh, yes? He has told me about you.
('I heard a lot about you.')
I am Mrs. Kim.

James

- kanta ko (mal-)hamnita
12. Kiləse yo! Cənhwa lo sillye-hamnita.
Kim Sənsəng, eti e kanta ko
(mal-)həssimnikka?

[they] say that [they] go
Is that so! Pardon me for calling.
Did he say where he was going?

Mrs. Kim

- yaksok
mannal yaksok i issimnita
13. Chinku wa mannal yaksok i issta ko
(malssim-)hasyəssimnita. Kiliko,
tases-si kkaci cip e okessta ko
həsse yo.

appointment, date
[I] have an appointment to meet
(someone)
He said that he has an appointment to
meet with a friend. And he said
that he'll come home by 5 o'clock.

전화하라고 (말)합니다

15. 미씨쓰 김: 선생에게 전화하라고 말할까요?

말씀해 주십시오

16. 제임스: 그저, 제가 전화했다고 말씀해 주십시오.

17. 미씨쓰 김: 예, 알겠습니다. 그렇게 하겠습니다.

18. 제임스: 그럼, 안녕히 계십시오.

19. 미씨쓰 김: 고맙습니다. 안녕히 계세요.

James

14. Kıləmyən, tasi kəlkessımnita. Well, I will call again.

Mrs. Kim

- cənhwa-hala ko (mal-)hamnita [he] tells [me] to call [him]
15. Sənsəng eke cənhwa-hala ko Shall I tell [him] to call you?
mal-hal kka yo?

James

- malssım-hæ cusipsiyo please tell [him]
16. Kıcə, ce ka cənhwa-hæsta ko Just tell him that I called.
malssım-hæ cusipsiyo.

Mrs. Kim

17. Ne, alkessımnita. Kıləhke Yes, I understand. I'll do so.
hakessımnita.

James

18. Kıləm, annyəngħi kyesipsiyo. Goodbye, then.

Mrs. Kim

19. Komapsımnita. Annyəngħi kyese yo. Thank you. Goodbye.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.3. emma 'Mommy' and appa 'Daddy' are the words frequently used by children. Girls use them much more than boys.
9. Aiku! 'Gee!!' or 'Oh!!' is a kind of exclamatory expression which indicates the speaker's surprise, delight, disappointment or helplessness, depending on the situation.
11. Iyaki ('story') and its contracted form yæki is used as a synonym of mal in all environments. Iyaki-ha- is equally interchangeable with mal-ha-.
12. Yaksok means either 'a promise' or 'an appointment (to meet someone)'. Its verb yaksok-ha- means 'to promise' or 'to make an appointment'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal

So far we have had the Polite Speech (Formal and Informal). As was mentioned in Units 2, 3, 4 the Polite Speech is the speech level spoken to the adults and/or the seniors in rank (e.g. age, school-grade, job, military, social status, etc.) in the hierarchy of the Korean social system. In general, a foreigner is expected to use the Polite Speech no matter who he speaks to, regardless of his age or status. At the same time he is spoken to in the Polite Speech. However, there is another commonly used speech level or style spoken to or among the children, which we shall call Plain Speech. Just like the Polite Speech, the Plain Speech has formal and informal styles, both of which are no different in level but are different only in the inflected forms of verbs at the end of the sentences. The two styles are usually mixed in one's speech. It is not easy to draw a strict line as to who uses the Plain Speech to whom, but it is very important to recognize the relationships of the two people by the speech levels they use each other. The following are the general rules governing how Plain Speech is used:

- (a) The parents to their own children of any age.
- (b) The older siblings in the family to the younger ones, or both another if there is little difference in age.
- (c) The adults to the children of others who are under or around their teen age.
- (d) Among the old and present classmates of all school ages (even in their adult life Plain Speech is often maintained).
- (e) Among the friends of childhood or boyhood.
- (f) The teachers to their students of pre-college ages.
- (g) The senior graders of the same high school to their junior graders (in case of girls, even in college).

The reverse of the above rules is not possible.

- (A). To form the Formal Plain Speech the final verbs in the sentences end in the following endings:

	Statement:	Question:	Imperative:	Propositive:
	-(<u>nin</u> /n)ta	-(<u>1</u>)ny1? or -(<u>1</u>)nya?	-(a, ə)la	-ca
1. Action Verb:				
a. Present	(1) -ninta/-nta	(2) -(1)ny1?	(4) -(a,ə)la	-ca
b. Past	-(a,ə)ssta	-(a,ə)ssny1?	-	-
c. Future	-kessta	-kessny1?	-	-
2. Description Verb:				
a. Present	-ta	-ny1?	-	-
b. Past	-(a,ə)ssta	-(a,ə)ssny1?	-	-
c. Future	-kessta	-kessny1?	-	-
3. Copula:				
a. Present	ita	(3) (1)ny1?	-	-
b. Past	iəssta	iəssny1?	-	-
c. Future	ikessta	ikessny1?	-	-

Notes:

- (1) -ninta is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nta to a stem ending in a vowel. Exception: An action verb stem ending in either -ss- or -ps- takes -ta for a statement (in present tense), e.g. iss-→ issta/itta/, eps-→ epsta/əpta/.

- (2) -inyi? is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nyi? to a stem ending a vowel.
- (3) After a noun which ends in a vowel the copula stem i- is usually silent.
- (4) The verb element to which -la is added is identical with an infinitive form. There are a few irregular forms for the imperative ending:
 'go' o → wala or onəla, 'come' ka → kala or kakəla.

- (B) The Informal Plain Speech has just one inflected form of a verb regardless of the sentence types, that is, all the four sentence types (statement, question, propositative, imperative) are in the Infinitive with different intonation patterns. When you drop off the particle yo from the Informal Polite Speech, the remaining part with the same intonation pattern is the Informal Plain Speech. Exception: the copula expression in Informal Plain Speech is (i)ya. Compare the following:

<u>Informal Polite</u>	<u>Informal Plain</u>	
Ka yo.	Ka.	'[I] go.'
Ka yo?	Ka?	'Do [you] go?'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in propositative intonation)	'Let's go.'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in imperative intonation)	'Go.'

2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches

When the speech levels change, not only the final verb forms change but also the other words in the sentence such as personal nouns may require different forms (polite, less polite, humble, blunt, etc.) depending on what speech level the speaker uses. Study the following chart:

Speech Level:	Speaker:	Addressee:
Polite	<u>cə</u> 'I', <u>ce ka</u> 'I (as emphasis subject)', <u>ce</u> or <u>cə e</u> 'my', <u>cə lil</u> 'me', <u>cə eke</u> 'to me', <u>uli</u> or <u>cəi</u> or <u>cəi til</u> 'we'	<u>sənsəng</u> or <u>sənsəng nim</u> or <u>tangsin</u> 'you', <u>sənsəng</u> <u>til</u> or <u>tangsin til</u> 'you (pl.)', etc.
Plain	<u>na</u> 'I', <u>nə ka</u> 'I (as subject)', <u>na lil</u>	<u>nə</u> 'you', <u>nə ka</u> 'you (as subject)', <u>nə lil</u> 'you'

	'me (as direct object)', <u>næke</u> (or <u>na eke</u>) 'to me', <u>uli</u> 'we'.	(as direct object)', <u>ne</u> or <u>næ e</u> 'your', <u>næ eke</u> 'to you', <u>næi</u> or <u>næi til</u> 'you (pl.)', <u>næi ka</u> or <u>næi til i</u> 'you (pl.)' (as subject)', etc.
--	--	--

Note that ne 'yes' and aniyo 'no' in the plain speech are replaced by ing or kilæ for ne; ani for aniyo.

3. Particles lako and ko

The particles lako and ko follow quotations and are called the Quotative Particles (or simply the quotatives). Since lako occurs after a direct quotation of the exact words of the original speaker - a word, a phrase, a sentence, an utterance, etc., it is called the Direct Quotative Particle.

Examples:

- (a) Original expression: Mæli ka aphimnita. 'I have a headache.'
 Quoted: 'Mæli ka aphimnita,' { '[He] said, "I have a headache."' }
 lako mal-hæssimnita. { '[He] said that he had a headache.' }
- (b) Original expression: Kim Sænsæng (i) tæk 'Is Mr. Kim at home?'
 e kyese yo?
 Quoted: 'Kim Sænsæng i tæk e { '[He] asked if Mr. Kim is at home:' }
 kyese yo?' lako { '"Is Mr. Kim at home?", said [he].' }
- (c) Original expression: Onil ttænapsita. 'Let's leave today.'
 Quoted: 'Onil ttænapsita,' { 'He suggested that we (he and I) leave today.' }
 lako (k1 ka) mal-hæssimnita. { '"Let's leave today," said he.' }
- (d) Original expression: Annyænghi kasipsiyo. 'Good bye.'
 Quoted: 'Annyænghi kasipsiyo,' { 'She said [to me] a good-bye.' }
 lako k1 yæca ka { '"Good-bye," she said.' }
 mal-hæssimnita.

Ko follows a quotation which is said from the point of view of the speaker reporting the quotation. The tenses of the original is retained in the quotations but the forms of the verb are in indirect forms which we shall call the Indirect Quotations. Thus, ko is called the Indirect Quotative Particle. The Indirect Quotative verb forms are almost identical with the Formal Plain Speech verb forms with a few exceptions: in Indirect Quotations, the copula is (i)la: (la after a nominal ending in a vowel and ila after a nominal ending in a consonant); an imperative verb ending is -(i)la: (ila is added to a consonant verb stem and -la to a vowel stem); a question verb ending is always -(ni)nya instead of -(i)nyi. Observe the following chart:

	Indirect Quotation Ending	The Quotative Particle	Verbs which may be followed	Approximate Translations
1. Statement:				
a. Action Verb:				
Present	-ninta/nta	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha- sængkak-ha- a(l)-	'says that...' 'thinks that...' 'understands that...'
Past	-(a,e)ssta			
Future	-kessta			
b. Description Verb:				
Present	-ta			
Past	-(a,e)ssta			
Future	-kessta			
c. Copula	(i)la			
2. Question:	-(ni)nya }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha- mulə po-	'asks (if)...'
3. Imperative:	-(i)la }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha-	'tells [some-one] to...'
4. Propositative:	-ca }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha-	'suggests that...'

Examples:

1.

əti e kanta ko mal-hæssimnikka?

'Did [he] say where [he] is going?'

Yaksok i issta ko mal-hæssə yo.

'[He] said that [he] has an appointment.'

əmeni ka tola kasyəssta ko
mal-hamnita.

'[He] says that his mother died.'

Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə salkessta
ko hə yo.

'Mr. Kim says he'll live in Seoul.'

Chwe Ssi e atil i phək
ttokttokhata ko hamnita.

'[They] say that Mr. Choe's son is very bright.'

Kim Paksa nin puca (i)la ko hamnita.

'[They] say that Dr. Kim is (a) rich(man).'

2.

Hankil il ilkil su issninya ko
(Ceimsi eke) mule pwassimnita.

'[I] asked (James) if he can read Hankil.'

Taim kicha ka myəch-si e
ttəna(ni)nya ko mule posipsiyo.

'Ask [him] what time the next train leaves.'

Ilim i muəs inya ko ki salam i
na eke mal-hæssə yo.

'That man asked me what my name is.'

Pak Sənsəng i tangsin eke Hankuk
mal i əlyəpnnya ko mal-hæssimnikka?

'Did Mr. Park ask you if Korean is difficult?'

3.

Sənsəng eke cənhwa-hala ko mal-hal
kka yo?

'Shall I tell [him] to call you?'

(Ai eke) kongpu-hala ko həssimnita.

'I told [my child] to study.'

Nuka sənsəng eke wekukə lil pəula
ko mal-hæssə yo?

'Who told you to learn foreign languages?'

Sikmo eke cənyək (il) cunpi-hala
ko mal-hæssimnita.

'I told the maid to prepare supper.'

4.

Cəmsim məkilə kaca ko chinku ka
mal-hæssimnita.

'[My] friend suggested that we go (to) eat lunch.'

Com swica ko (ki eke) mal-hasipsiyo.

'Suggest (to him) that you (pl.) take a rest.'

Wə ki yəca eke kyəlhon-hača ko
mal-haci anhsimnikka?

'Why don't you propose to her? ('Why don't you propose that you [and she] get married?')

DRILLS

A. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Cə nin hakkyo e kamnita.

'I'm going to school.' (Formal Polite)

Student: Na nin hakkyo e kanta.

'I'm going to school.' (Formal Plain)

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin kimchi lil cohahamnita. | Na nin kimchi lil cohahanta. |
| 2. Cə nin nal mata cənhwa lil patsimnita. | Na nin nal mata cənhwa lil patninta. |
| 3. Cə nin il cali lil chaesimnita. | Na nin il cali lil chacninta. |
| 4. Hankuk imsik i mas i issimnita. | Hankuk imsik i mas i issta. |
| 5. Kyeul nalssi ka chupsimnita. | Kyeul nalssi ka chupta. |
| 6. Pihængki ka ceil ppalimnita. | Pihængki ka ceil ppalita. |
| 7. Cei ka pwassimnita. | Uli ka kwassta. |
| 8. Cei ka Kim Paksa lil mannassimnita. | Uli ka Kim Paksa lil mannassta. |
| 9. Cə nin Yenge lil molimnita. | Na nin Yenge lil molinta. |
| 10. Cikim pi ka oci anhsimnita. | Cikim pi ka oci anhninta. |
| 11. I Kyosu eke nin cənhal mal i
epsimnita. | I Kyosu eke nin cənhal mal i əpsta. |
| 12. Acik pæ ka kophici anhsimnita. | Acik pæ ka kophici anhta. |

B. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hankuk mal i swipsimnikka?

'Is Korean easy?'

Student 2: Hankuk mal i swipnyi?

'Is Korean easy?'

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sensæng in Səul salam imnikka? | Nə nin Səul salam inya? |
| 2. Tangsin in Yenge lil mal-hamnikka? | Nə nin Yenge lil mal-hanyi? |
| 3. Pom e pi ka manhi omnikka? | Pom e pi ka manhi onyi? |
| 4. Kulapha esə yehæng-hæssimnikka? | Kulapha esə yehæng-hæssnyi? |
| 5. Pelsə cəmsim il capsusyæssimnikka? | Pelsə cəmsim il məkæssnyi? |
| 6. Kim Sensæng puin kwa cənhwa lo
iyaki-hæssimnikka? | Kim Sensæng puin kwa cənhwa lo
iyaki-hæssnyi? |
| 7. Pusan esə sale pon il i issimnikka? | Pusan esə sale pon il i issnyi? |
| 8. Mikuk Təsakwan e kinmu-hako
siphsimnikka? | Mikuk Təsakwan e kinmu-hako siphnyi? |
| 9. əlma tongan tapang esə
kitaliæssimnikka? | əlma tongan tapang esə kitaliæssnyi? |
| 10. əce muəs hale sinə e tillessimnikka? | əce muəs hale sinə e tillessnyi? |

C. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hakkyo e kapsita.	'Let's go to school.'
Student 2: Hakkyo e kaca.	'Let's go to school.'
1. Com swipsita.	Com swica.
2. Cenyæk (il) məkipsita.	Cenyæk il məkca.
3. Onil pam e yənghwa polə kapsita.	Onil pam e yənghwa polə kaca.
4. Hankuk mal lo iyaki-hapsita.	Hankuk mal lo iyaki haca.
5. Chenchənhi kələ kapsita.	Chenchənhi kələ kaca.
6. Onil in cip e issipsita.	Onil in cip e issca.
7. Pul-koki lil məkə popsita.	Pul-koki lil məkə poca.
8. Kutu lil saci mapsita.	Kutu lil saci ma(1)ca.
9. Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa-haci mapsita.	Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa-haci ma(1)ca.
10. Kyosil esə tampə lil phiuci mapsita.	Kyosil esə tampə lil phiuci ma(1)ca.
11. Kilən kəs il yaksok-haci mapsita.	Kilən kəs il yaksok-haci ma(1)ca.
12. Hakkyo lil kimantuci mapsita.	Hakkyo lil kimantuci ma(1)ca.

D. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 3: Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo.	'Speak (<u>or</u> say) in Korean.'
Student 4: Hankuk mal lo mal-hæla.	'Speak (<u>or</u> say) in Korean.'
1. Ohu e tto osipsiyo.	Ohu e tto {onəla. wala.
2. Cip e kasipsiyo.	Cip e {kakəla. kala.
3. əsə capsusipsiyo.	əsə məkəla.
4. Com tə khike malssim-hasipsiyo.	Com tə khike mal-hæla.
5. Yəki esə nəlisipsiyo.	Yəki esə nəliəla.
6. Nəil tasi cənhwa kəsipsiyo.	Nəil tasi cənhwa kələla.
7. Ce cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tusipsiyo.	Nə cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tuəla.
8. I chæk il I Sənsəng eke cənhasipsiyo.	I chæk il I Sənsəng eke cənhæla.
9. Kɪ pun eke mal-haci masipsiyo.	Kɪ pun eke mal-haci maləla.
10. Kilən yaksok in haci masipsiyo.	Kilən yaksok in haci maləla.

E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: Sənsəŋ in Yəŋə lɪl mal- hasimnikka?	'Do you speak English, sir?'
Adult: ing, kɪlæ, (na nɪn) Yəŋə lɪl mal-hanta.	'Yes, I do.' ('That's right, I speak English.')
1. Wekuk e ka pon ɪl i issimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, wekuk e ka pon ɪl i issta.
2. Hankuk mal i pokcap-hamnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, (Hankuk mal i) pokcap-hata.
3. Sə yangpok ɪl sassimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, sə yangpok ɪl sassta.
4. Sənsəŋ nɪm in tɒmpə lɪl phiumnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, tɒmpə (lɪl) phiunta.
5. Ce apəci eke cənhal malssim i issimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, (nə e apəci eke) cənhal mal i issta.
6. Onɪl cənyək e tola osikessimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, onɪl cənyək e tola okessta.
7. Kɪ kəs i tahəŋ imnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, kɪ kəs i tahəŋ ita.
8. Ceimsɪ e təhə sə iyaki tiləssimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, (Ceimsɪ e təhə sə) iyaki tiləssta.
9. Hankɪl ɪl mot ilksimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, (Hankɪl ɪl) mot ilkninta.
10. Sənsəŋ in ton i əpsimnikka?	ing, kɪlæ, ton i əpsta.

F. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: (Uɪɪ) hakkyo e kal kka yo?	'Shall we go to school?'
Adult: Kɪlæ, (hakkyo e) kaca.	'Sure, let's go.'
1. Cəmsim ɪl məkɪl kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cəmsim ɪl) məkca.
2. Cəncha pota ppəsɪ lɪl thako kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cəncha pota) ppəsɪ lɪl thako kaca.
3. Lətio nyussɪ lɪl tilə pol kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (lətio nyussɪ lɪl) tilə poca.
4. Cəŋkəcang aph esə nəlɪl kka yo?	Kɪlæ, cəŋkəcang aph esə nəlica.
5. Tasi səŋgak-hə pol kka yo?	Kɪlæ, tasi səŋgak-hə poca.
6. Kicha lo Pusan e nəlyə kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, kicha lo (Pusan e) nəlyə kaca.
7. Ppəsɪ lo Nyuyok e olla kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, ppəsɪ lo (Nyuyok e) olla kaca.
8. Cənhwa pənho lɪl pakkul kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cənhwa pənho lɪl) pakkuca.
9. I sosik ɪl halapəci eke cənhal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (i sosik ɪl halapəci eke) cənhaca.

G. Response Drill

- Child: Cikim sicak-hæ to cohsmnikka? 'May I start now?'
 Adult: Kilæ, æsæ sicak-hæla. 'Go right ahead.'
1. Malssim com mulæ pwa to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ mulæ pwala.
 2. Thipi lil pwa to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ pwala.
 3. Sænsæng e mannyenphil il sse to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ ssæla.
 4. Cæmun il yelæ to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ yelæla.
 5. Mun il tate to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ tatæla.
 6. Kyosil esæ tampæ lil phiwæ to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ phiwæla.
 7. Sænsæng eke han kaci puthak-hæ to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ puthak-hæla.
 8. I chæk il ilkæ to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ ilkæla.
 9. Pak Yængca wa kyælhon-hæ to cohsmnikka? Kilæ, æsæ kyælhon-hæla.

H. Response Drill

- Adult: Hankuk mal il pæunyi? 'Are you learning Korean?'
 Child: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pæwæ yo. 'Yes, I am (learning Korean,) (sir)'
1. Hankuk mal il anyi? Ne, (Hankuk mal il) alæ yo.
 2. Hakkyo ka {kakkapnyi? Ne, (hakkyo ka) kakkawæ yo.
 {kakkaunyi?
 3. Cikim pæ ka kophinyi? Ne, pæ ka kopha yo.
 4. Mom i phikon-hanyi? Ne, (mom i) phikon-hæ yo.
 5. Hakkyo ka kkith-nassnyi? Ne, (hakkyo ka) kkith-nassæ yo.
 6. Nal mata Hankuk mal il yensip-hanyi? Ne, nal mata (Hankuk mal il) yensip-hæ yo.
 7. Kicha ka pælsæ ttenassnyi? Ne, pælsæ ttenassæ yo.
 8. Ppæsi ka pælsæ tahassnyi? Ne, pælsæ tahassæ yo.
 9. Onil cænyæk e pi ka okessnyi? Ne, (onil cænyæk e) pi ka okessæ yo.
 10. Kim Sænsæng puin in nai ka manhnyi? Ne, (Kim Sænsæng puin in) nai ka manhæ yo.

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I kəs ɪl Yəŋgə lo muəs ɪla ko
hamnikka? | How do you say this in English? |
| 2. Cə kəs ɪl <u>Hankuk mal</u> lo muəs ɪla ko
hamnikka? | How do you say that in Korean? |
| 3. <u>Yaksok</u> ɪl <u>Tokil mal</u> lo muəs ɪla ko
hamnikka? | How do you say appointment in German? |
| 4. <u>Cənhal mal</u> ɪl <u>Səpana mal</u> lo muəs
ɪla ko hamnikka? | How do you say message in Spanish? |
| 5. <u>Puthak</u> ɪl <u>Cungkuk mal</u> lo muəs ɪla
ko hamnikka? | How do you say a favor to ask in
Chinese? |
| 6. 'Yəpose yo.' lɪl <u>ɪlpon mal</u> lo muəs
ɪla ko hamnikka? | How do you say 'Hello (there).' in
Japanese? |
| 7. 'Təhəŋg ɪmnɪta.' lɪl <u>Mikuk mal</u> lo
muəs ɪla ko hamnikka? | How do you say 'That's fortunate.'
in American language? |
| 8. 'Cəmkən mən kɪtalɪse yo.' lɪl
<u>Pullənsə mal</u> lo muəs ɪla ko
hamnikka? | How do you say 'Wait a minute.'
in French? |
| 9. 'Alkəssɪmnɪta.' lɪl <u>Ssolyən mal</u>
muəs ɪla ko hamnikka? | How do you say 'I understand.' in
Russian? |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋg e təhə sə ɪyaki (manhi)
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard (a lot) about you. |
| *2. <u>Kɪ sosik</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about that news. |
| *3. <u>Kɪ sɪnmun kɪsa</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about that newspaper article. |
| *4. <u>Kɪ ɪl calɪ</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about that job. |
| *5. <u>Kɪ catongcha sako</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about that automobile
accident. |
| *6. <u>Kɪ səkən</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about that incident. |
| *7. <u>Hankuk səŋghwal</u> e təhə sə ɪyaki
tɪləssɪmnɪta. | I heard about the Korean life. |

8. Wekyokwan sŏnghwal e tŏhŏ sŏ
iyaki tilŏssimnita.
I heard about the life of foreign
service.
- *9. Hankuk nongpu e hŏhŏ sŏ iyaki
tilŏssimnita.
I heard about the Korean farmers.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Cŏ e ilim in Ceimsi la ko hamnita.
My name is James. ('[They] say that
my name is James.')
- *2. I kŏnmul e ilim in Kukce Ssenthe
la ko hamnita.
The name of this building is said
to be International Center.
- *3. I kŏli e ilim in Congno la ko
hamnita.
The name of this street is Congno.
- *4. Hankuk Cŏngpu e ilim in Tŏhan
Minkuk ila ko hamnita.
The name of the Korean Government is
Republic of Korea.
- *5. Pullansŏ e sŏul in Phali la ko
hamnita.
The capital of France is Paris.
- *6. Mikuk e suto nin Wŏsingthon ila ko
hamnita.
The capital city of the U.S. is
Washington.
- *7. I tosi e ilim in Tŏku la ko hamnita.
The name of this city is Taegu.
- *8. Cŏ tŏhakkyo e ilim in Yense Tŏhakkyo
la ko hamnita.
The name of that university is
Yonsei University.
- *9. Cŏ yŏca e ilim in Pak Yŏngsuk ila
ko hamnita.
That woman's name is Park Young-Sook.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sŏnsŏng i ŏti e kanta ko
(mal-)hŏssimnikka?
{Did Mr. Kim say where he is going?
{Did [they] say where Mr. Kim is going?
2. Kim Sŏnsŏng i muŏs il kalichinta
ko hŏssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say what he is teaching?
3. Kim Sŏnsŏng i ŏti e santa ko
hŏssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say where he lives?
4. Kim Sŏnsŏng i muŏs il wŏnhanta ko
hŏssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say what he wants?
5. Kim Sŏnsŏng i ŏnce onta ko
hŏssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say when he is coming?

6. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 myəch-si e tola onta
ko həssimnikka?
7. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 nuku lil chachinta ko
həssimnikka?
8. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 wə Hankuk mal il
pəunta ko həssimnikka?
9. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 myəch sikan tongan
il-hanta ko həssimnikka?

Did Mr. Kim say what time he is coming back?

Did Mr. Kim say whom he is looking for?

Did Mr. Kim say why he is studying Korean?

Did Mr. Kim say how many hours he works?

M. Substitution Drill

1. Pak Sənsəŋ in hakkyo e kanta ko
(mal-)həssimnita.
2. Pak Sənsəŋ in Hankuk salam ila ko
(mal-)həssimnita.
3. Pak Sənsəŋ in Hankuk mal il
kalichinta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
4. Pak Sənsəŋ in Pul-koki lil məkko
siphta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
5. Pak Sənsəŋ in sənsəŋ il anta ko
(mal-)həssimnita.
6. Pak Sənsəŋ in nal mata cənhwa lil
kenta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
7. Pak Sənsəŋ in Yəŋge lil alə ya
hanta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
8. Pak Sənsəŋ in nəil ttənalyə ko
hanta ko (mal-)həssimnita
9. Pak Sənsəŋ in sə cha lil sal kəs
ila ko (mal-)həssimnita.

Mr. Park said that he is going to school.

Mr. Park said that he is a Korean.

{ Mr. Park said that he is teaching Korean.
[He] said that Mr. Park is teaching Korean.

Mr. Park said that he wants to eat Pul-koki.

Mr. Park said that he knows you.

Mr. Park said that he makes phone-calls everyday.

Mr. Park said that [he] has to know English.

Mr. Park said that he is going to leave tomorrow.

Mr. Park said that he will buy a new car.

N. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo ka kakkapta ko Kim Sənsəŋ
1 mal-həsse yo.
2. Səul cip kaps i pissata ko Kim
Sənsəŋ 1 mal-həsse yo.

Mr. Kim said that the school is near.

Mr. Kim said that the housing in Seoul is expensive.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. <u>Yenge ka swipci anhta</u> ko Kim
Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that English is not easy. |
| 4. <u>Cencha ka pencap-hata</u> ko Kim
Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that streetcars are crowded. |
| 5. <u>Hansik i mas (i) issta</u> ko
Kim Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that Korean food is delicious. |
| 6. <u>Meli ka com aphita</u> ko Kim
Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that he has a little headache. |
| 7. <u>Munce ka com pokcap-hata</u> ko
Kim Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that the problem is rather complicated. |
| 8. <u>Tasi cenhwa kælkessta</u> ko Kim
Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that he will call again. |
| 9. <u>Cikim thim i epsta</u> ko Kim
Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that he is not free now. |

0. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. K1 salam eke tasi cenhwa hala ko
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to call again? |
| 2. K1 salam eke <u>tasi ola ko</u> mal-hal
kka yo? | Shall I tell him to come again? |
| 3. K1 salam eke <u>kongpu-hala ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to study? |
| 4. K1 salam eke <u>tilæ ola ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to come in? |
| 5. K1 salam eke <u>ohu e tillila ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to stop by in the afternoon? |
| 6. K1 salam eke <u>alæ pola ko</u> mal-hal
kka yo? | Shall I tell him to find out? |
| 7. K1 salam eke <u>tola kala ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to go back? |
| 8. K1 salam eke <u>camkan man kyesila ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to wait a moment? |
| 9. K1 salam eke <u>yensip-hala ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to practise? |
| 10. K1 salam eke <u>kaci malla ko</u>
mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him not to go? |

P. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
mal-hasipsiyo. | Please tell him not to go. |
| 2. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hæ cusipsiyo.</u> | Please tell him not to go (for me). |
| 3. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-haci masipsiyo.</u> | Please don't tell him not to go. |
| 4. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hæssimnita.</u> | I told him not to go. |
| 5. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hæssimnikka?</u> | Did you tell him not to go? |
| 6. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hapsita.</u> | Let's tell him not to go. |
| 7. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-haci mapsita.</u> | Let's not tell him not to go. |
| 8. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hakesse yo.</u> | I'll tell him not to go. |
| 9. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-haci anhkesse yo.</u> | I'll not tell him not to go. |
| 10. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hanın kes i cohkesse yo.</u> | { You'd better tell him not to go.
It will be better to tell him not to go. |
| 11. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko
<u>mal-hæ to cohsimnita.</u> | You may tell him not to go. |

Q. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kim Sænsæng i na eke Yængæ l1l
pæuca ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I study English. |
| 2. Kim Sænsæng i na eke <u>Hankuk mal lo</u>
<u>mal-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I speak in Korean. |
| 3. Kim Sænsæng i na eke <u>Cungkuk imsik</u>
<u>il mækca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I eat Chinese food. |
| 4. Kim Sænsæng i na eke <u>sinæ l1l</u>
<u>kukyæng-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I go around the city. |
| 5. Kim Sænsæng i na eke <u>cal sængkak-</u>
<u>haca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I give a second thought. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 na eke <u>il il</u>
<u>sicak-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
start the work. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 na eke <u>hapsing il</u>
<u>thaca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
take a jitney. |
| 8. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 na eke <u>yəca lil</u>
<u>thəuca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
give a ride to the girl. |
| 9. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 na eke <u>il il</u>
<u>kkith-machica</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
finish the work. |
| 10. Kim Sənsəŋ 1 na eke <u>yəki esə</u>
<u>nəlica</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I
get off here. |

R. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Hankuk mal 1 əlyəpn̄ya ko Ceims̄1
ka cə eke mule pwassimnita. | James asked me if Korean is difficult. |
| 2. <u>Ilpon mal 1 swipn̄ya ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka
cə eke mule pwassimnita. | James asked me if Japanese is easy. |
| 3. <u>Kicha ka phyəlli-hanya ko</u> Ceims̄1
ka cə eke mule pwassimnita. | James asked me if the train is
convenient. |
| 4. <u>Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichi(n̄1)nya ko</u>
Ceims̄1 ka cə eke mule pwassimnita. | James inquired me who teaches Korean. |
| 5. <u>əti esə sa(n̄1)nya ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka cə
eke mule pwassimnita. | James asked me where I am living. |
| 6. <u>Myəch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-na(n̄1)nya</u>
<u>ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka cə eke mule
pwassimnita. | James asked me what time school is
over. |
| 7. <u>Myəch sikan tongan kɨnmu-ha(n̄1)nya</u>
<u>ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka cə eke mule
pwassimnita. | James asked me how many hours [I]
work. |
| 8. <u>əlma na mən̄ya ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka cə eke
mule pwassimnita. | James asked me how far [it] is. |
| 9. <u>Onil 1 myəchil inya ko</u> Ceims̄1 ka
cə eke mule pwassimnita. | James asked me what date it is today. |

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Ki 1 eke cenhwa-hala ko
mal-hal kka yo?

'Shall I tell him to call [you]?'

Student 1: Ne, cenhwa-hala ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

'Yes, please tell him to call [me].'

Student 2: Aniyo, cenhwa-haci malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

'No, please tell him not to call [me].'

1. Haksæng eke cip e kala ko mal-hal
kka yo?

Ne, cip e kala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
Aniyo, cip e kaci malla ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

2. Ai eke ppesi lil thako kala ko
mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, ppesi lil thako kala ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, ppesi lil thako kaci malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

3. Uncensu eke mun aph ese nælie cula
ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, mun aph ese nælie cula ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, mun aph ese nælie cuci malla
ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

4. Ceimsi eke cenhwa penho lil cæke
tula ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, cenhwa penho lil cæke tula ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, cenhwa penho lil cæke tuci
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

5. Pise eke mun il tatila ko mal-hal
kka yo?

Ne, (mun il) tatila ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (mun il) tatci malla ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

6. I Sænsæng eke Kim Sænsæng e cuso
lil alæ pola ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (Kim Sænsæng e cuso lil) alæ pola
ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (Kim Sænsæng e cuso lil) alæ
poci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

7. Miss Chwe eke Hankuk mal il
kalichie cula ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk mal il kalichie cula ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, Hankuk mal il kalichie cuci
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

8. Pak Sənsəŋ eke khəphi han can sala
ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (khəphi han can) sala ko mal-hə
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (khəphi han can) saci malla ko
mal-hə cusipsiyo.

9. Kɪ yəca eke tangsin ɪl kitalila ko
mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (cə ɪl) kitalila ko mal-hə
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (cə ɪl) kitalici malla ko
mal-hə cusipsiyo.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Aɪ eke cip e kala ko
mal-həssimnikka?

'Did you tell the child to go home?'

Student 3: Ne, cip e kala ko
mal-həssimnita.

'Yes, I did. ('I told [him] to go
home.')

Student 4: Aniyo, cip e kala ko
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

'No, I didn't. ('I didn't tell [him]
to go home.')

1. Haksəŋ tɪl eke cəmsɪl (ɪl) məkɪla
ko mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, cəmsɪl (ɪl) məkɪla ko mal-
həssimnita.

Aniyo, cəmsɪl (ɪl) məkɪla ko mal-haci
anhəssimnita.

2. Puiŋ eke phyəncɪ (ɪl) puchila ko
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, phyəncɪ (ɪl) puchila ko
mal-həssimnita.

Aniyo, phyəncɪ (ɪl) puchila ko
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

3. Aɪ tɪl eke kil esə nolla ko
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, kil esə nolla ko mal-həssimnita.

Aniyo, kil esə nolla ko mal-haci
anhəssimnita.

4. Chinku eke tapang esə kitalila ko
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, tapang esə kitalila ko mal-
həssimnita.

Aniyo, tapang esə kitalila ko
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

5. Uncənsu eke mun esə nəliə cula ko
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, mun esə nəliə cula ko mal-
həssimnita.

Aniyo, mun esə nəliə cula ko
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. Kim Sənsəng eke chæk il ponæla
ko mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, chæk il ponæla ko mal-hæssimnita.
Aniyo, chæk il ponæla ko mal-haci
anhæssimnita. |
| 7. Atıl eke thipi lıl pola ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, thipi lıl pola ko mal-hæssimnita.
Aniyo, thipi lıl pola ko mal-haci
anhæssimnita. |
| 8. Kukmusəng i səsəng eke Hankuk
mal il pəula ko mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, Kukmusəng i na eke Hankuk mal il
pəula ko mal-hæssimnita.
Aniyo, Kukmusəng i Hankuk mal il
pəula ko mal-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 9. ıysa ka səsəng eke khəphi lıl
masici malla ko mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, ıysa ka khəphi lıl masici malla
ko mal-hæssimnita.
Aniyo, ıysa ka khəphi lıl masici
malla ko mal-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 10. Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha lıl
thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha lıl
thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnita.
Aniyo, Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha
lıl thaci malla ko mal-haci
anhæssimnita. |

U. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i ətı e kanta ko
mal-hæssimnikka? /tapang/ | 'Did Mr. Park say where he was
going? /tearoom/' |
| Student: Tapang e kanta ko mal-həsse yo. | 'He said (that) he was going to the
tearoom.' |
| 1. I Sənsəng i mʉs ılo yəhəng-hanta
ko mal-hæssimnikka? /catongcha/ | Catongcha lo yəhəng-hanta ko
mal-həsse yo. |
| 2. ənce kkaci kı il il kkıth-nənta
ko mal-hæssimnikka? /taim cuil/ | Taim cuil kkaci kkıth-nənta ko
mal-həsse yo. |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng in atıl i ənı təhak e
taninta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/Cungang Təhak/ | (Atıl i) Cungang Təhak e taninta ko
mal-həsse yo. |
| 4. Sə Sənsəng i musın ımsik il
cohahanta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/yangsik/ | Yangsik il cohahanta ko mal-həsse yo. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Ceimsi ka nuku wa kyelhon-hanta
ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/Chwe Sænsæng e ttal/ | Chwe Sænsæng e ttal kwa kyelhon-
hanta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 6. Ceimsi Sænsæng i wæ Hankuk mal
il pæunta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/Hankuk e kani kka/ | Hankuk e kani kka, (Hankuk mal il)
pæunta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 7. Ki i ka elma tongan Hankuk esæ
salkessta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/han sam sa nyen/ | Han sam sa nyen (tongan) Hankuk esæ
salkessta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 8. Pak Sænsæng in muæs il masiko
siphta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/mækcui/ | Mækcui lil masiko siphta ko
mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 9. Cæng Sænsæng i musin yoil e
ttenakessta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/Hwayoil/ | Hwayoil e ttenakessta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 10. Chwe Sænsæng in elma e cha lil
sassta ko mal-hæssimnikka?
/chæn-ku-pæk Pul/ | Chæn-ku-pæk Pul e sassta ko
mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 11. Hankuk mal sænsæng i Mikuk e onci
myæch nyen tweæssta ko mal-
hæssimnikka? /sam nyen pan/ | (Mikuk e onci) sam nyen pan
tweæssta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |

V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: (Kim Sænsæng i) i kæs i chæk
ila ko mal-hæssæ yo?

'Did Mr. Kim say that this is a book?'

Student: (Kim Sænsæng i) na eke i
kæs i chæk inya ko mulæ
pwassæ yo.

'Mr. Kim asked me if this is a book.'

- (Kim Sænsæng i) Hankuk mal il anta
ko mal-hæssæ yo?
- (Kim Sænsæng i) Yængæ ka elyæpta
ko mal-hæssæ yo?
- (Kim Sænsæng i) Sæul e cip kaps i
pissata ko mal-hæssæ yo?

- (Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Hankuk mal il
a(ni)nya ko mulæ pwassæ yo.
- (Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Yængæ ka
elyæpnnya ko mulæ pwassæ yo.
- (Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Sæul e cip
kaps i pissanya ko mulæ pwassæ yo.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) Hansik 1 mas 1
issta ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke Hansik 1 mas
1 iss(n1)nya ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 5. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) Miss Kim in nai ka
manhta ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke Miss Kim in
nai ka manhnya ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 6. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) nai ka myəch sal
ila ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke nai ka myəch
sal inya ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 7. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) yosə muəs il hanta
ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke yosə muəs il
ha(n1)nya ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 8. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) əti e santa ko
mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke əti e sa(n1)nya
ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 9. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) cikim myəch-si la
ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke cikim myəch-
si nya ko mulə pwasse yo. |
| 10. (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) sikan 1 əlma na
kəllinta ko mal-həsse yo? | (Kim Sənsəŋ 1) na eke sikan 1 əlma
na kelli(n1)nya ko mulə pwasse yo. |

EXERCISES

(All the following exercises should be done in different speech levels: Formal and Informal Polite; Formal and Informal Plain.)

A. Tell the class that Mr. Park told you that:

1. he is sick.
2. he cannot come to work.
3. he will take a good rest.
4. he visited the doctor.
5. to call him anytime.
6. not to worry/kəkcəng-ha-ta/ about it.
7. not to ask him any questions.
8. to go to the movies with you.
9. not to speak in English while in the class.

B. Tell Pak Sənsəng that you think that:

1. they sell American newspapers and magazines at that bookstore.
2. the problem is rather complicated.
3. Mr. Yang will not buy a new car.
4. you've heard about the automobile accident.
5. Korea is called 'Təhan Minkuk' in Korean.
6. anybody will be able to finish it easily.

C. Ask student A if he's heard:

1. that teaching Korean is easier than an European language.
2. that others also suggested eating Chinese food.
3. that James told the students to go home.
4. that all the students wanted to study Korean.
5. that the Government told James to teach English.

D. Tell Pak Sənsəng that:

1. you think that Jones speaks Korean very well.
2. Mr. Kim said that he will be back by 6:30.
3. you understood that Korean is difficult.

4. your Korean teacher told you to memorize/(ttala) we-ta/ the new words/tanə/.
5. Miss Brown asked you if you can teach her Korean.
6. Miss Choe suggested that you go together to the movies.
7. you heard that Mr. Chang's son is very bright.
8. you heard that Jones is a rich man.
9. James told you not to read that magazine.
10. your wife suggested that (she and) you not buy a foreign car.
11. 'I understand.' in Korean is expressed as 'I will know it.'
12. you heard about Korean customs.
13. the capital of France is called Paris.
14. you think riding taxis in Seoul is dangerous/wihəm-ha-ta/.
15. you think reading Korean newspapers is difficult.
16. you don't know if Korean is as easy as French.
17. you have an appointment to meet a friend at 3 p.m.
18. Jones asked you where you live.
19. your wife asked you what time the work ends.
20. the ambassador asked how difficult Korean was.

E. Mr. James has just telephoned and asked for Mr. Kim. Answer as follows:

1. 'Just a moment, please. I'll see if he is in.'
2. 'He isn't at his desk just now.'
3. 'Oh, gee, he went out just a minute ago.'
4. 'Who is calling, please?'
5. 'This is Miss Lee Suca (speaking). I'm Mr. Kim's secretary.'
6. 'He is in Mr. Park's office just now. It's extension/næsen/ 26.'
7. 'I mean Young-Soo Park.'
8. 'Would you like him to call you later?'
9. 'Yes, I understand, I will have him call you soon.'

F. Make the following telephone calls:

1. Call the Hanil Company and leave a message for Mr. Son that you are not coming today.
2. Call your home and tell the maid that you are going to the Kim's house for supper and will be home about 11:30.
3. Call a friend and ask her to go to the movies with you.
4. Call Mr. Kim's house and ask when Mr. Kim is returning to Seoul.
5. Call Mr. Han's house and ask Mr. Han to call Ambassador Wilson's office immediately.
6. Report that your telephone is out of order/kocang-na-ta/ and request that it be fixed/kochi-ta/.
7. Call your boss' house and tell his wife that he had some business in Inchon suddenly/kapcaki/ and that he said he'll call her from Inchon tonight around 9:00.
8. Call Mr. James' secretary and tell her Mr. James asked to call his office about his sickness.

제 18 과 일기에 대해서

(대화 A)

날씨

종군요

1. A: 오늘은 날씨가 뭐 종군요!

가을 날씨

이렇게

2. B: 예, 한국(의) 가을 날씨는 대개 이렇게
좋습니다.

이런 날씨

계속

계속 합니까

3. A: 이런 날씨가 얼마 동안 계속 합니까?

시월 말

하늘

하늘이 맑고

차차

(차차) 추워 집니다

4. B: 대개 시월 말까지는 하늘이 맑고 좋은 날씨가
계속합니다. 그러나, 십이월부터 차차
추워 집니다.

동북

미국 동북부

UNIT 18. Talking About Weather

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- | | |
|---|--|
| nalssi
cohkun yo
1. Onil in nalssi ka phæk cohkun yo! | weather
[it] is nice!
It's a nice day today! |
|---|--|

B

- | | |
|--|--|
| kail nalssi
ilèhke
2. Ne, Hankuk (e) kail nalssi nin
tækæ ilèhke cohsmnita. | autumn weather
this way; like this
Yes, Korea's autumn weather is
usually nice like this. |
|--|--|

A

- | | |
|---|--|
| ilèn nalssi
kyesok
kyesok-hamnikka
3. Ilèn nalssi ka əlma tongan
kyesok-hamnikka? | this kind of weather
continuation
does [it] continue?; does
[it] last?
How long does this kind of weather
last? |
|---|--|

B

- | | |
|--|---|
| Si-wəl mal
hanıl
hanıl i malkko
chacha }
cəmcəm }
(chacha) chuwe cimnita
4. Tækæ Si-wəl mal kkaci nin hanıl i
malkko, cohın nalssi ka kyesok-
hamnita. Kiləna, Sip-il-wəl
puthe chacha chuwe cimnita. | the end of October
sky; heaven
the sky is clear and..
gradually
[it] gets colder, [it]'s getting
colder
Until the end of October the sky is
clear and nice weather continues.
But after November it gets
gradually colder. |
|--|---|

비슷합니다

비슷한 것 같습니다

5. A: 그럼, 한국의 기후가 미국 동북부와 비슷한 것 같습니다.

같다고 생각합니다

6. B: 예, 남한의 기후는 뉴욕 주와 대개 같다고 생각합니다.

봄철

뉴욕처럼

7. A: 여기에도 봄철에는 뉴욕처럼 비가 많이 오는가요?

늦은 봄

이른 여름

장마철

장마철이라고 부릅니다

8. B: 대개 늦은 봄과 이른 여름에 비가 많이 오지요. 그래서, 유월과 칠월을 장마철이라고 부릅니다.

(대화 B)

-토요일 아침에-

밖에

9. A: 지금 밖에 날씨가 어떻습니까?

비가 올 것 같습니다

A

Tongpuk
Mikuk Tongpukpu
pisithamnita
pisithan kəs kathsimnita

Northeast ('eastnorth')
the Northeastern part of the U.S.
[it] is similar
it seems that [it]'s similar;
[it] looks like similar

5. Kıləm, Hankuk e kihū ka Mikuk
Tongpukpu wa pisithan kəs
kathsimnita.

Well, Korea's weather seems to be
similar to that of the Northeastern
part of the United States.

B

6. Ne, Nam-Han e kihū nin Nyuyok Cu
wa təkə kathta ko səngkak-
hamnita.

[I] think that [it]'s the same
Yes, I think South Korea's weather
is about the same as that of
New York State.

A

7. Yəki e to pom chəl e nin Nyuyok
chələm pi ka manhi onin ka yo?

spring season
like New York; just as New York
Does it rain here as much as it does
in New York in the spring (season)?

B

8. Təkə nicin pom kwa ilin yelim e
pi ka manhi oci yo. Kılə sə,
Yu-wəl kwa Chil-wəl il cangma
chəl ila ko pulimnita.

late spring
early summer
rainy season
[we] call [it] the rainy season
Yes, it usually rains a lot in late
spring and early summer. So we
call June and July the rainy
season.

Dialogue B

(..on a Saturday morning..)

A

9. Cıkım pakk (e) nalssi ka
əttəhsımnikka?

outside
What's the weather like outside now?

10. B: 아마, 비가 올 것 같습니다. 날이 흐리고,
바람이 좀 불니다.

일기

일기 예보

11. A: 오늘 아침에 일기 예보를 들었습니까?

태디오

개입니다

개인다고 (말)했습니다

기상대

틀립니다

12. B: 예, 아침 태디오에서는 낮에 개인다고
말했지만 기상대도 가깝 틀리니까요.

큰 일

큰 일(이) 납니다

13. A: 비가 오면 큰 일 납니다.

계획

중 대합니다, 중요합니다

중 대한 계획, 중요한 계획

14. B: 왜요? 무슨 중 대한 계획이라도 있습니까?

등산

등산할 계획

등산할 계획입니다

15. A: 예, 오늘 오후에 등산할 계획이었습니다.

B

- pi ka ol kəs kathsɨmnita
 10. Ama, pi ka ol kəs kathsɨmnita.
 Nal i hɨliko, palam i com
 pumnita.

it looks like rain
 It looks like it'll probably rain.
 It's cloudy and a little windy.

A

- ilki
 ilki yepo
 11. Onil achim e ilki yepo (lil)
 tiləssɨmnikka?

weather; climate
 weather forecast
 Did you hear the weather forecast
 this morning?

B

- lætio
 kəɨmnita
 kəɨnta ko (mal-)həssɨmnita
 kisangtə
 thillimnita/thilyimnita/
 12. Ne, achim lætio esə nin nac e
 kəɨntako mal-həssci man,
 kisangtə to kakkim thillini
 kka yo.

radio
 [it] clears up
 [it] said that [it] clears up
 weather bureau, weather-man
 [it]'s wrong; [it] is not right
 Yes, the radio this morning said it
 would clear up at noon, but the
 weather-man is occasionally wrong.

A

- khin il
 khin il (i) namnita
 13. Pi ka omyən, khin il namnita.

a big problem; a big trouble
 ('a big job')
 ('a big trouble comes up')
 It mustn't rain! ('If it rains, a
 big problem comes up.')

B

kyehwek
 cungtə-hamnita }
 cungyo-hamnita }
 cungtə-han } kyehwek
 cungyo-han }
 musin kyehwek ilato

plan(ning); plans
 [it] is important
 important plans
 any plans

예...

정말

바랍니다

개이기 바랍니다

16. B: 예..., 정말 오후에는 개이기 바랍니다.

14. Wæ yo? Musin cungtæ-han kyehwek
ilato issimnikka?

Why? Do you have some important
plans?

A

tingsan

hiking

tingsan-hal kyehwek

(a) plan to hike

tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita

[I]'m planning to hike

15. Ne, onil ohu e tingsan-hal
kyehwek iæssimnita.

Yes, I was planning to go hiking
this afternoon.

B

ne...?

(oh, is that right?...)

cəngmal

certainly; truly; truth

palamnita

[I] desire; [I] hope

kæiki palamnita

[I] hope [it] clears up

16. Ne...? Cəngmal ohu e nin
kæiki palamnita.

Oh, you were? I hope it clears up
in the afternoon.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Iləhke 'this way' or 'like this', cələhke 'that way' or 'like that', kiləhke 'that way' or 'so' or 'in such a way', occur as adverbials which are inflected from the verb stems iləh- 'to be like this', cələh- 'to be like that' and kiləh- 'to be so'.
3. Ilən 'this kind of-', cələn 'that kind of-', kilən 'that kind of-', are the inflected present modifier words which are also based on the stem iləh- 'to be like this', cələh- 'to be like that', and kiləh- 'to be so', respectively. The stem final sound h is dropped when the ending -(i)n is added.
4. Mal which occurs after certain time nominals is either a part of a word or a post-noun, meaning 'the end': wəlmal 'the end of the month', cumal 'weekend', nyənmal 'the end of the year', haknyen mal 'the end of the school year', Il-wəl mal 'the end of January', etc.
5. -Pu ('part') which occurs at the end of a word succeeding the names of directions (i.e. tong 'east', sə 'west', nam 'south', puk 'north') often designates geographical areas of the United States: Tongpu 'the Eastern part of U.S.', Səpu 'the Western part of U.S.', Nampu 'the South', Pukpu 'the North'. (See Drill B, Unit 15.)
8. X (i)la ko pulimnita. ('[We] call [it] X.') can be substituted by X (i)la ko hamnita. ('[We] say [it] is X.') (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 17.)
12. Thilli- 'to be wrong' has its antonymous verb mac- 'to be correct'. Mac- and olh- are synonymous.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ninkun/kun yo

An inflected form ending in -ninkun/kun + yo may be used as a kind of emphatic or exclamatory sentence final form. This construction is usually accompanied by the intonation patterns the same as the one in -ci yo? (Unit 6) or the one in an exclamation sentence. -Ninkun is added to an action verb stem; -kun is added to the copula or a description verb stem, or to any verb stem plus the honorific and/or tense suffixes. However, to an action verb stem which ends in -ss, -kun is added. Observe the following examples:

(a)

Sənsəŋ in Hankuk mal il cal haninkun yo!	'You speak Korean very well!'
Cə mal i cham cal ttwininkun yo!	'That horse runs sure fast!'
Ai tɪl i cham manhɪ məkninkun yo!	'The kids sure eat a lot!'
Mikuk yəca tɪl in uncən il cal haninkun yo!	'The American women certainly are good drivers, aren't they?' ('The American women do driving certainly well.')
A, nə ka kɪ kəs il mollasskun yo!	'Oh, gee, I didn't know that!'

(b)

Onil nalssi ka phək cohkun yo!	{ 'The weather is very nice today, isn't it?' 'It's a nice day today!'
Kim Sənsəŋ in cəŋmal khi ka khikun yo!	{ 'Mr. Kim is really a tall man, isn't he?' 'Mr. Kim really is tall.'
A, kiləhkun yo!	'Oh, that's right (I didn't know that).'
Aiku, phək aphikesskun yo!	'Oh, no, [you] must hurt!'

Note: In the further Units, we will see that the construction -ninkun/kun + yo can be substituted by -ninku/ku + man + yo with the same meaning. The inflected word ending in -ninkun/kun is considered to be one-word contraction from the two-word phrase -ninku/ku + man.

2. Infinitive + ci-

As an independent verb ci- is an intransitive action verb, of which meanings vary depending on what is its subject or topic: Hə ka cinta.

'The sun sets.', Kkoch i ciēssta. 'The flowers have withered.', (Namu) iph i cimnita. 'The leaves are falling.', etc. However, preceded by the infinitive of a description verb, ci- occurs as an auxiliary verb, which denotes gradual change of the description of the preceding verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + ci- with or without an adverb cəmcəm (or chacha) 'gradually' is usually translated as either 'be getting -er' or 'become + adjective'. Examples:

Nalssi ka (chacha) chuwa cimnita.	'The weather is getting (gradually) colder.'
Hankuk mal i tē əlyəwə cimnita.	'Korean is getting more difficult.'
Yosə mulkən kaps i phək pissa ciēsse yo.	'Things became quite expensive these days.'
Nəil ilki ka coha cil kka yo?	'Will the weather be nice tomorrow (do you think)?'

3. -n/in/nin kəs kath-

The present inflected modifier word -n/in/nin + kəs occurs without pause before the verb kath-, to denote the speaker's assumption for the probability of the action or description of the verb in the modifier word. The English translations for the construction -n/in/nin kəs kath- are 'seems that...' or 'seems as if...' or 'looks like... ing', etc. Observe the following examples:

Pi ka <u>onin kəs kathsimnita</u> .	'It seems that it's raining (now).'
Ki ai ka tətanhī ttokttokhan <u>kəs kathsimnita</u> .	'That child seems to be very bright.'
Iyaki ka cəmi <u>issnin kəs kathsimnikka?</u>	'Does the story sound interesting?' ('Does it seem that the story is interesting?')
Cə khi (ka) khin salam i cangkun <u>in kəs kathci yo?</u>	'That tall man looks like a general, doesn't he?'
Il i kilī swipci <u>anhin kəs kathə yo</u> .	'The work doesn't seem to be that easy'
Təsa ka ce ilim il <u>anın kəs kathci anhsimnita</u> .	'The ambassador doesn't seem to know my name.'

Note that the tenses and/or speech levels of the whole construction are generated in the verb kath- (1), but the tenses for the speaker's assumption of the probability are made by replacing the present modifier word ending -nin with the past modifier word ending -n/in form for the past and with the -(1)l form for the future, respectively (2). Examples:

(1)

Pusan e yekwan kaps i com pissan
 kəs kathəssimnita.

'It seemed that the hotels in Pusan
 were a little expensive.'

Kim Sənsəng e il i cəmi issnɪn
 kəs kathəsə yo.

'Mr. Kim's job sounded interesting.'

Uli Yəngə sənsəng in ttal il
 calang-hanın kəs kathəssimnita.

'Our English teacher seemed to be
 proud of [his] daughter.'

(2a)

Kicha ka pəlsə ttənan kəs
 kathsimnita.

'It seems the train has already left.'

Kail i kəi cinan kəs kathsimnita.

'It seems the autumn is almost over.'
 ('It seems that almost the autumn
 passed.')

Pak Sənsəng in catongcha lɪl
 pha(ɪɪ)n kəs kathsimnita.

'Mr. Park seems to have sold his car.'

Note: In case of copula and description verbs, -(a,ə)sstən is added to the stem to show the past in the above construction. Example:

Kim Sənsəng puin in cəlməssɪl ttə
 (e) yəppəsstən kəs kathsimnita.

'It seems Mrs. Kim was pretty when
 she was young.'

(2b)

Pi ka ol kəs kathsimnita.

'It looks like rain.' ('It seems
 that it will rain.')

Munce ka manhɪl kəs kathə yo.

'It seems there're going to be a lot
 of problems.'

Nuka tətongyeng i twel kəs
 kathsimnikka?

'Who do you think will be the
 President?' ('Who, does it seem,
 will become the President?')

Hankuk mal i Cungkuk mal pota
 tə əlyəul kəs kathsimnita.

'Korean looks more difficult than
 Chinese.'

4. Particle chələm

A nominal + the particle chələm (or its synonym kathi) 'like + the Nominal' occurs as an adverbial expression for the following inflected expression.

Examples:

Kim Sənsəng chələm hasipsiyo.

'Please do [it] like Mr. Kim.'

Kkolphi chələm cohɪn untong i
 əpsimnita.

'There aren't any good sports like
 golf.'

I cip i sæ cip chələm kkækkithamnita. 'This house is clean like a new house.'
 Hankuk mal i Ilpon mal chələm {'Is Korean difficult like Japanese?'
 ulyəpsımnikka? {'Is Korean as difficult as Japanese?'

5. Particle lato/ilato

Lato occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ilato after a word ending in a vowel. The particle lato/ilato occurs after either inflected or uninflected words. Observe the following constructions where lato/ilato occurs: (Compare lato/ilato with na/ina, Grammar Note 4, Unit 10.).

(a) Interrogative expression + (i)lato = adverbial phrase 'any-'.

muəs ilato	'anything' or 'whatever [it] is'
musin yaksok ilato	'any appointment' or 'whatever appointment [it] may be'
nuku lato	'anybody' or 'whoever [it] may be'
ənce lato	'anytime' or 'whenever [it] may be'
əttəhke lato	'somehow' or 'whatever way [I] may take'

(b) After a nominal or an adverbial expression lato/ilato also occurs simply to emphasize the preceeding expression as the possible alternative of choice for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Onil in cip esə <u>capci lato</u> ilkessə yo.	'I'm going to read at home today, <u>say, magazines.</u> '
<u>Na lato</u> kilən il in hal su issımnita.	' <u>Even I</u> can do such a job.'
Kiləm, <u>tapang e lato</u> kapsita.	'Well, let's go <u>to, say, a tea-room,</u> then.'
<u>Yəngə lato</u> kalichiko siphci man,.....	'I would like to teach <u>even English</u> but.....'
Kalichinin kəs i ulyəumyən, <u>pəuki lato</u> hal su isskessci yo?	'If teaching is hard, [he] can do, <u>say, learning,</u> can't [he]?'

Note that we will learn in further units about the constructions in which other inflected words + lato/ilato occur.

6. -(1)1 kyehwek i- 'be planning to...'

The construction the -(1)1 form + the noun kyehwek 'plan' + the copula i-, literally means '[it] is the plan to do...'. The usual translation, however, is

'be planning to do...'. The tense suffixes may occur in the copula i- for the whole construction. Examples:

Na nin næil tingsan-hal kyehwek
imnita.

'I'm planning to go hiking
tomorrow.'

Wellæ Səul e kal kyehwek iəssci
man, kyehwek il pakkwəssə yo.

'Originally I was planning to go
to Seoul, but I have changed
plans.'

Miss Braun i kot kyəlhon-hal
kyehwek in kəs kathsimnita.

'Miss Brown seems to be planning
to get married soon.'

Kim Paksa nin appathı esə sal
kyehwek ila ko mal-həssimnita.

'Dr. Kim said that he was planning
to live in an apartment.'

.DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yu-wəl kwa Chil-wəl il cangma chəl
ila ko pulimnita. | [We] call June and July the rainy season. |
| *2. <u>Səul</u> il <u>Hankuk e suto</u> la ko pulimnita. | Seoul is called the capital of Korea. |
| *3. <u>Il hanin kos</u> il <u>cikcang</u> ila ko pulimnita. | The place where [you] work is called the place of work. |
| *4. <u>Ton i manhin salam</u> il <u>puca</u> la ko pulimnita. | [We] call the person who has a lot of money a rich man. |
| *5. <u>Kukhwe iywen tıl</u> il <u>cəngchika</u> la ko pulimnita. | [We] call the members of the National Assembly politicians. |
| *6. <u>Mikuk</u> il <u>Həpcungkuk</u> ila ko pulimnita. | America is called the United States. |
| *7. <u>Pusan kathin tosi</u> lıl <u>hangku</u> la ko pulimnita. | A city like Pusan is called a harbor. |
| *8. <u>Mulken il mantinin te</u> lıl <u>kongcang</u> ila ko pulimnita. | [We] call the place where goods are made a factory. |
| *9. <u>Kongcang esə il-hanin salam</u> il <u>cikkong</u> ila ko pulimnita. | [We] call the people working at factories (factory) workers. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko səngkak-hamnita. | I think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S. |
| 2. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko <u>səngkak-hamnikka?</u> | Do you think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.? |
| 3. <u>Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko</u> səngkak-hamnikka? | Do you think that woman is an American? |
| 4. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko <u>səngkak-haci anhsimnikka?</u> | Don't you think that woman is an American? |
| 5. <u>Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta</u> ko səngkak-haci anhsimnikka? | Don't you think it is good to see the movies sometimes? |
| *6. Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta ko <u>mitsimnita.</u> | I believe that it is good to see the movies sometimes. |
| 7. <u>Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lıl cal hanta</u> ko mitsimnita. | I believe that Mr. Park speaks English well. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. Pak Sənsəŋ i Yəŋgə 111 cal hanta
ko <u>tiłəssimnita</u> . | I heard that Mr. Park speaks English
well. |
| 9. <u>Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta</u>
ko <u>tiłəssimnita</u> . | I heard that Mr. Kim's father (had)
passed away. |
| 10. Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta
ko (mal-) <u>həssimnita</u> . | [They] (or Mr. Kim) said that Mr.
Kim's (or his) father passed away. |
| 11. <u>Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek</u>
<u>ila ko həssimnita</u> . | James told me (or said) that he was
planning to go hiking. |
| 12. Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek
ila ko <u>aləssimnita</u> . | I understood (or knew) that James was
planning to go hiking. |
| 13. <u>Sənsəŋ i Səul esə olə tongan</u>
<u>il-həssta ko aləssimnita</u> . | I understood that you worked in
Seoul for a long time. |
| 14. Sənsəŋ i Səul esə olə tongan
il-həssta ko <u>amnita</u> . | I understand that you have worked
in Seoul for a long time. |

C. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə yo?

'Is Korean difficult?'

Student 1: Ne, (Hankuk mal i) əlyəpta
ko səŋgak-hamnita.

'Yes, I think Korean is difficult.'

Student 2: Aniyo, (Hankuk mal i)
əlyəpta ko səŋgak-haci
anhsimnita.'No, I don't think Korean is
difficult.'

1. Kongpu-haki cəmi issə yo?

Ne, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko
səŋgak-hamnita.Aniyo, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko
səŋgak-haci anhsimnita.

2. Cə yəca ka yəppe yo?

Ne, (cə yəca ka) yəppita ko
səŋgak-hamnita.Aniyo, (cə yəca ka) yəppita ko
səŋgak-haci anhsimnita.3. Kim Sənsəŋ i Pullansə mal 11 cal
hə yo?Ne, (Kim Sənsəŋ i Pullansə mal 11)
cal hanta ko səŋgak-hamnita.Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəŋ i Pullansə mal
11) cal hanta ko səŋgak-haci
anhsimnita.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Kicha ka phyelli-hæ yo? | Ne, (kicha ka) phyelli-hata ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (kicha ka) phyelli-hata ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 5. Hankuk san i alimtawæ yô? | Ne, (Hankuk san i) alimtapta ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (Hankuk san i) alimtapta ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 6. Nalssi ka phæk chuwe cæsse yo? | Ne, (nalssi ka) phæk chuwe cæssta ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (nalssi ka) phæk chuwe cæssta
ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 7. Pakk e palam i tætanhi pulæ yo? | Ne, (pakk e palam i) tætanhi punta ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (pakk e palam i) tætanhi
punta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 8. Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka
pisithan kæs kathæ yo? | Ne, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka)
pisithan kæs kathta ko sængkak-
hamnita.
Aniyo, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka)
pisithan kæs kathta ko sængkak-
haci anhsimnita. |
| 9. I sikye ka thillie yo? | Ne, (i sikye ka) thillita ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (i sikye ka) thillita ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 10. K1 munce ka phæk cungyo-hæ yo? | Ne, (k1 munce ka) phæk cungyo-hata
ko sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (k1 munce ka) phæk cungyo-
hata ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |
| 11. Cæ ai ka ttokttokhan haksæng
iye yo? | Ne, (cæ ai ka) ttokttokhan haksæng
ila ko sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (cæ ai ka) ttokttokhan haksæng
ila ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita. |

D. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə ləl cal
hanta ko həssə yo?

Student: Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə ləl)
cal hanta ko tıləsə yo.

1. Consı Sənsəng i kot Səul e tola
onta ko həssə yo?
2. Hankuk e yəlım nalssi ka Nyuyok
pota tə mutəpta ko həssə yo?
(‘Did [they] say that the summer
weather in Korea is more muggy
than in New York?’)
3. Yang Sənsəng i cəngchika ka
tweəssta ko həssə yo?
4. Pak Sənsəng puin i inhəng e
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko həssə yo?
5. Təku e kyothong i phyəlli-hata
ko həssə yo?
6. Hakkyo kal sikan i nıcssta ko
həssə yo?

‘Did [they] say that Mr. Park speaks
English well?’

‘Yes, I heard [he] speaks English
well.’

- Ne, (Consı Sənsəng i) kot Səul e
tola onta ko tıləsə yo.
- Ne, (Hankuk e yəlım nalssi ka
Nyuyok pota) tə mutəpta ko tıləsə
yo.
- Ne, (Yang Sənsəng i) cəngchika ka
tweəssta ko tıləsə yo.
- Ne, (Pak Sənsəng puin i) inhəng e
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko tıləsə yo.
- Ne, (Təku e kyothong i) phyəlli-
hata ko tıləsə yo.
- Ne, hakkyo kal sikan i nıcssta ko
tıləsə yo.

E. Response Drill

Tutor: Kakkım yəngħwa ləl ponın kəs
i cohta ko səngkak-hase yo?

Student: Ne, kakkım yəngħwa ləl ponın
kəs i cohta ko mitsımnita.

1. Cəng sənsəng i cikım Səul e kyesinta
ko səngkak-hase yo?
2. Hankuk mal ıl almyən, Hankuk esə
ıl-haki phyənhata ko səngkak-
hase yo?
3. Kı munce ka talıta ko səngkak-
hase yo?
4. İlponə munpəp i Cungkukə pota
pokcap-hata ko səngkak-hase yo?

‘Do you think it’s nice to see the
movies occasionally?’

‘Yes, I believe it’s nice to see
movies occasionally.’

- Ne, Cəng Sənsəng i cikım Səul e
kyesinta ko mitsımnita.
- Ne, Hankuk mal ıl almyən, Hankuk esə
ıl-haki phyənhata ko mitsımnita.
- Ne, kı munce ka talıta ko mitsımnita.
- Ne, İlponə munpəp i Cungkukə pota
pokcap-hata ko mitsımnita.

5. Sənsəŋ in kuntə kyəŋhəm i
philyo-hata ko səŋkak-hase yo?
6. Ceimsi Sənsəŋ in Hankuk phungsok
il cal ihæ-hanta ko səŋkak-
hase yo?
7. Pak Sənsəŋ (e) mal i thillita
ko səŋkak-hase yo?

Ne, kuntə kyəŋhəm i philyo-hata
ko mitsimnita.
Ne, (Ceimsi Sənsəŋ in) Hankuk
phungsok il cal ihæ-hanta ko
mitsimnita.
Ne, Pak Sənsəŋ (e) mal i thillita
ko mitsimnita.

F. Response Drill

Tutor: Cə pun in wekyokwan imnikka?

Student: Ne, (cə pun in) wekyokwan
illa ko aləssimnita.

'Is that man in the foreign service?'
'Yes, I understood (or thought) that
he is in the foreign service.'

1. Kim Sənsəŋ i Yəŋgə lll
kalichimnikka?
2. Pak Yəŋgca ka kyəlhon-həssimnikka?
3. Cəŋg Sənsəŋ i tæsa ka
tweəssimnikka?
4. Hankuk e kyəul kihū ka Mikuk Tongpu
wa pisithamnikka?
5. Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki
(ka) əlyəpsimnikka?
6. I Sənsəŋ e əməni nin nai ka
manhsimnikka?

Ne, (Kim Sənsəŋ i) Yəŋgə lll
kalichinta ko aləssimnita.
Ne, (Pak Yəŋgca ka) kyəlhon-həssta
ko aləssimnita.
Ne, (Cəŋg Sənsəŋ i) tæsa ka
tweəssta ko aləssimnita.
Ne, (Hankuk e kyəul kihū ka Mikuk
Tongpu wa) pisithata ko aləssimnita.
Ne, Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki
(ka) əlyəpta ko aləssimnita.
Ne, I Sənsəŋ e əməni nin nai ka
manhta ko aləssimnita.

G. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Onil nalssi ka phək cohci yo?

Student: Ne, (onil nalssi ka) phək
cohkun yo!

'The weather is very nice today,
isn't it?'
'Yes, it certainly is!'

1. Cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haci yo?
2. Il i pokcap-haci yo?
3. Imsik i mas i cohci yo?

Ne, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haninkun
yo!
Ne, il i pokcap-hakun yo!
Ne, Imsik i mas i cohkun yo!

4. Hanıl ı t tanhi ma(1)kci yo?
5. Kim Sens ng e atıl ı ph k
ttokttokhaci yo?
6. Kot, pi ka ol k s kathci yo?
7. Kı ai ka ap ci wa pis thaci yo?
8. Onıl nalssi ka mut pci yo?
('Today's weather is muggy,
isn't it?')
9. Kimchi ka c ngmal m pci yo?

- Ne, hanıl ı t tanhi ma(1)kkun yo!
Ne, (Kim Sens ng e atıl ı) ph k
ttokttokhakun yo!
Ne, kot, pi ka ol k s kathkun yo!
Ne, (kı ai ka) ap ci wa pis thakun yo!
Ne, (onıl nalssi ka) mut pkun yo!

Ne, (kimchi ka) c ngmal m pkun yo!

H. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Nalssi ka chups mnita.

'The weather is cold.'

Student: Nalssi ka c mc m chuw  c mnita.

'The weather is getting colder.'

1. Hankuk mal ı  ly ps mnita.
2. Pang an ı ttatt thamnita.
3. C  nin nai ka manh s mnita.
4. İl e c mi ka iss mnita.
5. Munce ka tal mnita.
6. Kyothong ı phy llih mnita.
7. K  ai nin khi ka kh mnita.
8. Namphy n kwa an  e  kul ı
pis thamnita.
9. Yos  nin pih ngki ka ppal mnita.

- Hankuk mal ı c mc m  ly w  c mnita.
Pang an ı c mc m ttatt th  c mnita.
C  nin nai ka c mc m manh  c mnita.
C mc m il e c mi ka iss  c mnita.
Munce ka c mc m talla c mnita.
Kyothong ı c mc m phy llih  c mnita.
K  ai nin c mc m khi ka kh  c mnita.
Namphy n kwa an  e  kul ı c mc m
pis th  c mnita.
Yos  nin pih ngki ka c mc m ppalla
c mnita.

I. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Pı ka omnita.

'It's raining.'

Student: Pı ka onın k s kath s mnita.

'It seems to be raining (now).'

1. İl ı acık kyesok-h mnita.
2. Pise ka thaiph  l l cal chimnita.
3. Ac ssi ka k  sak n e t h  s 
amnita.

- İl ı acık kyesok-hanın k s
kath s mnita.
Pise ka thaiph  l l cal chinın k s
kath s mnita.
Ac ssi ka k  sak n e t h  s  anın
k s kath s mnita.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. Miss Braun in nai ka kilī manhei
anhsimnita. | Miss Braun in nai ka kilī manhei
anhin kēs kathsimnita. |
| 5. I Sensæng i onil ttēnal kyehwek
imnita. | I Sensæng i onil ttēnal kyehwek in
kēs kathsimnita. |
| 6. Ceimsi nin yængsa ka tweki
wēnhamnita. | Ceimsi nin yængsa ka tweki wēnhanin
kēs kathsimnita. |
| 7. Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-
hamnita. | Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hanin
kēs kathsimnita. |
| 8. Kī salam e acēssi ka puca imnita. | Kī salam e acēssi ka puca in kēs
kathsimnita. |
| 9. Cē haksæng i phēk ttokttokhamnita. | Cē haksæng i phēk ttokttokhan kēs
kathsimnita. |

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Onil ilki ka ēce wa
pisithamnikka?

'Is today's weather similar to that
of yesterday?'

Student: Ne, (onil ilki ka ēce wa)
pisithan kēs kathsimnita.

'Yes, it looks the same.' ('It
seems it is similar.')

1. Pakk e nalssi ka chupsimnikka?
2. Tæsa ka Hankuk mal il alæ
titsimnikka?
3. Hakkyo kal sikan i acik ilimnikka?
4. Hanil i hilmnikka?
5. Samusil i com etupsimnikka?
6. Kisangtæ e ilki yepo ka thillimnikka?
7. Kim Sensæng e mal i macsimnikka?
8. Wekyokwan sænghwal e wekukæ ka
cungyo-hamnikka?
9. Mikuk tæsa ka tangsin e ilim il
molimnikka?

- Ne, chuun kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, alæ titnin kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, (acik) ilin kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, hilm kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, (com) etuun kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, thillim kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, macin kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, cungyo-han kēs kathsimnita.
- Ne, molinin kēs kathsimnita.

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Ohu e nun i ol kka yo?

Student: Ne, (nun i) ol kəs
kathsimnita.

'Will it snow in the afternoon?'

'Yes, it looks like it.' ('It
seems that it will snow.')

1. I os i pissal kka yo?
2. Hanil i kæil kka yo?
3. Miss Braun i kot kyelhon hal kka yo?
4. Ki yeca ka kilohke palal kka yo?
5. Ki chinku ka catongcha lil tasi
pakkul kka yo?
6. Pun i Hankuk il cohahal kka yo?
7. Næil nalssi ka mutœul kka yo?
8. Ilki yepo ka thillil kka yo?
9. Kim Paksa mal i cœngmal il kka yo?

Ne, pissal kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, kæil kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, kot kyelhon hal kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, kilohke palal kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, tasi pakkul kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, (anæ ka Hankuk il) cohahal kəs
kathsimnita.
Ne, mutœul kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, thillil kəs kathsimnita.
Ne, cœngmal il kəs kathsimnita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hanil i kæil kəs kathsimnita.

Student: Cœngmal, kæiki palamnita.

'It seems the sky will clear up.'

'I sure hope it does.' ('Truly,
I hope it clears up.')

1. Ilki ka ttattithal kəs kathsimnita.
2. Il i onil ta kkith-nal kəs
kathsimnita.
3. Ceimsi nin Hankuk mal kongpu lil
kimantuci anhil kəs kathsimnita.
4. Munce ka œpsil kəs kathsimnita.
5. Mikuk e tola ka to, Hankuk mal
kongpu ka kyesok-hal kəs
kathsimnita.
6. Sœnsœng kwa Wœsington esœ tasi
mannal kəs kathsimnita.
7. Kilœn il-haki œlyœpci anhil kəs
kathsimnita.
8. Palam i pulci anhil kəs kathsimnita.

Cœngmal, ttattithaki palamnita.
Cœngmal, onil ta kkith-naki
palamnita.
Cœngmal, kimantuci anhki palamnita.
Cœngmal, (munce ka) œpski palamnita.
Cœngmal, kyesok-haki palamnita.
Cœngmal, tasi mannaki palamnita.
Cœngmal, œlyœpci anhki palamnita.
Cœngmal, (palam i) pulci anhki
palamnita.

9. Təsakwan esə uli eke allyə cul Cəngmal, allyə cuki palamnita.
kəs kathsımnita.
10. Sınə e kil i pəncap-hal kəs kathci Cəngmal, pəncap-haci anhkı palamnita.
anhısmnita.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Pak Sənsəng that:

1. it's raining hard.
2. it's snowing outside.
3. it started to rain just a minute ago.
4. it has stopped snowing.
5. it is very windy and cloudy today.
6. it rained all morning/achim nənə/.
7. it was snowy and cold yesterday at Panmunjom.
8. it was awfully muggy all summer in Washington.
9. it was hot but there was no humidity/sıpkı/.
10. it has begun to cloud up/kulım i kki-ta/.
11. it has begun to clear up.
12. the sky was clear and the temperature/onto/ was cool.
13. in winter, river always freeze/əl-ta/ but the sun shines most of the time.
14. the rainy season begins in the warm spring season and lasts until the end of July.
15. beginning early November the weather gets gradually colder.

B.

James asks:

You:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. if you think the Korean winter is the same as that of New York State. | 'Yes, I think so.' |
| 2. if it looks like rain. | 'Yes, but I hope it won't rain.' |
| 3. if Koreans use chop-sticks like Japanese. | 'Yes, they usually do.' |
| 4. whether it seems housing in Tokyo is less expensive than in the U.S. | 'No, it seems to be about the same.' |
| 5. if you have any important plans. | 'Yes, I have one, but not a specially important one.' |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. how long you're planning to stay in Korea. | 'Oh, maybe about two or three years.' |
| 7. if you want to go hiking. | 'Yes, only when the sky clears up.' |
| 8. if you will go swimming /suyəng/ with him. | 'Yes, if there is a good <u>place to swim</u> /suyəng-hal te/.' |
| 9. if winter is good for <u>hunting</u> /sanyang-haki/. | 'Yes, it is. But there are not many <u>places to hunt</u> /sanyang-hal kos/.' |
| 10. if people <u>go fishing</u> /nakksi-cil (halə) ka-ta/ to the sea. | 'Some people do, but you can also see people <u>fishing</u> /nakksi-cil hanin kas/ by the river sides.' |

C. Make a short dialogue so that one of the following expressions is included in the response:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. iləhke | 'this way' |
| 2. cələhke | 'that way' |
| 3. kiləhke | 'that way, in such a way' |
| 4. ilən | 'this kind of' |
| 5. cələn | 'that kind of' |
| 6. kilən | 'such kind of' |
| 7. chacha <u>or</u> cəmcəm | 'gradually' |
| 8. onil chələm | 'like today' |
| 9. Sənsəng e mal i macsimmnita.
(<u>or</u> macəssimmnita). | 'You are right.' |
| 10. Nə ka thilliəssimmnita. | 'I am wrong.' ('I was not right.') |
| 11. Nə ka cal mot həssimmnita. | 'I was wrong.' ('I couldn't do well.') |

Korean-English Glossary

The following is all of the vocabulary introduced in this text, except words used for pronunciation drills in the Introductory Unit. There are three vertical columns: the left column is the Korean in transcription; the middle is the same in Hankil; the right column is the meaning in English.

A verb is listed in the traditional Korean dictionary form ending in -ta with a hyphen after stem. Every verb or verb phrase is indicated as to transitive or intransitive by Vt & Vi respectively in the parenthesis immediately after the entry, and its Infinitive form is also entered right after Vt or Vi. A free noun or noun phrase is not indicated for its part-of-speech, but other entries are so indicated like verbs: (D) = Determinative, (DN) = Dependent Noun, (PN) = Post-Noun, (Ad) = Adverb, (P) = Particle, (C) = Counter, (Num Ch) = Numeral of Chinese Character origin, (Num K) = Numeral of Korean origin, (Int) = Interjection.

An Arabic number immediately following English meaning for each entry refers to the Unit in which it first occurs: the number alone refers to the Basic Dialogue or Dialogues of that unit; N, G or D preceded by a number refers to the Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes and Drills of the unit indicated by number respectively.

Examples:

- 9 means Unit 9, Basic Dialogue(s)
- 9-N means Unit 9, Notes on the Basic Dialogues
- 9-G means Unit 9, Grammar Notes
- 9-D means Unit 9, Drills

Entries are listed according to the alphabetical order of the Basic Syllable Chart in Introductory Unit: a, ə, o, u, ɪ, i, e, æ, y, w, k, kk, kh, n, t, tt, th, l, m, p, pp, ph, s, ss, c, cc, ch, h, ng.

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

a

a (Int)	아	Oh! 1
ai	아이	child 2-D
aiku! (Int)	아이구!	Gee!, Oh! 17
a(1)-ta (Vt: alə) Amnikka?	알다: 알어 압니까?	knows 2-G Do you know? 3
akka (Ad)	아까	a little while ago, a few minutes ago 16-N
atıl	아들	son 14
atınım	아드님	your son (honored) 14-N
alə tāt-ta (Vt: alə tılə)	알어 듣다: 알어 들어	understands (by ears) 9
alə po-ta (Vt: alə pwa)	알어 보다: 알어 봐	finds out, recognizes 7-G
alə cu-ta (Vt: alə cuə)	알어 주다: 알어 주	recognizes, gives credit 7-G
alımtap-ta (Vt: alımtawə)	아름답다: 아름답	is beautiful 5-D
ama (Ad)	아마	perhaps, probably 11
amu (D)	아무	any
amu kes (ina)	아무 것(이나)	anything, whatever 12
an (Ad)	안	not 3
An məmnita.	안 멀니다.	[It] is not far. 3
an	안	the inside 16-D
ani (Ad)	아니	no (plain speech) 17
aniyo (Ad)	아니요	no 1
Aniyo, kwəchanhsımnita.	아니요, 괜찮습니다.	(No), not at all. 1
amə	아내	my wife 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

annyeng	안녕	peace, tranquility 1
Annyeng-hasimnikka?	안녕하십니까?	How are you? 1
annyenghi (Ad)	안녕히	peacefully 1
Annyenghi kasipsiyo.	안녕히 가십시오.	Good bye (to someone leaving).1
Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 계십시오.	Good bye (to someone staying).1
ancu	안주	relish [taken with liquor], sidedish 12
anc-ta (Vi: ancə)	앉다	sits 11-D
ancə iss-ta	앉어 있다	is seated 14-G
anh-ta (Vt: anhe)	안다: 앎어	not 4
Pissaci anhsimnita.	싸가지 앎습니다.	[It] is not expensive. 4
apənim	아버님	father (honored) 14-N
apəci	아버지	father 13-D
aph1-ta (Vi: aphe)	아프다: 아퍼	is sick, hurts 6
acəssi	아저씨	uncle 14-D
acik (Ad)	아직	(not) yet, still 6-N
acu (Ad)	아주	very, extremely 10
acuməni	아주머니	aunt 14-D
achim	아침	morning, breakfast 4-D
onil achim	오늘 아침	this morning 4-D
Achim il məkəssimnita.	아침을 먹었습니다.	I had my breakfast. 12-D
achim siksa	아침 식사	breakfast ('morning meal') 12-D
ahile	아흐레	nine days, the 9th day of the month 6-D
ahın (Num K)	아흔	ninety 5
ahop (Num K)	아홉	nine 5

으

ekkæ	어깨	shoulder 13
eti	어디	where, what place 2
eti e	어디에	where 2
ete (Ad)	어때	where 2
etup-ta (Vi: etuwæ)	어둡다: 어두워	is dark 10-D
ettæh-ta (Vi: ettæhæ)	어떻게다: 어떻게 해	how is? 4
ettæn	어떤	what kind of 5
I kæs i ettæhsimnikka?	이것이 어떻게습니까?	How is this? 4
ettæhke (Ad)	어떻게	how?, in what way? 1
el-ta (Vi: elæ)	얼다: 얼어	freezes 18-D
elım	얼음	ice 12-D
elım mul	얼음 물	ice water 12-D
eli-ta (Vi: elyæ)	어리다 : 어쩍	is young, is childish 14
elkul	얼굴	face 13
elyæp-ta (Vi: elyæwæ)	어렵다: 어렵워	is difficult 5-D
elma	얼마	how much, what price 4
elma imnikka?	얼마입니까?	How much is it? 4
elma na kəllimnikka?	얼마나 걸립니까?	How long does it take? 7
elma tongan	얼마 동안	for how long, for some time 15-N
eməni	어머니	mother 13-G
emənim	어머님	mother (honored) 14-N
emma	엄마	mammy, mother 17
ənı (D)	어느	which, a certain 2
ənı kæs	어느 것	which one? 2
ənı hwesa esə	어느 회사에서	at some company 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

enni	언니	older sister (of female) 14-D
ence	언제	when 5-D
ence tinci	언제든지	anytime 12
eps-ta (Vi: əpsə)	없다: 없어	does not exist, does not have 5
əsə	어서	quickly, please 4
əsə osipsiyo.	어서 오십시오.	Please come in. 4
əce	어제	yesterday 4
으		
o (Num Ch)	오	five 4
o-ta (Vi: wa)	오다: 와	comes 2-G
olin (D)	오른	right 2
olin ccok	오른 쪽	the right (side) 2-N
olæ	오래	a long time
Olæ kan man imnita.	오래간만입니다.	(I haven't seen you for a long time.), Long time no see. 8
olæ tongan	오래 동안	for a long time 8-N
olla o-ta (Vi: olla wa)	올라 오다: 올라 와	comes up 7-G
olla ka-ta (Vi: olla ka)	올라 가다: 올라 가	goes up 7-G
olh-ta (Vi: olha)	올다: 올 아	is right 18-N
onil	오늘	today 4
onto	온도	temperature 18-D
oppa	오빠	older brother (of female) 14-D
os	옷	clothes, dresses 4-D
ohu	오후	afternoon 4-D
onil ohu	오늘 오후	this afternoon 4-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

	<u>u</u>	
uyu	우유	milk 12-D
uli	우리	we, our 14
uli kacok	우리 가족	our family 14
untong	운동	physical exercise, sport 9-D
untong-ha-ta (Vi: untong-hæ)	운동하다: 운동해	takes exercises, plays [balls] 9-D
untongcang	운동장	playground 16-D
uncensu	운전수	driver 16-D
uphyænkuk	우편국	post office 3-D
	<u>i</u>	
lywan	의원	congressman, member of the National Assembly 16-D
il/lil (P)	을/를	
Sænsæng in muæs il hasimnikka?	선생은 무엇을 하십니까?	What do you do? 1
Yænge lil mal-hamnita.	영어를 말합니다.	I speak English. 1-G
ilo/lo (P)	으로/로	
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	왼쪽으로 가십시오.	to, as, by 2
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	Go to the left. 2
pæ lo	배로	as a diplomat 7
imsik	음식	by ship 7
imsikcæm	음식점	food 7-D
in/nin (P)	은/는	restaurant 10-D
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.	제 이름은 제임스입니다.	as far 1
Cæ nin haksæng imnita.	저는 학생입니다.	My name is James. 1
Sænsæng in muæs il hasimnikka?	선생은 무엇을 하십니까?	I'm a student. 1-G
inhæng	은행	What are YOU doing? 1-G
		bank 2-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

lysa	의사	medical doctor 8-D
iyca	의자	chair 2-D
ing (Ad)	응	yes (plain speech) 17
I	이 ⁱ	Lee (family name) 1-D
i (Num Ch)	이	two 4
i (D)	이	this 2
i	이	tooth 13
i/ka (P)	이/가	
tesakwan i	대사관이	the embassy (as subject) 2
Tesakwan i eti e	대사관이 어디에	Where is the embassy? 2
issimnikka?	있습니까?	
i-ta (Copula: iye or iye)	이다: 이에: 이여	
elma iye yo?	얼마예요?	How much is [it]? 5
iyaki	이야기	story 17 (see <u>yæki</u>)
iyaki-ha-ta (iyaki-hæ)	이야기하다: 이야기해	speaks, talks, tells
Sænsæng e tæhæ sê iyaki	선생에게 대해서 이야기	I heard about you. 17
tilæssimnita.	들었습니다.	
il	일	work, job 6
il-ha-ta (il-hæ)	일하다: 일해	works 3-G
il cali	일 자리	job 16-D
il (DN)	일	experience, fact
Cungkuk imsik il mæka	중국 음식을 먹어 본	Have you ever eaten Chinese
pon il i issimnikka?	일이 있습니까?	food? 13
il (Num Ch)	일	one 4
il (C)	일	day
il-il	일이	the 1st day of the month 6
ilato (P)	이라도	18-G (see <u>lato</u>)

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

iləna-ta (Vi: iləna)	일어나다: 일어나	gets up 12-D
iləh-ta (Vi: ilə or iləhæ)	이렇다: 이태: 이터해	is like this
ilən nalssi	이런 날씨	this kind of weather 18
ili-ta (Vi: ille)	이르다: 이르	is early
ilin yəlim	이른 여름	early summer 18
ilim	이름	name 1
ilhın/ilin (Num K)	이른/이른	seventy 5
ile	이레	seven days, the 7th day of the month 6-D
Ilyoil	일요일	Sunday 6-D
ilk-ta (Vt: ilkə)	읽다: 읽어	reads 1-D
ilkop (Num K)	일곱	seven 5
ilki	이기	weather 15 (see <u>nalssi</u>)
Ilpon	일본	Japan 1-G
Ilpon mal	일본 말	Japanese (language) 1-D
Ilpon salam	일본 사람	Japanese 1-G
Ilponə	일본어	Japanese (language) 8-D
ilsang (D)	일상	daily 4
ilsang yongphum	일상용품	daily necessities, daily things 4
ilcciki (Ad)	이찌기	early 11-D
imnita (Copula)	입니다:	(see <u>i-ta</u>)
Kim Kisu imnita.	김 기수 입니다.	[I] am Kisu Kim.
insa-ha-ta (Vi: insa-hæ)	인사하다: 인사해	greet 9-D
insa-kwa	인사과	personnel section
insa-kwacang	인사과장	personnel section chief, personnel officer 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ina (P)	이나	10 (see <u>na</u>)
Into	인도	India 6-D
ip	입	mouth 13
ip-ta (Vt: ipə)	입다: 입어	puts on (clothes), dresses
ipə po-ta (ipə pwa)	입어 보다: 입어 봐	tries on (clothes) 7-G
ipku	입구	the entrance 16-D
itta (Ad)	이따	later (on the same day) 11
Itta mannapsita.	이따 만납시다.	See you later. 11
ithil	이틀	two days, the 2nd day of the month 6-D
Ithæli	이태리	Italy 6-D
Ithælie	이태리어	Italian 8-D
ippal	이빨	tooth 13 (see <u>i</u>)
isa	이사	moving (house)
isa-ha-ta (isa-hæ)	이사하다: 이사해	moves (house, office, etc.) 14
iss-ta (Vt: issə)	있다: 있어	exists, is
Cal issimnita.	잘 있습니다.	[I]'m fine. (lit. '[I] exists well.') 1
icim	이즘	these days 8 (see <u>yocim</u>)
ingkhɪ	잉크	ink 7-G
ihæ	이해	understanding
ihæ-ha-ta (ihæ-hæ)	이해하다: 이해해	understand, comprehends 18-D
e (P)	에	to
Səul yək e kamnita.	서울역에 갑니다.	I'm going to the Seoul Station. 3
e (P)	의	of, -'s 1
cə e ilim	저의 이름	my name 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

e (P)	에	at, on, in 2-G
eke (P)	에게	to (someone)
Ki chæk il na eke ilke cusipsiyo.	그 책을 나에게 읽어 주십시오.	Please read me the book. 11-G
ekesə (P)	에게서	from (someone) 13
əmeni ekəsə	어머니에게서	from mother 13-G
esə (P)	에서	from, at, in 3
Yəki esə mənnikka?	여기에서 먼지까?	Is [it] far from here? 3
Kyosil esə konpu-hamnita.	교실에서 공부 합니다.	[We] study in the classroom. 3-G
ㄹ		
ya (P)	야	only when, only if 11-G
Puchie ya hamnita.	부쳐야 합니다.	[I] have to mail. 11
yakpang	약방	drugstore 10-D
yaksok	약속	appointment, date, promise 17
yaksok-ha-ta (yaksok-hæ)	약속 하다: 약속 해	promises, makes an appointment 17-N
yachæ	야채	vegetable 13
yangnyem	양념	seasoning 13
yangmal	양말	sock(s), stocking(s) 4-D
yangpok	양복	suit(s) 4-D
yangsik	양식	western food 12-D
yangsikcəm	양식집	western restaurant 13
yək	역	railroad station 3
yəki	여기	here, this place 2-D
yəki e	여기에	here
Yəki e issımnita.	여기에 있습니다.	[It]'s here. 2-D
Yəki issımnita.	여기 있습니다.	Here you are! 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yəkwən	여관	inn, hotel 2
yəksa	역사	history 9-D
yətəl - yətə(1)p (Num K)	여덟 - 여덟	eight 5
yətɪle	여드레	eight days, the 8th day of the month 6-D
yətɪn (Num K)	여든	eighty 5
yə-tongsəng	여동생	younger sister 16-D
yəl (Num K)	열	ten 5
yəl-ta (Vt: yələ)	열다: 열어	opens 11-D
yələ (D)	여러	several, many 4
yələ kaci	여러 가지	several kinds 4
yəlɪm	여름	summer 15
yəlɦɪl	열흘	ten days, the 10th day of the month 6-D
yənphil	연필	pencil 2-D
yənsɪp	연습	practice 9
yənsɪp-ha-ta (Vt: yənsɪp-hæ)	연습하다: 연습해	practises 9-N
yənha-ta (Vi: yənhæ)	연하다: 연해	is tender (meat) 13-D
Yəpose yo!	여보세요!	Hello there!, Say! 3
Yəposipsiyol	여보십시오!	Hello there! 3-N (see <u>Yəpose yo.</u>)
yeph	옆	the side 2
yeph e	옆에	beside, (near)by 2
Sichəng yeph e issɪmnita.	시청 옆에 있습니다.	[It] ₂ 's next to the City Hall.
yəsəs (Num K)	여섯	six 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yessæ	엿새	six days, the 6th day of the month 6-D
yæca	여자	woman 1-D
yæhæŋ	여행	travelling, trip 15
yæhæŋ-ha-ta (yæhæŋ-hæ)	여행하다: 여행해	makes a trip, travels 15
yæŋg	영	zero 16 (see <u>kong</u>)
Yæŋgæ	영어	English 1-G
Yæŋguk	영국	England 1-G
Yæŋguk salam	영국 사람	Englishman 1-G
yæŋgsa	영사	consul 7-D
yæŋgsakwan	영사관	consulate 7-D
Yæŋg-Han	영한	English-Korean, British-Korean 5
yæŋghwa	영화	movies 9
Yi	이	Lee (family name) 1-D
yo (Particle)	요	4-G
Chænman e yo.	천만에요.	Not at all. 2
yoil (PN)	요일	week-day
musin yoil	무슨 요일	what day of the week 6
yosæ	요새	these days 8
yocim	요즘	lately, these days 1
yongphum	용품	items 4
ilsang yongphum	일상 용품	daily necessities 4
yuk (Num Ch)	육	six 4
yukci	육지	the land (in contrast to sea) 15-D
yunyæŋ	유명	fame
yunyæŋ-han salam	유명한 사람	famous man 15-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yepo	예보	forecast 18
yeppi-ta (Vi: yeppe)	예쁘다: 예뻐	is pretty 5-D
yesun (Num K)	예순	sixty 5
wa/kwa (P)	와/과 ^W	with, and 4
na wa kathi	나와 같이	with me 4
chæk kwa yønphil	책과 연필	book and pencil 4-G
waisyassi	와이셔츠	dress shirt 4-D
wanhæng (cha)	완행(차)	local (train) 10-D
wihəm-ha-ta (Vi: wihəm-hæ)	위험하다	is dangerous, is in danger 17-D
wəl (C)	월	
Sam-wəl	삼월	March 6
wallæ (Ad)	원래	originally, formerly 14
Wəlyoil	월요일	Monday 6-D
Wellam	월남	Vietnam 6-D
wən (C)	원	Won (Korean monetary unit) 4
o-sip wən	오십 원	₩50 4
wənha-ta (Vt: wən hæ)	원하다: 원해	wants 4
we-ta (Vt: wee <u>or</u> wewə)	외다: 외어: 외워	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D
we e	외에	besides, not only (see <u>pakk e</u>)
hyəng nim we e	형님외에	besides an older brother 14-N
wekyokwan	외교관	diplomat, foreign service personnel 3
wekuk	외국	foreign country
wekukə	외국 어	foreign language 8-D
Wemupu	외무부	Ministry of Foreign Affairs (Korea) 3-1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

wen (D)	왼	left 2
wen ccok ilo	왼쪽으로	to the left 2
wehwan	외환	foreign currency 16
wæ (Ad)	왜	why 6
Wæsik	왜식	Japanese food 12-D
ka (P)	가 ^k	2 (see i)
Hakkyo ka issimnita.	학교가 있습니다.	There is a school. ('A school exists.') 2-G
ka-ta (Vi: ka)	가다: 가	goes 1
Annyŏngŭhi kasipsiyo.	안녕히 가십시오.	Good bye (to someone leaving). 1
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	왼쪽으로 가십시오.	Go to the left. 2
kail	가을	autumn 15
kakkap-ta (Vi: kakkawə)	가깝다: 가까이	is near 3
kakkai	가까이	a nearby place 11
kakkai (Ad)	가까이	nearby, at the nearby place 3-D
kakkim (Ad)	가끔	sometimes 9
kath-ta (Vi: kathə)	같다: 같어	is the same 5-D
kathi (Ad)	같이	together, with
Na wa kathi kapsita.	나와 같이 갑시다.	Lets go with me. 4
kathi (P)	같이	as, like
Nyuyok kathi	뉴욕 같이	like New York 18-N
kalak	가락	spindle
son kalak	손가락	finger 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
cəs kalak	젓가락	chopsticks 13
sut kalak	술가락	(Korean) spoon 13
kalu	가루	powder 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kalichi-ta (Vt: kalichie)	가르칩니다: 가르쳐	teaches 1-D
kamsa	감사	gratitude
kamsa-ha-ta (Vi: kamsa-hae)	감사하다: 감사해	is grateful 2
Kamsa-hamnita.	감사합니다.	Thank you. 2
kantan	간단	simplicity
kantan-ha-ta (Vi: kantan-hae)	간단하다: 간단해	is simple 8-D
kancang	간장	(soy) sauce 13
kapang	가방	briefcase 13-D
kapyep-ta (Vi: kapyewa)	가볍다: 가벼워	is light (in weight) 10-D
kap(s)	값	price 4
cip kaps	집 값	rent, the price of a house 4-D
kapcak1 (Ad)	갑자기	suddenly 17-D
kasim	가슴	chest 13-D
kacang (Ad)	가장	best, most
Kacang ppalimnita.	가장 빠릅니다.	[It]'s fastest. 10
kacok	가족	family, a family member 14
kaci (PN)	가지	sorts, kinds 4
Yale kaci ka issimnita.	여러 가지가 있습니다.	[We] have several kinds. 4
kaci-ta (Vt: kacae)	가지다: 가져	possesses
kacae o-ta	가져 오다	bring (something) 12
kacae ka-ta	가져 가다	takes (something) 12-N
kacae iss-ta	가져 있다	has, is possessing 14-G
kangsa	강사	instructor 8-D
tahak kangsa	대학 강사	college instructor 8-D
kai (Ad)	거의	almost, nearly 11
kai ta	거의 다	almost (all) 11
kaki	거기	there, that place 3

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kəki esə	거기에서	there, at that place, from there 3-G
kəkcəŋ	걱정	worry
kəkcəŋ-ha-ta (Vi&Vt)	걱정하다	worries 17-D
kəl-ta (Vt: kələ)	걸다: 걸어	hangs
cənhwa (lɪl) kəl-ta	전화를 걸다	makes a phone-call 16
kət-ta (Vi: kələ)	걷다: 걸어	walks 10
kələ ka-ta	걸어 가다	walks, goes on foot
Kələ kal kka yo?	걸어 가까요?	Shall we walk? (in contrast to taking an automobile) 11
kələ sə	걸어서	on foot 10
kəli	거리	street 17-D
kəlli-ta (Vi: kəllɔ)	걸리다: 걸력	takes (time) 7
(Sikan i) han sikan kəllimnita.	(시간이) 한 시간 걸립니다.	It takes an hour. 7-D
kəm-ta (Vi: kəmə)	검다: 검어	is dark 4-D
kənmul	건물	building 2
kənnə-ta (Vt: kənnə)	건너다: 건너	crosses
kənnən kil	건넌길	the street where you can cross 11-D
kil kənnə	길 건너	across the street 11-D
kəs (PN)	것	(thing) 2
ce kəs	저것	that (thing) (over there) 2
Ce kəs in muəs imnikka?	저것은 무엇입니까?	What is that? 2
ko (P)	고	
əti e kanta ko mal- həssurnikka?	어디에 간다고 말했습니까?	Did [he] say where [he] is going? 17-G
koyangi	고양이	cat 5-G
koki	고기	meat 13
kot (Ad)	곧	soon, immediately 11
kotanha-ta (Vi: kotanhə)	코단하다: 코단해	is tired, is fatigued 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

koting (D)	고등	higher
koting hakkyo	고등 학교	high school 10-D
kolmok	곶목	corner (of the street) 11-D
komap-ta (Vi: komawə)	고맙다: 고마워	is grateful 1
Komapsimnita.	고맙습니다.	Thank you. 1
komthang	곰탕	(soup with rice and meet) 12
koppu	고배	cup 13
kophi-ta (Vi: kopha)	고프다: 고평	('is empty')
Pæ ka kophimnita.	배가 고프니다.	I'm hungry. 12
kos (PN)	곳	place
kakkaun kos	가까운 곳	a nearby place 12
kocang	고장	mechanical trouble
kocang-na-ta (Vi: kocang-na)	고장나다	is out of order 17-D
kochi-ta (Vt: kochia)	고치다	fixes, repairs 17-D
kochu	고추	red pepper 13
kochu kalu	고추 가루	(red pepper powder) 13
kohyang	고향	home town, native town 14
Kohyang i eti ise yo?	고향이 어디이세요?	Where do you come from?(H) 14
kong	공	zero 16
kong	공	ball 16-D
kongwən	공원	park 2-D
kongmuwən	공무원	civil servant 7-D
kongpo	공보	public information 2
kongpowən	공보원	information office 2
Mikuk Kongpowən	미국 공보원	USIS 2
kongpokwan	공보관	information officer 7-G
kongpu	공부	studying 1
kongpu-ha-ta (kongpu-hæ)	공부하다: 공부해	studies 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kongcang	공장	factory 18-D
kongchæk	공책	notebook 4-D
ku (Num Ch)	구	nine 4
kuk	국	soup 13
kukyǽng	구경	sightseeing, show 9
Kukmusǽng	국무성	State Department (U.S.) 13-D
Kukpangpu	국방부	Ministry of National Defence (Korea) 13-D
Kukpangsǽng	국방성	the Defense Department (U.S.) 13-D
kukcang	국장	bureau chief 16-D
kukce	국제	international 9
Kukce K1kcang	국제극장	International Theatre 9
Kukhwe	국회	National Assembly, Congress, Parliament 13-D
kutu	구두	shoe(s) 4-D
Kulapha	구타파	Europe 6-D
kulim	구름	cloud
kulim i kki-ta	구름이 끼다	clouds up 18-D
kunin	군인	soldier, military man 7-D
kuntæ	군대	military 7
k1 (D)	그	that, the 2-G
k1 kæs	그것	that (thing), it 2
K1 kæs in yǽkwan imnita.	그것은 여관입니다.	It's an inn. 2
k1kcang	극장	theatre 3-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kiləh-ta (Vi: kilæ or kiləhæ)	그렇다: 그래: 그래해	is so, is such 1
Kiləhsımnita.	그렇습니다.	It's so., That's right. 1
Kiləhsımnikka?	그렇습니까?	Is that so?, Is that right? 1
kiləm (Ad)	그럼	then, if so 4 (see <u>kilyəmyen</u>)
kiləna (Ad)	그러나	but, however 5
kilən kəs	그런 것	such a thing 8
kilənte	그런데	by the way 8
kiləha-ta (Vi: kiləhæ)	그리하다: 그리해	is so, does so 4 (see <u>kiləh-ta</u>)
kiləhke (Ad)	그렇게	so, in such a way 9
kiləmyen (Ad)	그러면	if so, then 5 (see <u>kiləm</u>)
kiləhci man	그렇지만	however, nevertheless 9
kiləse	그래서	therefore, so 9
kilis	그릇	container, dish 13
kili (Ad)	그리	(not) so, like that 4
Kili pissaci anhsımnita.	그리 비싸지 않습니다.	[It]'s not so expensive. 4
kiliko (Ad)	그리고	and 5
kilim	그림	picture, painting 4-D
kilphi	그피	two days after tomorrow 6-D
kilsse (Ad)	글쎄	well, maybe 4
Kilsse yo.	글쎄요.	Well. 4
kimantu-ta (Vi: kimantwə)	그만두다: 그만두	stops (doing), quits 11-D
Kimyoil	금요일	Friday 6-D
kimnyen	금년	this year 6-D
kinmu	근무	(paid) service

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kinmu-ha-ta (Vi: kinmu-hæ)	근무 하다: 근무 해	works, is employed 8
kiphæng(cha)	급행(차)	express (train) 10-D
kice (Ad) Kice kiləhsımnita.	그저 그저 그렇습니다.	just 1 Just so so. 1
kıcəkke	그저께	the day before yesterday 4-D
kitali-ta (Vt: kitaliə) Kitalinin kəs i cohkessımnita.	기다리다: 기다려 기다리는 것이 좋겠습니다.	waits (for) 9 [You]'d better wait. ('That you wait will be good.') 11
kil	길	street, road 2-D
ki(1)-ta (Vi: kilə)	길다: 길어	is long, is lengthy 10-D
Kim Kim Kisu	김 김 기수	(a family name) 1 (a full name) 1
Kimchi	김치	(pickled vegetable) 13-D
kipun	기분	feeling 13
kisa	기사	article, column 17-D
kisangtæ	기상대	weather bureau, weatherman 18
kisuksa	기숙사	dormitory 13-D
kica sinmun kica	기자 신문 기자	reporter 8-D journalist 8-D
kicha	기차	train 7-G
kihu	기후	climate, weather 15
kihwe	기회	chance, opportunity 16-D
kæ (C) Yənpil han kæ cuse yo.	개 연필 한 개 주세요.	Please give a pencil. 5-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kæ	개	dog 5-G
kæi-ta (Vi: kæie)	개이다: 개여	(weather) clears up 18
kwa (PN) Wehwan Kwa	과 외환과	department, section the Foreign Currency Department 16
kwanha-ta (Vi: kwanhæ) kwanhæ sɐ sənsəŋ e kwanhæ sɐ	관하다: 관해 관해서 선생에게 관해서	is concerned concerning, about 17 (see <u>təhæ sɐ</u>) about you 17
kwacang	과장	department chief 16-D
kwɪ	귀	ear 13
kwa (P)	과	with, and 4 (see <u>wa</u>)
kwail	과일	fruit 13
kwasil	과실	fruit 13
kwən (C) Yəŋgə chæk tu kwən	권 영어 책 두 권	volume of two English books 5-G
kwəŋchanh-ta (Vi: kwəŋchanhɐ) (Aniyo), kwəŋchanhsimnita.	괜찮다: 괜찮어 아니요, 괜찮습니다.	is OK, is alright 1 Not at all., That's OK., It's not bad. 1
kyəul	겨울	winter 15
kyəlan	계란	egg 13 (see <u>talkyal</u>)
kyəŋchal kyəŋchalkwan kyəŋchalsɐ	경찰 경찰관 경찰서	police policeman 8-D police station 10-D
kyəlhon kyəlhon-ha-ta (Vi: kyəlhon-hæ)	결혼 결혼하다: 결혼해	marriage gets married, has a wedding 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kyəŋghəm	경험	experience 18-D
kyesi-ta (Vi: kyesie)	게시다: 게시	is, exists, stays (honored) 1 (see <u>iss-ta</u>)
Annyəŋghi kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 계십시오.	Good bye (to someone staying). 1
kyesok	계속	continuation
kyesok-ha-ta (Vi: kyesok-hæ)	계속 하다: 계속 해	continues, lasts 18
kyehwek	계획	plans 18
Tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita.	등산 할 계획입니다.	[I]'m planning to hike. 18
kyothong	교통	traffic, transportation 10-D
Kyothong i pəncaphamnita.	교통이 번잡합니다.	The traffic is jammed. 10-D
kyosu	교수	professor 8-D
kyosil	교실	classroom 2-D
kyocang	교장	principal (of school) 16-D
kyohwansu	교환수	telephone operator 16
kyohwe	교회	church 10-D
<u>kk</u>		
kka (DN)	가	
Kal kka yo?	갈까요?	Shall we go? 5
ssani kka	싸니가	because [it]'s cheap 12
kkamah-ta (Vi: kkamæ)	가맴다: 가매	is black 4-N
kkaman sæk	가만색	black color 4-D
kkaci (P)	까지	as far as, to, until, by 7
Mikuk kkaci	미국까지	as far as America 7
næil kkaci	내일까지	by tomorrow 7-G
kkok (Ad)	꼭	exactly, without fail, by all means 15
kkolphi	골프	golf 18-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kkith	끝	the end, the ending
kkith-machi-ta (Vt: kkith-machio)	끝 마칩니다: 끝 마쳐	finishes, completes 14-D
kkith-na-ta (Vi: kkith-na)	끝 나다: 끝 나	ends, is over 6-D
kkith-nae-ta (Vt: kkith-nae)	끝 내다: 끝 내	finishes, completes 8-D
kkækkitha-ta (Vi: kkækkithæ)	깨끗하다: 깨끗해	is clean 18-G

kh

khal	칼	knife 5-D
kho	코	nose 13
khokhakhola	코카콜라	coca cola 12-D
khokhoa	코코아	cocoa 12-D
khong	콩	beans 12
khi-ta (Vi: khø)	크다: 커	is big 5
khin chæk	큰 책	a big book 5
khi-ta (Vi: khø)	크다: 커	grows up, 15-D
khiki	크기	size 16-D
khike (Ad)	크게	loudly 16
khi	키	height (of person) 18
khi ka khi-ta	키가 크다	is tall 18-D

n

na	나	I 1 (see cə)
na e	나의	my 1 (see cə e)
na-ta (Vi: na)	나다: 나	comes out
Hæ ka nanta.	해가 난다.	Sun shines. 18-D
Khin il nassimnita.	큰 일이 납니다.	('[I] have a big problem.') 18

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

na/ina (P)	나/이나	
ppəsi na cəncha	버스가 전차	bus or streetcar 10
muəs ina	무엇이나	anything 12
nai	나이	age 14
Nai ka manhsumnita.	나이가 많습 니다.	[He] is old. 14
Nai ka cəksumnita.	나이가 적습 니다.	[He] is young. 14
na o-ta (Vt-Vi: na wa)	나 오 타: 나 와	comes out, graduates 7-G
ənce hakkyo lil na	언제 학교를 나	When did you finish school? 15
wassumnikka?	왔습 니 까?	
na ka-ta (Vi: na ka)	나 가 타: 나 가	goes out 9
nakksi-cil	낚 시질	fishing
nakksi-cil-ha-ta	낚 시질 하 다	does fishing 18-D
nal	날	day 6-D
nala	나라	country, nation 10-D
nalssi	날씨	weather 15 (see <u>ilki</u>)
Nam-Mi	남미	South America 6-D
Nampu	남부	the Southern part, the South (U.S.) 15-D
namphən	남편	husband 14-D
Nam-Han	남한	South Korea 6-D
namtongsəng	남 동생	younger brother 16-D
nappita (Vi: nappə)	나쁘 다: 나빠	is bad 4-N
nac	낮	daytime, noontime
nac e	낮에	in the daytime 6-D
nac-ta (Vi: nacə)	낮 다: 낮어	is low 10-D
nah-ta (Vi: naha)	낳 다: 낳아	is born, gives a birth 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nahil	나흘	four days, the 4th day of the month 6-D
ne	너	you (plain speech) 17-G
nei	너희	you (plural in plain speech) 17-G
nək (Num K) nək tal pan	네 네 달 반	(see <u>ne(s)</u>) four months and a half 8-D
nəlp-ta (Vi: nəlpə)	넓다: 넓어	is wide 5-D
nəmu (Ad) Nəmu nɪcsɪmnita.	너무 너무 늦습니다.	too [It]'s too late. 11
nəngnəkha-ta (Vi: nəngnəkhæ)	넉넉하다: 넉넉해	is enough 13
nəh-ta (Vt: nəhə)	넣다: 넣어	puts in, deposits 16-N (see <u>noh-ta</u>)
nola(h)-ta (Vi: nolæ) nolan sæk	노랗다: 노랗 노란 색	is yellow 4 yellow color 4
nolla-ta (Vi: nolla)	놀라다: 놀라	is surprised 13-G
noph-ta (Vi: nopha)	높다: 높아	is high 10-D
noh-ta (Vt: noha) Cəke nohassɪmnita.	놓다: 놓아 적어 놓았습니다.	places, puts 16-G (see <u>tu-ta</u>) I jot it down (for future use). 16-G
nongpu	농부	farmer 17-D
nongcang	농장	farm 15-D
nui	누이	sister (for male siblings)
nui tongsæng	누이 동생	younger sister 14
nuku	누구	who, what person 3
nuka	누가	who (subject) 3-N
nuku lil	누구를	whom 3-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nuləh-ta (Vi: nulæ)	누렇다: 누래	is yellowish 4-D
nun	눈	eyes 13
nun	눈	snow
Nun i omnita.	눈이 옵니다.	It snows. 15
nunim	누님	older sister (of male) 14-D
nil (Ad)	늘	all the time, always 9
nili-ta (Vi: nilyæ)	느리다: 느려	is slow 10-D
ni(1)k-ta (Vi: nilkə)	늙다: 늙어	is old, is aged 14-N
nan (P)	는	as for 1 (see <u>in</u>)
nīc-ta (Vi: nīcə)	늦다: 늦어	is late 11
nīcke/nīkke/ (Ad)	늦게	late 10-D
nim	님	sweet-heart, lover 14-N
nim (PN)	님	
pumo nim	부모님	parents (honored) 14-N
ne (Ad)	네	yes 1
Ne?	네?	Beg your pardon!, Pardon me. 16-N
Ne....?	네....?	Is that right? 18
ne ka	네가	you (subject in plain speech) 17-G
nekthai	넥타이	neck-tie 4-D
ne(s) (Num K)	네	four 5
ne kəli	네거리	crossroad 11-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

næ ka	내가	I (subject) 1 (see <u>ce ka</u>)
næil	내일	tomorrow 4-D
næli-ta (Vi: næliə)	내리다: 내리	gets off, descends 7-N
næliə cu-ta (Vt: næliə cuə) Næliə cusipsiyo.	내려 주 다: 내려 주 어 내려 주 십시요.	drops [someone] off Please drop [me] off. 11
næliə o-ta (Vi: næliə wa)	내려 오 다: 내려 와	comes down 7-G
næliə ka-ta (Vi: næliə ka)	내려 가 다: 내려 가	goes down 7-G
nænæ (Ad) achim nænæ	내내 아침 내내	all the way all morning 18-D
næ-nyen	내 년	next year 6-D
naphukhin	냅꾸킨	napkins 13-D
næsən	내선	(telephone-line) extension 17-D
nængmyen	냉면	(cold noodle) 12
ta	타 ^t	all 9
taim	다음	next, next time 5
taim cip	다음 집	the next door 5
tat-ta (Vt: tatə)	닫다: 닫어	closes 11-D
ta(1)-ta (Vi: talə)	달다: 달어	is sweet, is sugary 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tal	달	month, moon 6
tali-ta (Vi: talla) talin kəs	다르다: 달라 다른 것	is different 5 different one, other one 5
tali	다리	leg 13
tali	다리	bridge 10-D
ta(1)k ta(1)k koki	닭 닭 고기	chicken chicken 13
talkyal	달걀	egg 13 (see <u>kyalan</u>)
tampæ	담배	cigarettes, tobacco 4-D
tanə	단어	word 17-D
tani-ta (Vi: taniə) Hakkyo e tanimnita.	다니다: 다녀 학교에 다닙니다.	attends (school) [I]'m attending school. 8
tapang	다방	tearoom 3-D
tasəs (Num K)	다섯	five 5
tasi (Ad) Tasi (hanpən) malssim hasipsiyo.	다시 다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.	again 3 Please say it again. 3
tassæ	닷새	five days, the 5th day of the month 6-D
tah-ta (Vi: taha)	닿다: 닿아	arrives 6-N
tahæng tahæng-ha-ta (Vi: tahæng-hæ) A, tahæng imnita.	다행 다행하다: 다행해 아, 다행입니다.	fortunate thing is fortunate 16 Oh, that's fortunate. 16
tə (Ad) Tə ssamnita. tə ssan kəs	더 더 쌉니다. 더 싼 것	more 5 [It]'s cheaper. 5 cheaper one 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

təkpun	덕분	favor, mercy 1
təkpun e	덕분에	(at your favor) 1
Təkpun e cal cinamnita.	덕분에 잘 지냅니다.	I'm doing fine, thank you. 1
tal (Ad)	덜	less
tal əlyəwn mal	덜 어려운 말	(a) less difficult language 5-G
təp-ta (Vi: təwə)	덥다: 더워	is hot 13
to (P)	도	also, too 1, even though 10
puin to	부인도	your wife also 1
na to	나도	me too 4
isse to	있어도	even though there is 10
toyaci	도야지	pig
toyaci koki	도야지 고기	pork 13 (see <u>tweci</u>)
Tokil	독일	Germany 1-D
Tokile	독일어	German (language) 8-D
tol-ta (Vi: tola)	돌다: 돌아	turns, make a turn 11-D
tola o-ta (Vi: tola wa)	돌아 오다: 돌아 와	comes back 7-G
tola ka-ta (Vi: tola ka)	돌아 가다: 돌아 가	goes back 7 passes away 11-G
tola po-ta (Vt: tola pwa)	돌아 보다: 돌아 봐	looks back 12-G
tollita (Vi: tolliə)	돌리다: 돌려	rotates, switches, turns around 16
ton	돈	money 7-G
top-ta (Vt: towa)	돕다: 도와	helps
towa cu-ta (Vt: towa cuə)	도와 주다: 도와 주 어	gives help, gives a helping hand 7-G
tosəkwān	도서관	library 10-D
tosi	도시	city, urban community 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tohweci	도회지	metropolitan area, city 15-D
tongan (PN) Yətə(1)p sikan tongan il-hamnita. Kulapha e issnin tongan	동안 여덟 시간이 동안 일합니다. 구라파에 있는 동안	for, during, while [I] work for eight hours. 6 while [I] was in Europe 15
tongyo	동료	colleague, co-worker 13-D
Tongpu	동부	the East (U.S.), the eastern part 15-D
tongmul tongmulwən	동물 동물원	animal zoo ('animal house') 10-D
tongsæng	동생	a younger sibling 14
tu(1) (Num K)	둘	two 5
tu-ta (Vt: tuə) tuə iss-ta Cəke tuəssimnita.	두 다: 두 어 두 어 있다 적어 두었습니다.	places, puts is being placed 14-G [I] wrote it down (for future use). 16-G
tıl (PN) kı kes tıl ta tıl	들 그 것들 다들	they, those (things) 10 all, everybody 14
tı(1)-ta (Vt: tılə) əsə tisipsiyo.	들다: 들 어 어서 드십시오.	eats or drinks (food), lifts Please help yourself. 13
tıt-ta (Vt: tılə)	들다: 들 어	listens to, hears 9
tılə o-ta (Vi: tılə wa).	들 어 오다: 들 어 와	comes in 7-G
tılə ka-ta (Vi: tılə ka)	들 어 가다: 들 어 가	goes in 7-G
tılə ka po-ta (Vi: tılə ka pwa)	들 어 가 보다: 들 어 가 봐	enters and sees, goes in to see 12-G
tıllı-ta (Vt: tıllə)	들 르다: 들 러	stops by, drops in 4
tılli-ta (Vi: tıllə)	들 리다: 들 려	is heard, is audible 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tinci/itinci (P)	든지: 이든지	(see <u>itinci</u>)
muəs itinci	무엇이든지	anything 12-G
Yəngə tinci Tokilə	영어든지 독일어	either English or German 12-G
ting (PN)	등	and so on, etc. 12
ting	등	back
Ting i aphimnita.	등이 아픕니다.	I have a backache. 13
tingsan	등산	hiking
tingsan-ha-ta (Vi: tingsan-hæ)	등산하다: 등산해	hikes 18
te (PN)	메	place 10-D
kakkaun te	가까운 메	nearby place 12
tæ (C)	대	
catongcha tu tæ	자동차 두 대	two automobiles 6-G
tæk	댁	your home, home (honored) 4
tækæ (Ad)	대개	usually, generally 6
tætanhī (Ad)	대단히	very 2
tæthongyæŋ	대통령	the President 8-D
tælo (P)	대로	
malm tælo	마음 대로	as one pleases, as you like 16-D
ki tælo	그 대로	as it is
Tæman	대만	Formosa, Taiwan 6-D
tæmun	대문	gate 11-D
tæsa	대사	ambassador 7-G
tæsakwan	대사관	embassy 2
tæhak	대학	college 8-D
tæhakwən	대학원	graduate school 15-G
tæhakwən kongpu	대학원 공부	graduate studies 15-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tæhakkyo	대학교	university 10-D
tæha-ta (Vt: tæhæ) kihu e tæhæ sɐ	대하다: 대해 기후에 대해서	faces, confronts with concerning (or about) the weather 15
Tæhan Minkuk	대한민국	the Republic of Korea 17-D
twe-ta (Vi: tweə) Sam nyən tweæssimnita. Sənsəŋ i tweæssimnita.	되다: 되어 삼년 되었습니다. 선생이 되었습니다.	becomes, has been It's been 3 years. 8 [He] has become a teacher. 8-N
tweci tweci koki	돼지 돼지 고기	pig pork ('pig meat') 13
twi twi e Cip twi e issimnita.	뒤 뒤에 집 뒤에 있습니다.	back, rear 2-D behind, in back of [It]'s behind the house. 2-D
ttattɪtha-ta (Vi: ttattɪthæ)	^{tt} 따뜻하다: 따뜻해	is warm 15
ttal	딸	daughter 14
(ttala) we-ta	따라 외다	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D (see <u>we-ta</u>)
ttanim	따님	your daughter (honored) 14-N
ttəna-ta (Vt: ttəna) Ttənaləyəkɔ hamnita.	떠나다: 떠나 떠나려고 합니다.	leaves 6 [I]'s going to leave. 7
tto (Ad) Tto pwepkessimnita. Tto talin kəs i philyo-hamnikka?	또 또 봅니다. 또 다른 것이 필요 합니까?	again 1 So long., See you again. 1 Do you need anything else? 5
ttokttokha-ta (Vi: ttokttokhæ)	똑똑하다: 똑똑해	is intelligent, is bright 17-G
ttokpalo (Ad)	똑바로	straight, straight ahead 3
ttikəp-ta (Vi: ttikəwə)	뜨겁다: 뜨거워	is hot (solid, liquid) 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ttæ (PN)	때	time, occasion, when
ki ttæ (e)	그 때(에)	(at) that time 7
ttæ ttæ lo	때때때로	occasionally 9-D
hakkyo e kal ttæ (e)	학교에 갈 때(에)	when [I] go to school 14-G
ttwi-ta (Vi: ttwie)	뛰다: 뛰어	runs 18-G
Tækæ ttwie kamnita.	대개 뛰어서 갑니다.	[I] usually run. ('I usually run and go.') 14-G
tha-ta (Vt: tha)	타다: th 타	rides, gets on 7
thako ka-ta	타고 가다	takes (bus, taxi, etc.) 10
thaiphɿ	타이프	typing
thaiphɿ congɿ	타이프 종이	typing paper 5
thək	턱	chin, jaw 13-D
Thoyoil	토요일	Saturday 6-D
thongyækkwan	통역관	interpreter 8-D
thonghwa	통화	telephone conversation
Thonghwa cung innita.	통화 중입니다.	The line is busy. 16
thɿm	틈	free time, spare time 9
thɿlli-ta (Vi: thɿllie)	틀리다: 틀려	is wrong 18
thipi	티비	television 14-G
thæu-ta (Vt: thæwə)	태우다: 태워	gives a ride (to someone), loads 7-N
thæwə cu-ta (Vt: thæwə cuə)	태워 주다: 태워 주어	gives [someone] a ride 11-N
Thækuk	태국	Tailand 6-D
thækssi	택시	taxi 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

<u>l</u>		
lako (P)	라고	
'Məli ka aphimnita.' lako mal-hæssimnita.	머리가 아픁니다 라고 [He] said, "I have a headache." 말했습니다. 18-G	
lato/ilato (P)	라도/이라도	18-G
muəs ilato	무엇이라도	whatever [it] is 18-G
na lato	나라도	even I 18-G
lætio	라디오	radio 9-D
lo (P)	로	to, as, by 2 (see <u>ilo</u>)
Hakkyo lo kamnita.	학교로 갑니다.	[I] go to school. 2-G
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	as a diplomat 7
pæ lo	배로	by boat 7
lil (P)	를	l (see <u>il</u>)
<u>m</u>		
maim	마음	mind, heart 13-D
maim tælo	마음대로	as one pleases 16-D
moksa	목사	minister (of church) 16-D
mat (D)	말	first
mat atil	말 아들	the first son 14-G
mata (P)	마다	every, each
nal mata	날마다	everyday 8
mal	말	language, utterance, speech, word 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
mal-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: mal-hæ)	말하다: 말해	speaks 1-D
Sacən mal imnikka?	사전 말입니까?	Do you mean a dictionary? 4
mal	말	horse 5-G
ma(l)-ta (Vt: malə)	말다: 말어	not do 11-G
Thaci mapsita.	타지 맙시다.	Let's not ride. 11

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Kaci masipsiyo.	가지 마십시오.	Don't go. 11-G
mali-ta (Vi: mallə) Mok i malimnita.	마르다: 마터 목이 마릅니다.	dries I'm thirsty. ('Throat is dry.'). 12
mali (C) mal ne mali	마리 말 네 마리	head of four heads of horses, four horses 5-G
malk-ta (Vi: malkə)	맑다: 맑어	is clear (water, air, etc.) 18
man (Num Ch)	만	ten-thousands 4
man (P) Mianhaci man Mækcū tu pyəng man kacə osipsiyo.	만 미안하지만 맥주 두 병만 가져 오십시오.	only, just I'm sorry but... 9 Please bring me just two bottles of beer. 12
manna-ta (Vt: manna)	만나다: 만나	meets 3
mannyənphil	만년필	fountain-pen 4-D
manh-ta (Vi: manhə)	많다: 많어	is plenty, are many 9
manhi (Ad)	많이	a lot, much 8-D
mas mas i iss-ta (or coh-ta) mas i əps-ta	맛 맛이있다 (or 좋다) 맛이 없다	taste 13 is delicious 13 is tasteless 13
masi-ta (Vt: masyə)	마시다: 마셔	drinks 10
mac-ta (Vi: macə)	맞다: 맞어	is correct, fits 18-N
mahın (Num K)	마흔	forty 5
mangræ mangræ atıl	마내 마내 아들	the last child 14-N the last son 14-N
mæk-ta (Vt: məkə)	먹다: 먹어	eats 2-G
məkə po-ta (Vt: məkə pwa)	먹어 보다: 먹어 봐	tries (food) 7-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

mə(1)-ta (Vi: mələ)	멀다: 멀어	is far 3
Yəki esə məmnikka?	여기에서 얼마나?	Is [it] far from here? 3
məli	머리	head, hair 13
məli ka coh-ta	머리가 좋다	has brain 13-D
melli (Ad)	멀리	far away 11-N
məmul-ta (Vi: məmulə)	머물다: 머물어	stays 6-D
mərchu-ta (Vt-Vi: mərchwə)	멈추다: 멈추워	stops (car, taxi, etc.) 11-D
məncə (Ad)	먼저	first of all, above all 10
mok	목	neck, throat 12
Mok i malimnita.	목이 마릅니다.	I'm thirsty. 12
Mok i aphimnita.	목이 아픕니다.	I have a sore throat. 13
Mokyoil	목요일	Thursday 6
moli-ta (Vt: malla)	모르다: 몰라	doesn't know 3
mole	모레	the day after tomorrow 4-D
mom	몸	body 6
Mom i aphimnikka?	몸이 아픈니까?	Are you sick? 6
mot (Ad)	못	cannot
Ilkci mot hamnita.	읽지 못 합니다.	[I] cannot read. 8
Mot kamnita.	못 갑니다.	[I] cannot go. 8-G
motu	모두	all, in all, altogether 14
moca	모자	hat, cap 4-D
mocala-ta (Vi: mocala)	모자라다: 모자라	is not enough 13
mues	무엇	what (thing) 1
mues il	무엇을	what (as direct object) 1
mukəp-ta (Vi: mukəwə)	무겁다: 무거워	is heavy 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

muke	무 게	weight 10-D
mul	물	water 12-D
mut-ta (Vt: mule)	물 다: 물 어	inquires
mule po-ta (Vt: mule pwa)	물 어보 다: 물 어봐	inquires 2
mulken	물 건	goods 9-D
mun	문	door, window 11
aph mun	앞문	the front door 11
munpəp	문 법	grammar 10-D
munce	문 제	problem 10-D
musin (D)	무 슨	what kind of 4
musin seek	무 슨 색	what color, what kind of color 4
munpangku	문 방구	stationaries
munpangkucam	문 방구 점	stationary shop 5
Mianhamnita.	미안합니다.	I'm sorry. 1
Mianhaci man	미안하지만	I'm sorry but... 9
Mikuk	미국	America, the United States 1
Mikuk salam	미국 사람	an American 1
Mikuk mal	미국 말	the American language 1-D
mit-ta (Vt: mitə)	믿 다: 믿 어	trusts, believes 18-D
menyu	메뉴	menu 12
mæil (Ad)	매 일	everyday 9-D
mækcū	맥주	beer 12
mæp-ta (Vi: mæwə)	맵다: 매워	is (spicy) hot 13
mæcuil	매 주 일	every week 9-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

myənuli	며누 리	daughter-in-law ('son's wife') 14-D
myəch/myət/ (D)	몇	how many, what
lyca ka myəch kæ issimnikka?	의자가 몇 개 있읍니 까?	How many chairs are there? 5-G
myəch-si	몇 시	what time 6
myəchil	며칠	what day, some days, how many days
Onil i myəchil ici yo?	오늘 이 며칠 이지요?	What's today's date? 6
myəngnyəng	명령	(executive) order 13-D
Pak	박	Park (family name) 1-D
pakmulkwan	박물관	museum 10-D
paksa	박사	doctor (of philosophy) 16-D
pakk	밖	the outside 14-N
pakk e	밖 에	outside, to the outside 16-D
Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita.	한국 말 밖 에 모릅 니다.	I know only Korean. ('Outside of Korean, I don't know.') 16-G
pakku-ta (Vt: pakkwə)	바꾸 다: 바 꾸	exchanges, changes
Kim Sənsəng eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.	김 선생에게 좀 바 꾸 주 십시요.	May I talk to Mr. Kim (on the phone)? 16
pata	바다	sea 16-D
pat-ta (Vt: patə)	받 다: 받 어	receives, gets 6
pal	발	foot 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
pala-ta (Vt: palæ)	바라 다: 바 래	hopes, wishes 8-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pala po-ta (Vt: pala pwa)	바라 보 다: 바라 봐	looks over (from the distance) 12-G
palam	바람	wind
Palam i pu(lu)mnita.	바람이 불 니다.	It is windy. 15
palo (Ad)	바로	just, right 2
palo aph e	바로 앞에	right ahead 2
Palo aph e issimnita.	바로 앞에 있습니다.	[It]'s right up ahead. 2
palk-ta (Vi: palkə)	밝다: 밝어	is light 10-D
pam	밤	night 4-D
pan	반	half 6-D
panto	반도	peninsula
Panto Hwesa	반도 회사	Bando Company 8
pap	밥	rice (cooked), meal 12
pappita (Vi: pappə)	바쁘다: 바빠	is busy 9
pang	방	room 4-D
pangsong	방송	broadcasting
pangsongkuk	방송국	broadcasting station, radio station 11-D
panghak	방학	school vacation 6-D
pəl (C)	벌	
yangpok tu pəl	양복 두 벌	two suits 5-G
pəlssə (Ad)	벌써	already 6
pən (PN)	번	time, number
i pən	이번	this time 7
han pən	한 번	once 7
myəch pən	몇 번	what number, how many times 16
pəncap-ha-ta (Vi: pəncap-hæ)	번잡하다: 번잡해	is crowded 10

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pənho	번호	number 16
cənhwa pənho	전화 번호	telephone number 16
po-ta (Vt: pwa)	보다: 봐	looks at, sees 4
poi-ta (Vi: poyə)	보이다: 보여	is seen, is visible 16
poyə cu-ta (Vt: poyə cuə)	보여 주다: 보여 주어	shows 5
pokcap	복잡	complexity
pokcap-ha-ta (Vi: pokcap-hæ)	복잡하다: 복잡해	is complicated 8-D
pota (P)	보다	than
Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tə əlyəpsimnita.	한국 말이 독일 말 보다 더 어렵습니다.	Korean is more difficult than German. 8
pothong	보통	ordinary, ordinairly
pothong samu	보통 사무	ordinary office work 8
pom	봄	spring (season) 15
ponæ-ta (Vt: ponæ)	보내다: 보내	sends 11-D
ponkuk	본국	home country 15-D
pontho	본토	mainland 15-D
pongkip	봉급	pay, salary 13-D
puəkh	부엌	kitchen 16-D
puin	부인	lady, your wife, Mrs. ____ 1
pukin (PN)	부근	vicinity 10
i pukin	이 부근	this vicinity, around here 10
puk-pu	북부	the Northern part 15-D
Puk-Han	북한	North-Korea 6-D
putiləp-ta (Vi: putiləwə)	부드럽다: 부드러워	is tender, is soft 13-D

puthak Chwe Sænsæng (eke) com puthak-hamnita. Chinku ekese puthak il patæssumnita.	부탁 최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁합니다. 친구에게서 부탁을 받았습니다.	request of a favor, a favor May I speak to Mr. Choe, please? 16 My friend asked me of a favor. ('I received a request of favor from a friend.') 18-D
puthæ (P) cikim puthæ	부터 지금 부터	from from now on 8-D
pul pul-koki	불 불고기	fire, light Korean style barbecue ('fire meat') 13
pu(1)-ta (Vi: pulæ) Palam i pu(1)mnita.	불다: 불어 바람이 불니다.	blows It's windy. ('Wind blows.') 15
pul1-ta (Vt: pulle) nolæ lil pul1-ta	부르다: 불려 노래를 부르다	calls 18 sings a song 18-N
pu(1)k-ta (Vi: pulkæ)	붉다: 붉어	is reddish 4-D
Pullanse Pullanse mal Pullanse salam	불란서 불란서 말 불란서 사람	France 1 French (language) 8-D Frenchman 1-D
Pullansee	불란서어	French 8-D
pulphyen pulphyen-ha-ta (Vi: pulphyen-hæ)	불편 불편하다: 불편해	inconvenience, discomfort is inconvenient, is uncomfortable 1C-D
pumo	부모	parents 14
pun (PN) k1 pun sænsæng se pun	분 그분 선생 세 분	person (honored) 3 he ('that person') 3 three teachers 5-G
pun (C)	분	minute 6
puncuha-ta (Vi: puncuhæ)	분주하다: 분주해	is busy, is hectic 8
Pusan	부산	Pusan 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

puca	부자	a rich man 17-G
pucok	부족	insufficiency, lack
pucok-ha-ta (Vi: pucok-hæ)	부족하다: 부족해	is not enough, is insufficient 13
puchi-ta (Vt: puchie)	부치다: 부쳐	mails, ships 11
pi	비	rain
Pi ka omnita.	비가 옵니다.	It rains. ('Rain comes.')
		8-G
pilli-ta (Vt: pillye)	빌리다: 빌려	borrows
pillye cu-ta (Vt: pillye cue)	빌려주다: 빌려 주어	loans, lends 7-G
pisæ	비서	secretary 7-G
pisitha-ta (Vi: pisithæ)	비슷하다: 비슷해	is similar 15
pissa-ta (Vi: pissa)	비싸다: 비싸	is expensive 4
pihængki	비행기	airplane 7
pihængcang	비행장	airport 7-D
pæ	배	ship 7
pæ	배	stomach
Pæ ka kophamnita.	배가 곱습니다.	I'm hungry. 12
pæ (PN)	배	times
i (or tu) pæ	이 (두) 배	two times 7-G
pæu-ta (Vt: pæwe)	배우다: 배워	learns 1-D
pæk (Num Ch)	백	hundred 4
pækhwacæm	백화점	department store 2
pyallo (Ad)	별로	(not) particularly
Pyello manhi mækci anhæssimnita.	별로 많이 먹지 않았습니다.	I didn't eat so much. 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pyənhosa	변호사	lawyer 8-D
pyəng	병	sickness, disease 15-G
pyəng i na-ta	병이 나다	gets sick 15-G
pyəng	병	bottle
pyəng (C)	병	bottle of 12
pyəngwən	병원	hospital 10-D
pwep-ta (Vi: pwewə)	만나다: 보이다	('meets')
Chəlm pwepsimnita.	처음 뵙습니다.	(I'm glad to meet you.)
		('I see you for the first time.') 1
Tto pwepkessimnita.	또 뵙겠습니다.	See you again., So long. 1
<u>pp</u>		
ppata	버터	butter 13-D
ppalita (Vi: ppallə)	빠르다: 빨리	is fast 10
ppalli (Ad)	빨리	quickly, fast 16-D
ppang	빵	bread 13-D
ppəsɪ	버스	bus 7-G
ppilu	맥주	beer 13
ppyam	뺨	cheek 13
<u>ph</u>		
phal (Num Ch)	팔	eight 4
phal	팔	arm 13
pha(1)-ta (Vt: phalə)	팔다: 팔아	sells 4
phala(h)-ta (Vi: phalæ)	파랗다: 파랗	is blue 4-N
phalan sæk	파란 색	blue color 4-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

phansa	판사	judge 16-D
phək (Ad)	꽤	quite, very 9
phulɪ-ta (Vi: phulɪlɐ)	푸르다: 푸르터	is bluish 4-D
phungsok	풍속	custom 15-G
phiu-ta (Vt: phiwə)	피우다: 피워	smokes
Kim in tæpæ lɪl phiuko siphə hæ yo.	김은 담배를 피우고 싶어 해요.	Kim wants to smoke. 9-D
phikon	피곤	fatigue
phikon-ha-ta (Vi: phikon-hæ)	피곤하다: 피곤해	is tired 13
philo	피로	fatigue
philo-ha-ta (Vi: philo-hæ)	피로하다: 피로해	is fatigued 13
philyo	필요	need, necessity
philyo-ha-ta (Vi: philyo-hæ)	필요하다: 필요해	is necessary, is needed 5
phen	편	pen 5
phyæn (PN)	편	side, way
ənɪ phyæn	어느 편	which way 10
phyænci	편지	letter, mail 9-D
phyænha-ta (Vi: phyænhæ)	편하다: 편해	is comfortable 10-D
phyo	표	ticket 14-G

	<u>s</u>	
sa (Num Ch)	사	four 4
sa-ta (Vt: sa)	사다: 사	buys 4
Sassə yo?	샀어요?	Did [you] buy? 4
saep	사업	business, enterprise
saepka	사업가	business-man 16-D
saita	사이다	(a kind of soft drink) 12
sawi	사위	son-in-law ('daughter's husband') 14-D
sakən	사건	incident, trouble 17-D
sako	사고	accident 17-D
sa(1)-ta (Vi: salə)	살다: 살어	lives 9-G
sal (C)	살	year old 5-G
han sal	한 살	one year old 14
salam	사람	person, man 1
salam (C)	사람	
haksəng tu salam	학생 두 사람	two students 5-G
salang	사랑	love 9-G
salang-ha-ta (Vt: salang-hæ)	사랑하다: 사랑해	loves 9-G
sam (Num Ch)	삼	three 4
samu	사무	office work 6-D
samuwən	사무원	clerk, office worker 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

samusil	사무실	office 3-D
san	산	mountain 10-D
sanyang	사냥	hunting
sanyang ka-ta	사냥가다	goes hunting 18-D
sampo	산보	a walk, a stroll
sampo-ha-ta (Vi: sampo-hæ)	산보하다: 산보해	takes a walk, strolls 9-D
sacang	사장	president of company 8-D
sacən	사전	dictionary 5
sachon	사촌	cousin 14-D
sahil	사흘	three days, the 3rd of the month 6
sangyəng	상영	showing of movies
sangyəng-ha-ta (Vt: sangyəng-hæ)	상영하다: 상영해	shows movies 9
Sangwən	상원	Senate (U.S.)
Sangwən iywən	상원 의원	Senator 16-D
sangkwan	상관	supervisor, boss 13-D
sangcəm	상점	store, shop 2-D
sə (P)	서	so, and so
kilæ sə	그래서	so, therefore 9
Səul	서울	Seoul (Capital of Korea) 1-G
səul	서울	capital 17-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sək (Num K)	석	8-D (see <u>se(s)</u>)
sək tal	석 달	three months 8-D
səlhin (Num K)	서른	thirty 5
səlthang	설탕	sugar 13
səm	섬	island 15-D
sənmul	선물	present, gift 13-G
sənsənha-ta (Vt: sənsənha)	선선하다: 선선힌	is cool (air) 15
sənsəng	선생	teacher, you, Mr. 1-N
Səpu	서부	the West (U.S.), the western part 15-D
sə-ta (Vi: sə)	서다: 서	stands up, stops (walking, vehicles) 11-D
sə iss-ta	서 있다	is standing 14-G
so	소	cattle, cow 5-G
so koki	소고기	beef 13
sokim	소금	salt 13
sohki (Ad)	속히	quickly 16-D
solli	소리	noise, sound, voice
mal soli	말 소리	voice 16-D
salam soli	사람 소리	voices 16-D
pal soli	발 소리	foot steps 16-D
son	손	hand 13
son kalak	손가락	finger 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sonnim	손님	customer, quest 13-D
sonnye	손녀	granddaughter 14-D
sonca	손자	grandson 14-D
sopangsa	소방서	fire station 11-D
sosik	소식	news, whereabouts 15-G
sohakkyo	소학교	elementary school 10-D
su (DN) (Mal) hal su issimnita. Hal su epsimnita.	수 (말) 할 수 있습니다. 할 수 없습니다.	[I] can speak. 8 [I] cannot do., I'm unable to do. 8-N
suəp ənce suəp i kkith- namnikka?	수업 언제 수업이 끝 납니까?	class (work) 6-D When does the class end? 6-D
suyəng suyəng ka-ta	수영 수영 가다	swimming 18-D goes swimming 18-D
Suyoil	수요일	Wednesday 6-D
sukən son sukən	수건 손수건	towel 4 handkerchief 4-D
sukce	숙제	homework 16-G
suto	수도	capital city 17-D
sut kalak	술가락	(Korean) spoon 13
sul	술	liquor, wine 12-D
suchəp	수첩	address book 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

simu (Num K)	스무	twenty 5
simu nal	스무 날	twenty days 6-D
simul (Num K)	스물	twenty 5
sipki	습기	humidity 18-D
singkip	승급	promotion 13-D
si (D)	시	(husband's side)
si pumo	시부모	husband's parents 14-D
si apæci	시아버지	husband's father 14-D
si æmeni	시어머니	husband's mother 14-D
si tongsæng	시동생	husband's younger siblings 14-D
si nui	시누이	husband's sister 14-D
si cip	시집	husband's family 14-D
si-ta (Vi: siə)	시다: 시어	is sour 13
siwe	시외	suburb, out skirt of city 10-D
sikan	시간	time, hour 6
myæch sikan	몇 시간	how many hours 6
Sikan i issimnikka?	시간이 있습니까?	Do you have time. 6-N
sikol	시골	country, rural area 15-D
sikye	시계	watch, clock 2-D
siktang	식당	restaurant, dining hall 3-D
siksa	식사	meal 12-D
achim siksa	아침 식사	breakfast 12-D
sikmo	식모	maid 16-D
Sikhako	시카고	Chicago 15
sillye	시례	rudeness 1
Sillye-hamnita.	시례합니다.	Excuse me (on leaving <u>or</u> on interrupting) 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Sillye-hakessimnita.	실례하겠습니다.	Excuse me (for what I'm going to do). 1
Sillye-hæssimnita.	실례했습니다.	Excuse me (for what I did). 1
silhəha-ta (Vt: silhəhæ)	싫어하다: 싫어해	dislikes 4-N
sinæ	시내	downtown 4
sinmun	신문	newspaper 4-D
sinmunsa	신문사	newspaper publisher 11-D
sip (Num Ch)	십	ten 4
siph-ta (Vt: siphe)	싶다: 싶어	
Poko siphsimnita.	보고 싶습니다.	I want to see. 9
sicak	시작	beginning
sicak-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: sicak-hæ)	시작하다: 시작해	begins 3-G
sicang	시장	market-place 3-D
sicang po-ta	시장 보다	goes food shopping 9-D
sichəng	시청	city hall 2
sihəm	시험	test, examination
sihəm (il) po-ta	시험(을) 보다	takes an examination 15-G
singkep-ta (Vi: singkəwə)	싱겁다: 싱거워	is not salty, is bland 13
se(s) (Num K)	셋	three 5
seu-ta (Vt: sewə)	세우다: 세워	parks, stops, erects 11-D
sæ (D)	새	new 14-D
sæk	색	color 4
səngil	생일	birthday 13-G
səngkak	생각	idea, thought 9
səngkak-ha-ta (Vt-Vi: səngkak-hæ)	생각하다: 생각해	thinks 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sangmyang	생명	life 16-N
sangsən	생선	fish 13
sænghwal	생활	life, livelihood 15-D
syassı	셔츠	shirts 4-D
swi-ta (Vi: swiə)	쉬다: 쉬어	rests, takes a rest 6
swin (Num K)	쉰	fifty 5
swip-ta (Vi: swiwə)	쉽다: 쉬워	is easy 5-D
ssa-ta (Vi: ssa)	<u>ss</u> 싸다: 싸	is cheap 4
ssau-ta (Vi: ssawə)	싸우다: 싸워	fight, quarrels 14-G
Ssolyən	소련	Soviet Union 6-D
Ssolyənə	소련어	Russian 8-D
ssi-ta (Vt: ssə)	쓰다: 써	writes, uses 8-D
ssi-ta (Vi: ssə)	쓰다: 써	is bitter (in taste) 13
ssik (P)	씩	each 14
hana ssik	하나씩	one at a time, one each 14
Ca! (Int)	<u>c</u> 자!	Here!, Well! 5
ca-ta (Vi-Vt: ca)	자다: 자	sleeps 11-G
cak-ta (Vi: cakə)	작다: 작어	is small 5
cakin kəs	작은것	a small one 5
Cakke malssım-hasipsiyo.	작게 말씀 하십시오.	Please speak softly. 16-D
caknyən	작년	last year 6-D
catongcha	자동차	automobile 7-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cal (Ad)	잘	well 1
cala-ta (Vi: cala)	자라다: 자라	grows up 14-D
calang	자랑	boasting
calang-ha-ta (Vt: calang-hæ)	자랑하다: 자랑해	is proud of (something) 18-G
cali	자리	seat 11-D
il cali	이 자리	job 16-D
cam	잠	sleep
Cam i omnita.	잠이 옵니다.	I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.') 13
(Cam il) camnita.	잠을 잡니다.	[I]'m sleeping. 13
camkan (Ad)	잠깐	for a moment 2
Camkan man kitalise yo.	잠깐만 기다리세요.	Just a minute. 16
can (C)	잔	cup of
khøphi han can	커피 한 잔	a cup of coffee 5-G
capsusi-ta (Vt: capsusyø)	잡수시다: 잡수셔	eats (honored) 12 (see <u>møk-ta</u>)
capci	잡지	magazine 4-D
cacənke	자전거	bicycle 16-D
cacu (Ad)	자주	frequently, often 9-D
əlma na cacu	얼마나 자주	how often 9-D
cang (C)	장	sheet of, piece of 5
swin cang	쉰 장	50 sheets 5
cang	장	(soy) sauce 13 (see <u>kancang</u>)
cangin	장인	father-in-law ('wife's father') 14-D
cangkun	장군	general (of armed forces) 16-D
cangkap	장갑	gloves 16-D

cangkwan	장관	minister (of government) 16-D
cangma (chəl)	장마(철)	rainy season 18
cangmo	장모	mother-in-law ('wife's mother) 14-D
cə	저	I (polite) 1
cə e <u>or</u> ce	저의, 제	my 1
cə (D)	저	that 2
cə kənmul	저 건물	that building (over there) 2
cə(h)i	저희	we (polite) 17-G
cək (DN)	적	
Məkə pon cək i issimnikka?	먹어 본 적이 있습니까?	Have you ever eaten? 13
cək-ta (Vi: cəkə)	적다: 적어	is little 5-N
cək-ta (Vt: cəkə) Cəkə tuəssimnita.	적다: 적어 적어 두었습니다.	writes down, jots down [I] wrote it down (for later use). 16
cəki	저기	there, that place 2
cəki e	저기에	over there, at that place 2
cələh-ta (Vi: cələ)	저렇다: 저태	is like that
cələn kəs	저런 것	that kind of thing 18-D
cələhke (Ad)	저렇게	that way, like that 18-N
cə(l)m-ta (Vi: cəlmə)	젊다: 젊어	is young, is youthful 14-N
cəmsim	점심	lunch 12
cəmcəm (Ad)	점점	gradually 18
cən	전	before
yətəl-si o pun cən	여덟 시 오 분 전	five minutes to eight 6
cən e	전에	previously 7
Səul e oki cən e	서울에 오기 전에	before coming to Seoul, before [I] came to Seoul 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cənyək	저녁	evening 4-D
onil cənyək	오늘 저녁	this evening 4-D
cənyək (siksa)	저녁 식사	supper 12-D
cənpō	전보	telegram, cable 13-D
cəncha	전차	streetcar 7-G
cənha-ta (Vt: cənhæ)	전하다: 전해	delivers 16
cənhəl mal(ssim)	전할 말(숨)	message (to leave) 16
cənhwa	전화	telephone 13-D
cənhwa-ha-ta (cənhwa-hæ)	전화하다: 전화해	telephones 16
cənhwa (lil) kal-ta	전화를 거다	makes a telephone call 16
cənhwa pənho chæk	전화 번호 책	telephone book 16
cəs kalak	저가락	chopsticks 13
Cəng	정	Chung (family name) 1-D
cəngwən	정원	the yard, garden 16-D
cəngkəcang	정거장	station, railroad station 3
cəngpu	정부	government 8-D
cəngmal (Ad)	정말	certainly 18
cəngmal	정말	truth 18
Cəngmal imnikka?	정말입니까?	Are you sure?, Is it true? 18-N
cəngchika	정치가	politician 18-D
cəphanso	재판소	(law) court 10-D
coyonghi (Ad)	조용히	quietly 16-D
cokim (Ad)	조금	a little 8 (see com)
cokha	조카	nephew 14-D
cokha ttal	조카딸	niece 14-D

coləp	졸업	graduation
coləp-ha-ta (coləp-hæ)	졸업하다: 졸업해	graduates (from) 14
com (Ad)	좁	a little 2
cop-ta (Vi: copa)	좁다: 좁아	is narrow 5-D
cocongsa	조종사	pilot 16-G
coh-ta (Vi: coha)	좋다: 좋아	is good, is nice 4
cohaha-ta (Vt: cohahæ)	좋아하다: 좋아해	prefers, likes 4
congi	종이	paper 5
Cu	주	State (U.S.) 15
cu-ta (Vt: cuə)	주다: 주어	gives 4
Cusipsiyo.	주십시오.	Please give [me]. 4
Ka cusipsiyo.	가 주십시오.	Please go (for me). 11
cuil	주일	week 6
cuin	주인	master, owner, my husband
uli cuin	우리 주인	my husband ('our master') 14-D
cuk-ta (Vi: cukə)	죽다: 죽어	dies 11-G
culo (Ad)	주로	mainly, mostly 8
cumal	주말	weekend 12-D
cumun	주문	order (of goods, food, etc) 1 13-D
cunpi	준비	preparation 15-G
cunpi-ha-ta (cunpi-hæ)	준비하다: 준비해	prepares for 17-G
cuso	주소	(one's) address 16-D
cuchacang	주차장	parking lot 16-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cung (PN)	중	among, during 10
ki (kəs tɪl) cung esə	그(것들) 중 에서	among them 10
cungang	중앙	center, central 11
cungyoha-ta (Vi: cungyohæ)	중요하다: 중요해	is important 18
Cungkuk	중국	China 1-G
Cungkuk mal	중국 말	Chinese (language) 1-G
Cungkuk salam	중국 사람	Chinese (man)
Cungkukə	중국 어	Chinese (language) 8-D
cungtæha-ta (Vi: cungtæhæ)	중대하다: 중대해	is important 18
cunghakkyo	중 학교	junior high school ('middle school') 10-D
ci (DN)	지	
æti e issnɪn ci asimnikka?	어디에 있는지 아십니까?	Do you know where [it] is? 13
Kukmusəng e tilə on ci,	국무성에 들어 온지	since I joined the State Department, 15
ci-ta	지다	
chuwə ci-ta (chuwə cə)	추워 지다: 추워 저	gets colder 18
cikap	지갑	wallet 16-D
cikəp	직업	occupation, profession 18-D
cikɪm	지금	now, present 5
cikcang	직장	place of work 18-D
cikkong	직공	factory worker, technician 18-D
cilki-ta (Vi: cilkiə)	지기다: 지기어	is tough 13
cilmun	지문	question(iars) 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cina-ta (Vi: cina)	지나다: 지나	passes by, gets along
Yocim ettæhe cinasimnikka?	요즘 어떻게 지나 십니까?	How are you getting along these days? 1
cinan	지난	last, past
cinan sahil	지난 사흘	last three days 6
cito	지도	map 2-D
cip	집	house, home 2-D
ce ka	제가	I (polite subject) 17-G
ceil (Ad)	제일	most, best, No. 1 10-N
Ceil phyællihamnita.	제일 편리합니다.	[It]'s most convenient. 10
cæmi	재미	fun, interest 1
Sensæng in cæmi ettehsimnikka?	선생은 재미 어떻습니까?	And how are YOU doing? 1
Cæmi (ka) issimnita.	재미(가) 있습니다.	[It]'s interesting. 8
Geimsi	제임스	James 1
cca-ta (Vt: cca)	^{cc} 자다: 자	is salty 13
ccali (PN)	자리	worth, value 5
o-sip Wæn ccali	오십 원 자리	50 Wæn worth, ₩50 bill 5
ccalp-ta (Vi: ccalpæ)	짧다: 짧아	is short (in length) 10-D
ccok (PN)	쪽	side, direction 2
wen ccok	왼쪽	the left (side) 2
i ccok	이쪽	this way 2-D
Sichæng ccok ilo	시청쪽으로	in the direction of the City Hall 2-D
ccim (PN)	쯤	around, about
tasæs si ccim	다섯 시쯤	around 5 o'clock 6
ccæ (PN)	재	
tu pæn ccæ	두 번째	the second time 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ccæm	잼	jam 13-D
	<u>ch</u>	
cha	차	car 4-N
cha	차	tea 12-D
hongcha	홍차	black tea 10-G
cha-ta (Vi: cha)	차다: 차	is cold
chan mul	찬물	cold water 12-D
chako	차고	garage 16-D
cham (Ad)	참	really, very 9
Cham (Int)	참	By the way, Oh! 9-N
chac-ta (Vt: chacə)	찾다: 찾아	looks for, seeks 3
əti lil chac(s)imnikka?	어디를 찾습니까?	What (place) are you looking for? 3
chacha (Ad)	차차	gradually 18
chang (mun)	창(문)	window 11-D
chə	처	my wife 14-D
chəim	처음	first, the first time 1
chəim ilo	처음으로	for the first time 7-N
chəl	철	season 18
chələm (P)	처럼	
Nyuyok chələm	뉴욕처럼	like (or just as) New York 18
chən (Num Ch)	천	thousand 4
chənam	처남	brother-in-law ('wife's brother') 14-D
chənyə	처녀	maiden, single woman, spinster 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chəŋchəŋhi (Ad)	천천히	slowly 11-D
chəŋman	천만	ten-million 1
chəŋman e	천만에	of ten-million
Chəŋman e malssim innita.	천만에 말씀입니다.	You're welcome. 1
chət (D)	첫	first 7 (see <u>chəlm</u>)
chət ccæ	첫째	first, the first 7
chət pən ccæ	첫 번째	the first, the first time 7
chəce	처제	wife's younger sister 14-D
chəhyəŋ	처형	wife's older sister 14-D
chiəta po-ta (Vt: chiəta pwa)	쳐다 보다: 쳐다 봐	looks up to, beholds 12-G
cho	초	vinegar 13
chon	촌	village, rural area 15-D
chongcang	총장	president (of university) 16-D
chotæ	초대	invitation 13-D
chongkak	총각	bachelor, unmarried man 14-G
chulipku	출입구	exit-entrance 16-D
chulku	출구	exit 16-D
chum	춤	dancing
chum (11) chu-ta (chum (11) chwə)	춤을 추다: 춤을 추	dances 9-D
chup-ta (Vi: chwə)	춥다: 추워	is cold 18
chungpun	충분	sufficiency
chungpun-ha-ta (chungpun-hæ)	충분하다: 충분해	is sufficient, is enough 13
chil (Num Ch)	칠	seven 4

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chinku	친구	friend 3
chinchæk	친척	relatives 14-D
chæk	책	book 1-G
chækpang	책방	book store 4
chæksang	책상	table, desk 2-D
Chwe	최	Choe (family name) 1-D
ha-ta (Vt: hæ <u>or</u> hayə)	하다: 해: 하여	does 1
Muəs (il) hasimnikka?	무엇을 하십니까?	What do you do (sir)? 1
haya(h)-ta (Vi: hayæ)	하얗다: 하얘	is white 4-N
hayən sək	하얀 색	white color 4-D
hako (P)	하고	with, and 9
na hako	나하고	with me 9
chæk hako yənphil	책하고 연필	book and pencil 9-G
hakki	학기	semester 10-D
hakkyo	학교	school 2
haknyən	학년	grade (school year), grader
haksæng	학생	student 1
hakca	학자	scholar 8-D
hakcang	학장	dean (of college) 16-D
halapæci	할아버지	grandfather 13-G
halu	하루	one day, the 1st day of the month 6
halməni	할머니	grandmother 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

han (D)	한	approximately 8
han sam nyen	한 삼 년	about 3 years 8
han(a) (Num K)	하나	one 4
hanil	하늘	heaven, sky 18
Hansik	한식	Korean food 12
Hankuk	한국	Korea 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
Hankuk salam	한국 사람	(a) Korean 1-G
Hankuke	한국 어	Korean 8-D
hanthe (P)	한테	to 11-G (see <u>eke</u>)
hapsing	합승	jitney 7-G
Hapcungkuk	합중국	United States 18-D
hangsang (Ad)	항상	all the time 9-N
hangku	항구	harbor 18-D
hangsi (Ad)	항시	always 9-N
hali	허리	waist 13-D
hok (Ad)	혹	by any chance 16
hoksi (Ad)	혹시	by any chance 16
hothel	호텔	hotel 2-D
honca	혼자	single, alone 14
Hocu	호주	Australia 6-D
hongcha	홍차	(black) tea 10-G
hu	후	the later time
hu e	후 에	later, after a while 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

təhak ɪl coləp-han hu e	대학을 졸업한 후에	after graduation from the college 15
hullyungha-ta (Vi: hullyunghæ)	훌륭하다: 훌륭해	is excellent, is outstanding 13
huchu	후추	black pepper 13
huchu kalu	후추 가루	black pepper (power) 13
hɪli-ta (Vi: hɪliə)	흐리다: 흐리어	is cloudy 18
hɪlkiə po-ta (Vt: hɪlkiə pwa)	흘겨 보다: 흘겨 봐	steers 12-G
hi-ta (Vi: hiə)	희다: 희어	is whitish 4-D
hæ	해	year, sun 6-D
musin hæ	무슨 해	what year 6-D
hæwe	해외	overseas, abroad 15-D
hyənkim	현금	cash 7-G
hyənkim ilo	현금으로	in cash 7-D
hyuka	휴가	vacation 6
Hyuka ɪɪl patəssɪmnita.	휴가를 바랍니다.	[I] took a vacation. 6
hyəng	형	older brother
nyəng nim	형님	older brother (honored) 14
hyəngce	형제	siblings, brothers and sisters 14
Hwayoil	화요일	Tuesday 6-D
Hwalan	화란	Holland 6-D
hwesa	회사	company, firm 8

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Index to the Grammar Notes

References are to Unit and Grammar Note: for example, 3.1. refers to Unit 3, Grammar Note 1. The alphabetical order of the Index follows that of Korean-English Glossary. The letters which are not used in the Glossary are inserted as follows: D after T; F and Q after P; V after H.

- Action Verbs 3.1.
- Adverbial Phrases 6.4.
- Adverbs 5.3.
- an (negative) 'not' 3.4.
- Auxiliary Verb 7.6.
- il/lil (Particle) 1.2.
- ilə 'in order to—' 6.3. (See -lə.)
- ilo (Particle) 2.2. (See lo/ilo.)
- ilyəko 7.3.
- ilyəmyən 12.2.
- in/nin (Particle) 1.2.
- ini kka 'because—', 'since—' 12.1.
(See -ni kka.)
- i/ka (Particle) 2.2.
- ina (Particle) 10.4. (See na.)
- Indirect Quotative Particle 17.3.
- Infinitive 4.1.
- Infinitive + iss- 14.5.
- Infinitive + to 'even though—',
'although—' 10.2.
- Infinitive + tu- (or noh-) 16.2.
- Infinitive + po- 12.3.
- Infinitive + pon il i iss- 13.2.
cək əps-
- Infinitive + sə 14.2.
- Infinitive + ci- 18.2.
- Infinitive + cu- 11.2.
- Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci 13.3.
- Intransitive Verbs 3.1.
- itinci (Particle) 12.4. (See tinci.)
- ilato (Particle) 18.5. (See lato.)
- imnita vs. issimnita 2.5.
- e (Particle) 'of', 'is' 1.2.
- e (Particle) 'at', 'on', 'in' 2.2.
- e (Particle) 'to' 3.6.
- Endings 2.1. (See Verb-Endings.)
- esə (Particle) 'from', 'at', 'in',
'on' 3.5.
- ya (Particle) 11.3.
- Infinitive + ya + ha- 'has to—',
'must—' 11.3.a.
- Infinitive + ya 'only when (or
if)—', 'must— to—' 11.3.b.
- yo (Particle) 4.4.
- wa/kwa (Particle) 4.4.
- ka (Particle) 2.2. (See i/ka.)
- kathi (Particle) 18.4.
- kacang 'the most—' 10.3.
- ko 9.1.
- ko (Particle) 17.3. (See lako.)
- kun yo 18.1. (See -ninkun yo.)
- ki 8.1.
- ki cən e 'before doing—' 15.2.
- ke 16.3.
- kwa (Particle) 4.4. (See wa/kwa.)
- kkaci (Particle) 'to', 'as far as',
'until', 'till', 'by' 7.5.
- talm 15.1. (See hu.)
- to (Particle) 'also, too' 4.3.
- tinci/itinci (Particle) 12.4.
- Time Counters: nyən 'year', hə 'year'
-wəl 'month', tal 'month', cuil

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

- 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si
'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun
'minute' 6.1.
- ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when' 14.1.
- Transitive Verbs 3.1.
- Dependent Nouns 13.4.
- Description Verbs 3.1.
- Determinatives 2.3.
- Direct Quotative Particle 17.3.
- lako/ko (Particle) 17.3.
- lato/ilato (Particle) 18.5.
- lil (Particle) 1.2. (See il/lil.)
- l/il kəs i- 11.5.
- l/il kyehwek i- 'be planning to—' 18.6.
- l/il kka yo? 'Shall I-?', 'Shall we-?',
'Will [it] - (do you think)?' 5.2.
- l/il su eps- 'cannot—', 'be unable
to—' 8.3.
- l/il su iss- 'can-', 'be able to—' 8.3.
- l/il + Nominal 9.3.
- lo/ilo (Particle) 'to', 'toward' 2.2.
- lo/ilo (Particle) 'as', 'in the capacity'
'by means of' 7.2.
- lyeko 7.3. (See ilyeko.)
- lyemyen 12.2. (See ilyemyen.)
- man (Particle) 'only', 'just' 12.5.
- mata (Particle) 8.2.
- myen/ımyen 'if-' 10.1.
- na/ina '-but' 13.1.
- na/ina (Particle) 10.4.
- n/in/nin ka yo? 7.3.
- n/in/nin + kəs 11.4.
- n/in + il (or cək) i + iss- (or eps-)
'has (or has not), sometime up to
present, done so-and-so' 13.2.
- n/in/nin kəs kath- 18.3.
- n/in/nin te 16.1.
- n/in/nin + Noun 5.1.
- n/in/nin ci 16.4.
- n/in ci + period of time + twe- (or
cina-) 'It has been— (period of
time) since—' 15.3.
- n hu e 'after doing-' 15.1.
- nin (Particle) 1.2. (See in/nin.)
- nin + tongan 'while doing so-and-
so' 15.4.
- ninkun/kun yo 18.2.
- ni/inı kka 'since—', 'because—'
12.1.
- Nouns 1.3.
- Noun hrases 1.3.
- Nominal (Expression) 1.3.
- Nominal + e tæhæ se 'concerning
Nominal', 'about Nominal' 15.5.
- Nominal + we (or pakk) e 14.3.
- Nominal Phrases 7.1.
- Numerals 4.6.
- Past Tenses: Simple Past and Remote
Past 4.2.
- Past Tense Suffixes 4.2.
- Particles 1.2.
- Personal Nouns in Polite and Plain
Speeches 17.2.
- Personal Nominal + eke (or hanthe)
11.2.
- Polite Speech: Formal 2.1.; Informal
4.1.
- Possessive Particle 1.2. (See e.)
- Post-Nouns 2.4.
- pota (Particle) 'than', 'more than'
8.4.
- Plain Speech: Formal and Informal
17.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Ending 5.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Words 9.3.
- Prospective Modifier Ending 9.3.
- Future Tense in Korean 3.2.
- Future Tense Suffix 3.2.

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Quotatives 17.3.

Suffixes 3.2. (See Verb Suffixes.)

ssik 'each', 'at one time' 14.4.

cən 'before', 'the previous time' 15.2.

-ci man '—but' 9.2.

-ci + anhsimnita 4.5.

-ci + ma(1) 11.1.

-ci mot ha- 'cannot—', 'is not—' 8.3.

-ci yo? 6.2.

ce11 (or kacang) 'the most—' 10.3.

Copula 1.1.

Counter 4.6.

Counters: cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, ma11,

pəl, tæ 5.4.

chə1əm (Particle) 18.4.

hako (Particle) 9.4.

Honorifics 3.3. 11.6.

Honorific Suffix 3.3.

hu (or taim) 'after', 'the later time',
time', 'next' 15.1.

Verbals 1.1.

Verb-Endings 2.1.

Verbs: Action vs. Description and

Intransitive vs. Transitive 3.1.

Verb Phrases 7.6.

Verb-Stems 2.1.

Verb Suffixes 3.2.